

# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

IN THREE PARTS.

---

SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, OF THE PLATOON OF  
THE SQUADRON, AND THE EVOLUTIONS OF A  
REGIMENT.

---

PART I.....DISMOUNTED.

PART II.....MOUNTED.

PART III.....EVOLUTIONS OF A REGIMENT.

---

PRINTED BY ORDER OF THE WAR DEPARTMENT.

---

PHILADELPHIA:  
J. B. LIPPINCOTT, & CO.  
1860.



~~~~~  
Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1860, by  
J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Eastern District of Pennsylvania.  
~~~~~

WAR DEPARTMENT,

*February 10, 1841.*

The system of Cavalry Tactics, adapted to the organization of Dragoon regiments, having been approved by the President of the United States, is now published for the government of the said service.

Accordingly, instruction in the same will be given after the method pointed out therein; and all additions to, or departures from the exercises and manoeuvres laid down in this system, are positively forbidden.

J. R. POINSETT.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

## FIRST PART.

---

### TITLE FIRST.

#### BASIS OF INSTRUCTION.

	PAGE
ARTICLE I. Formation of a regiment of five squadrons in order of battle.....	1
Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of the field and staff of a regiment in order of battle.....	2
Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of a squadron in line.....	3
Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of a company acting singly.....	4
Assembly of a regiment mounted.....	5
Assembly of a regiment dismounted.....	6
Formation of the escort of the standard.....	6
Reception of the standard.....	7
Salute with the standard.....	8
Salute with the sabre.....	8
ART. II. Formation of a regiment of five squadrons in column.....	9
Order in column by twos or fours.....	9
Order in column of platoons.....	11
Order in column of divisions.....	13
Order in close column.....	14
Compliments by cavalry under review.....	15
Form and course of inspection.....	19

	PAGE
ART. III	Duties of instructors.....22
ART. IV.	Division, order, and progression of instruction.....23
ART. V.	Gradation of instruction.....25
	Recruits.....25
	Recapitulation of the time necessary to instruct a trooper to the school of the platoon mounted, inclusive.....27
	Corporals.....28
	Sergeants.....28
	Officers.....29
ART. VI.	Instruction to mount without saddle, to pack up, to saddle, and to unsaddle.....30
	Manner of vaulting.....30
	Manner of packing up the effects.....30
	Manner of rolling the cloak.....31
	Manner of adjusting a saddle.....32
	Manner of saddling.....33
	Manner of packing the effects on the horse.....35
	Manner of bridling.....38
	Manner of unbridling.....39
	Manner of unpacking.....39
	Manner of unsaddling.....40
ART. VII.	Of the bit.....41
ART. VIII.	Manner of training young horses.....47
	1st Lesson.....48
	2d Lesson.....51
	3d Lesson.....54
	4th Lesson.....55
	Manner of accustoming the horses to leap the ditch and the bar.....55
	Assembly of the young horses in a platoon.....56
	Manner of accustoming young horses to firing and military noises.....58
	Horses that are difficult to train.....60
	Lesson of the longe.....62

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

iii

	PAGE
ART. IX. Definitions and general principles .....	64
ART. X Signals .....	74

## TITLE SECOND.

### INSTRUCTION ON FOOT.

SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, DISMOUNTED .....	76
1ST LESSON .....	77
1ST PART. Position of the trooper, dismounted .....	77
Eyes right, eyes left .....	79
Right face, left face, about face, right-quarter face, left-quarter face .....	80
2D PART. Common step .....	82
To mark time .....	84
To change step .....	85
To face to the right or left when marching .....	85
Quarter-face to the right or left when march- ing .....	86
Quick step .....	86
Backward step .....	87
2D LESSON .....	88
1ST PART. Principles of carried arms .....	89
Instruction with carried arms at a halt, and marching with carried arms .....	89
2D PART. Manual of arms .....	89
Loading in ten times .....	96
Loading at will .....	100
Firing, position of the front rank .....	101
Firing, position of the rear rank .....	104
Principles of carried lance .....	106

	PAGE
Manual of the lance.....	106
3D LESSON.....	110
1ST PART Manual of arms, the sabre being worn.....	110
Inspection of arms.....	112
2D PART. Marching with arms at the different steps.....	118
4TH LESSON.....	119
1ST PART. Sabre exercise.....	121
Lance exercise.....	130
2D PART. Target practice.....	141
SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON, DISMOUNTED.....	144
ARTICLE I General principles of alignment.....	145
Successive alignment of files in the platoon, and alignment of the platoon.....	146
To open and close the ranks.....	146
To march the platoon backwards.....	146
Direct march in single file.....	146
Change of direction.....	148
Individual oblique march.....	148
The platoon marching by a flank, to form it front or on right into line.....	150
To form the platoon left into single rank.....	152
To form the platoon right into two ranks.....	153
Manual of arms.....	153
ART. II. The platoon being in line, to break by fours to the right.....	154
Direct march in column of fours.....	155
Change of direction.....	157
Individual oblique march.....	158
The platoon marching in column of fours, to form it to the front or on right into line.....	159
Manual of arms.....	160

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

v

	PAGE
Firing.....	160
Sabre and lance exercise.....	162
ART III. March of the platoon in line.....	163
Counter-march.....	164
Wheelings.....	166
Individual oblique march.....	166
The platoon being in line, to break by fours to the right, and to move off after the wheel.....	167
To form the platoon.....	167
The platoon marching in line, to break by fours to the right, and to form in line again without halting.....	168
The platoon marching by fours, to form column by the flank without halting.....	169
The platoon marching by the flank, to face it to the front without halting.....	170
The platoon being in line, to face it to the rear.....	171
Manual of arms.....	171
ART. IV. Rallying and skirmishers.....	172
SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON, DISMOUNTED.....	173

---

## SECOND PART.

---

### TITLE THIRD.

#### INSTRUCTION ON HORESEPACK.

SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, MOUNTED.....	183
1ST LESSON.....	184
1ST PART. To conduct his horse to the ground.....	185
Position of the trooper before mounting.....	186

	PAGE
To mount.....	186
Position of the trooper mounted.....	189
Eyes right, eyes left.....	191
To lengthen the reins of the snaffle.....	191
To shorten the reins of the snaffle.....	192
To cross the reins in the left hand.....	192
To take the reins in both hands.....	192
To cross the reins in the right hand.....	193
The use of the reins.....	193
The use of the legs.....	193
The effects of the reins and legs combined.....	194
To march.....	194
To halt.....	195
To turn to the right and to the left.....	196
To turn-about to the right and to the left.....	197
To make a quarter-turn to the right and to the left.....	197
To rein-back and to cease reining-back.....	198
To dismount.....	199
To file off.....	201
2D PART. To march to the right hand; to march to the left hand.....	202
To turn to the right, and to the left in march- ing.....	203
To halt, and to step off.....	203
To pass from the walk to the trot, and from the trot to the walk.....	204
Changes of hand.....	205
To cross the reins alternately into the two hands, and to separate them in marching.....	206
To turn to the right and to the left by troop- er, in marching.....	207
To turn-about to the right, and to the left by trooper, in marching on the same line.....	208



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
To turn-about to the right, and to the left by trooper, in marching in column.....	208
2D LESSON .....	210
1ST PART. Of the spur.....	211
To march to the right hand, or to the left hand.....	212
To pass from the walk to the trot, and from the trot to the walk.....	214
Change of direction in the breadth of the riding-house.....	215
Change of direction in the length of the riding-house.....	215
Change of direction diagonally .....	215
Change of direction obliquely by trooper.....	216
To march in a circle.....	218
To change hand on the circle.....	219
2D PART. Length of the stirrups.....	221
Position of the foot in the stirrup.....	221
To turn to the right or to the left by trooper, in marching.....	222
To turn-about to the right or to the left, the troopers marching on the same line.....	223
To turn-about to the right or to the left, the troopers marching in column.....	223
To pass successively from the head to the rear of the column.....	223
Being halted to commence the move at a trot.....	224
Marching at a trot, to halt.....	225
To pass from the trot to the trot-out, and from the trot-out to the trot.....	225
To pass from the trot to the gallop.....	226
To passage to the right or to the left, the head to the wall.....	227

	PAGE
To passage to the right or to the left, being in column.....	230
3D LESSON.....	231
1ST PART. Position of the bridle-hand.....	231
To adjust the reins.....	232
To take the snaffle in the right hand.....	232
To drop the snaffle.....	233
The principal movements of the bridle-hand.....	233
To gather the horse.....	234
To march.....	234
To halt.....	234
To turn to the right.....	234
To turn to the left.....	234
To turn-about to the right and to the left.....	235
To make a quarter-turn to the right, and to the left.....	235
To rein-back and to cease reining-back.....	235
Exercise of the second lesson with the curb-bridle.....	235
To take the snaffle in the left hand.....	236
To drop the snaffle.....	236
To passage to the right or to the left.....	237
2D PART. Principles of the gallop.....	237
Exercise at the gallop upon right lines.....	238
Exercise at the gallop on the circle.....	240
4TH LESSON.....	240
1ST PART. Exercise of the 3d lesson, with the sabre only.....	241
Manual of arms, at a halt.....	241
To load the carbine.....	244
To load the pistol.....	247
To fire the carbine.....	250
To fire the pistol.....	251
Inspection of arms.....	253

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
	Saber and lance exercise at a halt.....257
2D PART.	Exercise of the 3d lesson with all the arms.....257
	Manual of arms in marching.....258
	Sabre and lance exercise at all gaits.....259
	To leap the ditch and the bar.....259
	Individual charge.....261
	Target practice.....263
SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON, MOUNTED.....	266
ARTICLE I.	General principles of alignment.....268
	Successive alignment of files in the platoon.....268
	Alignment of the platoon.....272
	To open and close the ranks.....273
	To rein-back the platoon.....274
	To break the platoon by file.....274
	Direct march in column by file.....275
	Change direction.....276
	To halt and commence the march in column.....276
	Individual oblique march.....277
	The platoon marching in column by file, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right into line.....277
	To break the platoon by twos or by fours.....280
	Direct march in column by twos or by fours.....281
	Change of direction.....282
	Individual oblique march.....283
	The platoon marching in column, by twos or fours, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right into line.....285
	To form the platoon to the left in one rank.....288
	Manual of arms.....289
	To form the platoon to the right in two ranks.....289
ART. II.	To form twos and fours at the same gait.....290
	To break by twos and by file at the same gait.....292

	PAGE
To form twos and fours in doubling the gait .....	294
To break by twos and by file in doubling the gait.....	296
Sabre and lance exercise.....	298
To leave the platoon by file .....	299
ART. III. Direct march of the platoon in line.....	299
Counter-march .....	306
Wheelings.....	308
To wheel on a fixed pivot.....	310
To wheel on a moveable pivot.....	317
Individual oblique march.....	319
The platoon marching in line, to break it by fours or by twos, at the same gait .....	321
The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it at the same gait.....	322
The platoon marching in line, to break it by fours or by twos, in doubling the gait.....	323
The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it in doubling the gait .....	324
Movements by fours, the platoon being in column or in line .....	325
ART. IV. Running at the heads.....	332
To leap the ditch and the bar .....	335
To charge by platoon .....	335
Rallying.....	338
Skirmishing.....	338
SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON, MOUNTED.....	349
ARTICLE I. Successive alignment of platoons in the squadron.....	351
Alignment of the squadron.....	354
To open and close the ranks .....	354
To break the squadron by fours .....	355
Direct march in column by fours.....	356

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
Change of direction.....	357
Individual oblique march.....	358
The squadron marching in column by fours, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right into line.....	358
To regulate the rapidity of the gaits.....	361
To form the squadron in one rank, and to form it in two ranks.....	362
ART. II. The squadron being in line, to form it in column with distance.....	363
To march in column with distance.....	364
Change of direction by successive wheels.....	365
Individual oblique march.....	366
Change of gait being in column with distance.....	367
To break by fours, by twos, and by file; to form twos, fours, and platoons at the same gait.....	368
To break by fours, by twos, and by file; to form twos, fours, and platoons in doubling the gait.....	372
The squadron marching in column with distance, to face it in the opposite direction, and to face it again to the front.....	375
To halt the column.....	376
To form line on the left.....	377
To break by the right to march to the left.....	380
To form line to the right by inversion.....	380
To break to the rear by the right to march to the left.....	382
To form on right into line.....	383
To form on left into line, by inversion.....	384
To break by platoons to the front.....	385
To form front into line.....	386

	PAGE
To break by platoons to the right, and to move forward after the wheel.....	387
To form line to the front, by inversion.....	388
To break by platoons to the right, head of column to the left or half left.....	389
To form line faced to the rear, on the rear of the column.....	390
To form line faced to the rear, by inversion of the rear of the column.....	391
To break by platoons to the right, head of column to the right, or half-right.....	392
To form line faced to the rear on the head of the column.....	393
To form line faced to the rear, by inversion, on the head of the column.....	394
Movements by fours, the squadron being in column with distance.....	395
ART. III. Direct march of the squadron in line.....	398
Counter-march.....	405
Wheelings.....	406
To wheel on a fixed pivot.....	407
To wheel on a moveable pivot.....	411
Individual oblique march.....	412
Oblique march by platoons.....	413
Movements by fours.....	415
The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground to the rear, and to face it again the front.....	416
The squadron marching in line, to break it by platoons to the right, and to form it again in line.....	417
The squadron marching in line, to march it to the rear by wheeling the platoons about.....	419
The squadron marching in line, to break it to the front by platoons, and to reform it.....	420

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xiii

	PAGE
The squadron marching in line, to break it to the front by platoons, in doubling the gait, and to reform it.....	421
Passage of obstacles.....	423
ART. IV. Charge.....	427
Rallying.....	432
Skirmishing.....	433
THE COLUMN BY DIVISIONS.....	441
THE SQUADRON OF SIXTY-FOUR FILES.....	447
SUPPLEMENT.	
A MANUAL FOR COLT'S REVOLVER.....	450

---

## THIRD PART.

---

### TITLE FOURTH.

#### EVOLUTIONS OF A REGIMENT.

PRELIMINARY IDEAS AND PREPARATORY MOVEMENTS.....	456
Points of direction.....	460
Tracing of lines.....	461
Manner of placing the intermediate points between two given points.....	468
Manner of determining the other points when only one point of direction is given.....	469
Successive alignment of the squadron in a regiment.....	470
Alignment of the regiment.....	471
To break the regiment by fours.....	472
To form platoons at the same pace.....	473
To break the platoons by fours at the same pace.....	474

	PAGE
To form platoons doubling the pace.....	475
To break the platoons doubling the pace.....	476
To form the regiment front, left, or on right into line .....	476
ARTICLE I. TO PASS FROM LINE TO COLUMN .....	479
To form the regiment in column with distance.....	479
To break by the right to march to the left .....	480
To break to the rear by the right to march to the left .....	481
FIRST EVOLUTION.	
To form the regiment in close column .....	482
ART. II. TO MARCH IN COLUMN .....	489
To change direction in column with distance.....	490
SECOND EVOLUTION.	
To pass from column with distance to close column by the successive formation of squadrons.....	494
To change direction.....	496
To pass from close column to column with distance, by the successive breaking of squadrons.....	502
ART. III. TO PASS FROM COLUMN TO LINE .....	505
THIRD EVOLUTION.	
To form the regiment into line on one of its flanks, or on the prolongation to the front of one of its flanks.....	505
FOURTH EVOLUTION.	
To form the regiment front into line.....	508



## FIFTH EVOLUTION.

To form the regiment into line faced to the rear.....510

Formation in line by the combination of the third and fourth, or fifth evolutions.....514

## SIXTH EVOLUTION.

To form a close column into line on one of its flanks, or on the prolongation to the front of one of its flanks.....521

## SEVENTH EVOLUTION.

To deploy a close column.....526

ART. IV TO MARCH IN LINE.....533

## EIGHT EVOLUTION.

March in line.....533

## NINTH EVOLUTION.

To change the front of the line.....538

## TENTH EVOLUTION.

To march by echelons.....543

## ELEVENTH EVOLUTION.

Passage of a defile.....548

## TWELFTH EVOLUTION.

Passage of the line.....556

Of the charge.....558

Charge in line.....559

Charge in column.....562

Charge as foragers.....563



# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## TITLE FIRST.

### BASIS OF INSTRUCTION.

---

## ARTICLE FIRST.

### FORMATION OF A REGIMENT OF FIVE SQUADRONS IN ORDER OF BATTLE

The squadrons of a regiment in order of battle are distinguished by the denomination of 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, and 5th; they are formed on the same line, in the order of these numbers, commencing on the right, and with an interval of 12 paces.

This is the primitive and habitual order of the squadrons in regiments.

Each squadron is composed of four platoons, distinguished by the denomination of 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th, commencing on the right.

The 1st and 2d platoons form the 1st division, the 3d and 4th form the 2d division.

The formation is in two ranks; the oldest soldiers in each platoon are placed in the front rank, and from right to left in each rank.

When the squadron is to be exercised, it is composed habitually of 48 files; consequently, each division is composed of 24 files, and each platoon of 12; if the squadron is increased to 64 files, the platoon is then divided into 2 sections; that on the right is the first, and that on the left the second.

That which is prescribed for the formation when mounted, is applicable to the formation on foot.

**Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of the field and staff of a regiment in order of battle.**

(Pl. 1.) The Colonel 25 paces in front of the centre of the regiment, having a Chief Bugler behind him.

The Lieutenant-Colonel 12 paces in advance of the centre of the right wing.

The Major 12 paces in advance of the centre of the left wing.

The Colonel moves wherever his presence may be necessary.

The Lieutenant-Colonel and Major move wherever the Colonel may think proper to direct them.

The Adjutant on a line with the front rank, 2 paces from the right of the regiment. When the regiment marches in line with the guide right, it is his duty to give the points of direction, and superintend the guides and the direction of the march.

The Sergeant-Major on a line with the front rank, 2 paces from the left of the regiment. He is charged with the same functions as the Adjutant, when the march is in line with the guide left.

The Adjutant, assisted by the Sergeant-Major, is also charged with the tracing of the lines.

The Standard-Bearer is placed at the last file but one from the left of the front rank of the platoon on the right of the centre of the regiment.

General staff officers serving with the regiment, 25 paces in rear of the right of the 1st squadron, according to rank.

The Quartermaster-Sergeant behind the Adjutant, on the line of the rear rank.

The general guides of the right and left are placed in the rank of file-closers, in rear of the Sergeant-Major and Quartermaster-Sergeant.

The Trumpeters, formed in two ranks, are posted 25 paces in rear of the centre of the regiment.

The Trumpeters of a squadron acting separately, are posted in the same manner, but in one rank.

### **Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of a squadron in line.**

The Captain commanding is posted at the centre of the squadron, the croup of his horse one pace in front of the heads of the horses of the front rank.

The second Captain 3 paces in rear of the centre of the squadron. He is charged with the alignment of the rear rank and file-closers.

The senior 1st Lieutenant commands the 1st platoon, the other 1st Lieutenant commands the 4th platoon.

The senior 2d Lieutenant commands the 2d platoon, the other 2d Lieutenant commands the 3d platoon.

Each of these officers is posted at the centre of his platoon, with the croup of his horse one pace in front of the heads of the horses of the front rank.

The 1st Sergeant is posted behind the 3d file from the right of the 1st platoon; he is the principal guide when the column of squadrons is left in front.

The 2d Sergeant behind the 3d file from the left of the 4th platoon; he is principal guide when the column of squadrons is right in front.

The 3d Sergeant is posted on the right of the front rank of the squadron; he is not counted in the rank.

The 4th Sergeant on the left of the front rank; he is not counted in the rank.

The 5th Sergeant on the left of the 1st platoon.

The 6th Sergeant on the right of the 2d platoon.

The 7th Sergeant on the left of the 3d platoon.

The 8th Sergeant on the right of the 4th platoon.

The heads of the horses of all the file-closers are of one pace from the croup of those of the rear rank.

The Corporals are posted in the front rank, on the right and left of their respective platoons, and supply the places of Sergeants when necessary.

When guidons are used, they are carried by the non-commissioned officers on the left of the 1st and 3d platoons.

### **Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of a company acting singly.**

The Captain in front of the centre, one pace distant from the front rank.

The 1st Lieutenant in rear of the centre, in the rank of file-closers.

The 2d Lieutenant commands the 1st platoon; in the absence of a 3d Lieutenant the 2d platoon is commanded by the senior Sergeant. The chiefs of platoons are posted one pace in front of the centre of their respective platoons.

The 1st Sergeant in rear of the right, in the rank of file-closers.

The 2d and 3d Sergeants on the right and left of the troop not told off.

A non-commissioned officer is posted on the left of the 1st platoon, and on the right of the 2d.

Corporals, next to the Sergeants who are on the flanks of platoons.

The Saddler and Farrier in rear of the left of the troop 8 paces retired from the line of file-closers; and the buglers 20 paces in rear of the centre.

### **Assembly of a regiment mounted.**

When a regiment is to mount, *boots and saddles* is sounded; at this signal the horses are saddled, bridled, and prepared to be led out.

At the signal *to horse* the 1st Sergeants direct the men to lead out.

The Sergeants, Corporals and privates, being in two ranks, in the order of their platoons, at the heads of their horses, the Orderly Sergeant calls the roll.

The Captain directs them to call off by fours and to mount, and on reaching the regimental parade, reports all absentees to the Adjutant through his Orderly Sergeant.

The Colonel detaches the troop which is to escort the standard; if the standard is too far from the parade ground, the Colonel detaches this troop before the regiment mounts.

In camps, or when the Colonel lodges in the barracks, the Standard-Bearer goes for the standard escorted only by two Sergeants.

In case of alarm or surprise, *to horse* is sounded; the men then saddle, pack up, bridle, and mount with the utmost celerity, and repair to the place of assembly, which is always previously designated.

### **Assembly of a regiment dismounted.**

When a regiment is to turn out under arms on foot, *to arms* will be sounded; at this signal, the men are formed and inspected, and the reports are made as is prescribed.

### **Formation of the escort of the standard.**

(Pl. 2, *fig. A*.) The squadrons of a regiment, commencing with the first, furnish in turn the escort of the standard.

The Captain commanding and the second Captain alternate in the command of this escort.

It is composed of two platoons.

Each squadron, successively, furnishes first its two first platoons, and then its two last.

The 1st platoon of the escort furnishes the advanced guard, composed of two men in Front *with the carbine advanced or pistol raised* (according to the corps;) a Corporal and four men with drawn sabres (or lances at *a carry*) march 10 paces from them.

The Trumpeters, formed by fours and conducted by the Adjutant, march 10 paces from the four men who precede.



The rest of the platoon, with drawn sabres, (or lances at *a carry*,) having the Lieutenant at its head, marches by fours 10 paces from the Trumpeters.

The Standard-Bearer follows immediately after between two Sergeants.

The 2d platoon, with drawn sabres, (or lances at *a carry*,) having the 2d Lieutenant at its head, follows the Standard-Bearer, marches by fours, and furnishes the rear guard, composed of a Corporal and two men, who march with drawn sabres, (or lances at *a carry*,) 10 paces in rear of the 2d platoon.

Two other men, *with the carbine advanced or pistol raised*, (according to the corps,) march 10 paces in rear.

The Captain marches 4 paces from the left flank opposite to the Standard-Bearer.

This detachment having arrived where the standard is kept, without sounding the trumpets, is there formed into line.

The Adjutant dismounts, takes the standard, and gives it to the Standard-Bearer.

### **Reception of the standard.**

As soon as the standard appears, the Captain orders the sabres to be presented; the trumpets sound *to the standard*.

After this signal has been twice repeated, the Captain orders the sabres to be carried, and breaks in the same order in which he came; the trumpets sound *the march*.

When the standard arrives, the Colonel orders the sabres to be drawn; the trumpets cease to sound, and, with the escort, take their place in line, passing behind the regiment.

The Standard-Bearer, accompanied by the two Sergeants, moves towards the centre of the regiment, parallel to the front, and halts before the Colonel, fronting the regiment; the Colonel then orders the sabres to be presented, and the trumpets to sound *to the standard*; he salutes with the sabre. The Standard-Bearer then takes his place in line, and the Colonel orders the sabres to be carried.

The field officers salute with the sabre when the standard passes before them.

The standard receives the same honors on its departure as on its arrival, and it is escorted to the Colonel's quarters in the order prescribed above.

On foot, the escort is composed in the same manner, and the standard receives the same honors.

### **Salute with the standard.**

When the standard is to pay honors, the Standard-Bearer salutes in the following manner, in two times:

1. At 4 paces from the person who is to be saluted, lower the lance gently to the front, bending as near to the horizontal line as possible.
2. Raise the lance gently when the person saluted has passed 4 paces.

### **Salute with the sabre.**

When the superior and other officers are to salute, whether on horseback or on foot, at a halt or marching, they do it in four times.

1. At 4 paces from the person to be saluted, raise the sabre perpendicularly, the point upwards, the edge to the left,

the hand opposite to and one foot from the right shoulder, the elbow 6 inches from the body.

2. Lower the blade, extending the arm to its full length, the hand in quarte, until the point of the sabre is near the foot.

3. Raise the sabre quickly, the point upwards, as in the first time, after the person saluted has passed 4 paces.

4. Carry the sabre to the shoulder.



## ARTICLE SECOND.

### FORMATION OF A REGIMENT OF FIVE SQUADRONS IN COLUMN.

#### **Order in column by twos or by fours.**

(Pl. 2, *fig. B.*) In this order, the squadron preserve an interval of 12 paces (12 yards) between each other, equal to their interval in line.

This distance is measured from the croups of the horses of the last files of one squadron, to the heads of the horses of the first files of the next squadron.

The Colonel marches at the centre of the regiment, on the side of the guides, 25 paces from the flank of the column, having behind him a Chief Bugler. He moves wherever his presence may be necessary.

The Lieutenant-Colonel on the side of the guides, 12 paces from the flank of the column; he marches habitually on a line with the Lieutenant commanding the 1st platoon of the 1st squadron.

The Major marches in the direction of the Lieutenant-Colonel, and on a line with the particular guide of the left of the 5th squadron.

The Adjutant marches on the side of the guides, 2 paces from the flank and on a line with the first files of the column, to observe the guides and the direction of the march.

The Sergeant-Major marches on the side of the guides, 2 paces from the flank of the column, and on a line with the particular guide of the left of the 5th squadron; if the left is in front, he executes on the side of the guides what is prescribed for the Adjutant when the right is in front.

The Quartermaster-Sergeant having the general guide of the right behind him, marches on the side opposite to the guides, two paces from the flank, and on a line with the first files of the column.

The Captains commanding march on the side of the guides, and 4 paces from the flank and abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The second Captains march on the side opposite to the guides, 4 paces from the flank, and abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The 1st Lieutenant of each squadron marches at the head of the 1st platoon, one pace in advance of the first files, having the particular guide of the right on his right.

The chiefs of the other platoons march on the side of the guides, one pace from the flank of the column, and abreast of their first files; the file-closers march on the side opposite to the guides, one pace from the flank, and on a line with the centre of their platoons.

They all march in a similar manner on the flanks of the column when the left is in front; and, in this case, it is the junior 1st Lieutenant who marches in the column at the head of the 4th platoon of each squadron.

The particular guide, who in line is posted on the left of the squadron, marches behind the last files of the squadron; when the column is left in front, he takes post on the left of the officer commanding the 4th platoon, one pace in front of the left file.

When the nature of the ground obliges the officers and file-closers to enter the column, the movement is made successively; the superior officers, the Captains commanding, and the chiefs of platoons, place themselves at the head; the second Captains, and the file-closers, in rear of their respective troops.

The Major marches in rear of the column; and also the Sergeant Major.

The primitive order is resumed as soon as the nature of the ground will permit.

### **Order in column of platoons.**

(Pl. 3, *fig. A.*) In this order, the distance from one platoon to another, measured from the men of one front rank to those of another front rank, is equal to the front of a platoon; that is to say, it is 12 paces if the platoons are of twelve files. Subtracting the depth of two ranks, which is 6 paces, there remains 6 paces from the croup of the horses of the rear rank of one platoon, to the heads of the horses of the front rank of the next platoon, a distance which is equal to half of the front of a platoon.

The Colonel marches at the centre of the regiment, on the side of the guides, 25 paces from the flank of the column, having behind him a Chief Bugler; he moves wherever his presence may be required.

The Lieutenant-Colonel marches habitually on the side of the guides, 12 paces from the flank of the column, and on a line with the Lieutenant commanding the 1st platoon of the 1st squadron.

The Major marches in the direction of Lieutenant-Colonel, and habitually abreast of the file-closers of the last platoon of the column.

The Adjutant marches behind the left file of the 1st platoon, to direct the guide of the column; he should occasionally place himself in front of this file, to satisfy himself that the guides of each platoon preserve the same direction.

The Sergeant-Major marches on the side of the guides, 2 paces from the flank of the column, and abreast of the file-closers of the 4th platoon of the 5th squadron; and, if the left is in front, he executes on the side of the guides that which is prescribed for the Adjutant when the right is in front.

The Quartermaster-Sergeant having the general guide of the right behind him, marches on the side opposite to the guides, 2 paces from the flank of the column, and on a line with the front rank of the 1st platoon.

The Captains commanding march on the side of the guides, four paces from the flank of the column, and habitually abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The second Captains march on the side opposite to the guides, 4 paces from the flank of the column, and abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The 1st and 2d Lieutenants march at the centre of their platoons, one pace from the front rank; those who command the platoons at the head of squadrons, preserve, besides their distance, the ground necessary to enable each squadron, in wheeling into line, to maintain its interval.

The Sergeants, who are file-closers, march on the side opposite to the guides, behind the third file of their platoons.

When the column marches right in front, the particular guide of the right of each squadron marches on the right of the 1st platoon; and the particular guide of the left places himself as file-closer behind the 2d file from the left of the 4th platoon.

The post of these Sergeants is the reverse when the left is in front.

(Pl. 3, *fig. B.*) The squadron being composed of 64 files, when it is broken into sections, the 1st Lieutenant of each squadron marches at the head of the 1st section of the 1st platoon; the chiefs of the other platoons remain on the side of the guides, one pace from and on a line with the front rank of their 1st section.

The file-closers who command the 2d sections, march on the side opposite to the guides, one pace from and on a line with the front rank.

The posts of the commandants of sections are the reverse when the left is in front.

### **Order in column of divisions.**

(Pl. 3, *fig. C.*) The Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, Major, and Adjutant, are posted as in the column of platoons.

It is the same for the Captains commanding, and the second Captains.

The senior 1st Lieutenant commands the 1st division, the other 1st Lieutenant the 2d; they remain, however, at the centre of their platoons.

All the other officers and Sergeants of each division are posted as prescribed in the order in column of platoons, the file-closers remaining in their places, on whatsoever side the guide may be.

### **Order in close column.**

(Pl. 4.) In this order, the distance from one squadron to another, which is 12 paces, (12 Yards,) is measured from the croup of the horses of the rear rank of one squadron, to the heads of the horses of the front rank of the next squadron.

The Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are posted as in columns of platoons.

The Adjutant marches behind the left guide of the 1st squadron, on the alignment of the file-closers, to superintend the direction of the march.

The Sergeant-Major is posted as in column of platoons, and, when the left is in front, he performs the same duties as the Adjutant when the right is in front.

The Quartermaster-Sergeant marches on the side opposite to the guides, as in column of platoons.

The particular guide of the left wing of the 1st squadron moves to the front on the alignment of the officers; he is replaced by the Sergeant file-closer of the 4th platoon. If the left is in front, the particular guide of the right of the 5th squadron places himself on the alignment of the officers



to serve as guide; he is replaced by the Sergeant file-closer of the 1st platoon.

All the officers of the squadron and the file-closers remain posted as in order of battle, except the Captains commanding, who march on the side of the guides, 4 paces from the flank, and on a line with the officers of their squadrons.

### **Compliments by cavalry under review.**

The regiment being in line, the Captains one pace in advance of the centre of their companies, the Lieutenants commanding platoons one pace in advance of the centre of their platoons, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Prepare for review.*
3. *Rear rank, open order.*
4. MARCH.
5. *Right—DRESS.*
6. FRONT.

At the fourth command, the ranks are opened after the principles prescribed [No. 436](#), all the officers in the rank of the file-closers advancing to the front, and placing themselves on the line of officers, opposite to the positions they before occupied. The staff officers place themselves on the right of the rank of company officers, according to their relative rank, one pace from each other. The Quartermaster-Sergeant and the Sergeant-Major, are on the right of the front rank of the regiment.

The Colonel, Lieutenant-Colonel, Major, and Adjutant, are posted as in order of battle.

The music is formed at the same time in one rank on the right of the regiment, and ten paces from it.

After the ranks are opened, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Draw—SABRE.*

In this parade order, the regiment awaits the approach of the personage who is to review it; for whose guide a camp-color will have been placed eighty or one hundred and fifty paces in front of the centre, according to the extent of the line and the plain in front of it.

When the reviewing personage is midway between the camp-color and the Colonel, the latter turns his horse to the right-about on his ground, and commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Present—SABRE.*

And resumes immediately his proper front. The officers all salute.

When the reviewing personage, who has halted until the proper compliments are paid, advances, the Colonel brings his sabre to *a carry*, turns about as before to the line, and commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Carry—SABRE.*

When the whole line remains perfectly steady, except the Colonel, who resumes his proper front.

The reviewing personage now turns off to the right of the regiment, passes thence, in front of all the officers, to the left, around the left, and behind the rank of file-closers,

to the right again. While he is passing around the regiment, no matter what his rank, the music will play; and when he turns off to take his station near the camp-color, the music will cease.

When the music ceases, the Colonel turns about, and commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Rear rank, close order.*
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the officers from the rank of file-closers return to their position in that rank.

The reviewing personage having taken a position near the camp-color, previously placed at a proper distance, the Colonel causes the regiment to break into column of companies, right or left, in front, and commands:

*Pass in review.*

At this command the band and Trumpeters repair to the head of the regimental column, 6 paces front of the Colonel. The Quartermaster-Sergeant places himself 10 paces in front of the Colonel, 2 paces from the flank opposite to the guides.

The Quartermaster, Surgeon, and Assistant-Surgeon, are in one rank, in the order in which they are named, 4 paces in rear of the last division.

The Colonel is 6 paces in front of the Captain of the leading company.

The Lieutenant-Colonel on a line with the first company, 6 paces from the flank opposite to the guide.

The Major on a line with the last company, 6 paces from the side opposite to the guide.

The Adjutant on a line with the second company, 6 paces from the flank opposite to the guide.

The Sergeant-Major on a line with the company next to the rear, 6 paces from the flank opposite to the guide.

Captains, 2 paces in advance of the centre of their companies.

Chiefs of platoons, 2 paces in advance of the centre of their platoons.

Officers of the rank of file-closers, on the side opposite to the guide, on a line with the chiefs of platoons.

The column is then put in march, at a walk, with the guide on the side next to the reviewing personage.

The column first passes at a walk, and afterwards, if required, at a trot.

The regiments take, in marching, intervals of about 40 paces from each other.

When the head of the column arrives within 50 paces of the reviewing personage, the music commences to play.

The band having passed, the chief musician causes it to wheel out of the column and take position opposite to the reviewing personage; the music continues to play, until the last company has passed, when it ceases, and follows in the rear.

Passing at a walk, the Colonel and all the officers salute with the sabre as they successively arrive within six paces of the reviewing personage, turning the heads towards him.

The standard does not salute, except to the President or Vice-President of the United States, Governors of States,

Heads of Departments, or the Commander-in-Chief, when the trumpets are to flourish in passing, the band ceases playing, and resumes the same air or march when the flourishes have ceased.

The guides and the men keep the head well to the front in passing in review.

### **Form and course of inspection.**

The regiment being in line as prescribed for a review, on an intimation from the Inspector, the Colonel causes the companies to wheel to the right. He then orders the ranks to be opened; at which the Standard-Bearers, under the direction of the Adjutant, are posted about 20 paces ahead of the column.

The Colonel seeing the ranks aligned, commands:

1. *Officers and non-commissioned officers.*
2. *To the front of your companies—MARCH,*

on which the officers form themselves in one rank, 12 paces, and the non-commissioned officers in one rank, 6 paces, in advance, along the whole front of their respective troops, in the order of rank, the highest on the right, and the lowest on the left; the Trumpeters of each company, at the same time, take post on the alignment of the front rank, 6 paces from the right; and the Farriers in the rear on the alignment of the rear rank.

Seeing the last order in a train of execution, the Colonel commands:

1. *Field and staff.*
2. *To the front—MARCH.*

The commissioned officers thus designated, form themselves in one rank, 12 paces in front of the standards, in the following order, beginning on the right: Lieutenant-Colonel, Major, Adjutant, Quartermaster, Surgeon, and Assistant-Surgeon. The non-commissioned staff in a similar manner, 6 paces in rear of the preceding rank. The band is formed in one rank, 10 paces in rear of the column, the chief musician 4 paces in front of it.

The Colonel now takes post on the right of the Lieutenant-Colonel; but each of the field officers as may be superior in rank to the Inspector, do not take post as above.

The inspection commences in front. After inspecting the dress and general appearance of the field and commissioned staff, the Inspector, accompanied by these officers, passes down the column, looking at every rank, in front and in rear, with a view to the same objects. He afterwards, in a like manner, passes and inspects the arms; as he successively approaches each company for this purpose, its Captain commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Inspection—(of) ARMS,*

which is executed as prescribed [No. 405](#).

The Inspector then dismounts with the field and commissioned staff, for the purpose of inspecting horse furniture, and valises, preparatory to which, the Colonel causes the column to dismount. The men being then in the position of *stand to horse*, the Colonel commands: **REST**, for the whole column; when the Inspector proceeds to make a minute inspection of the several ranks, in succession commencing in front.

On approaching the non-commissioned staff and the band, the Adjutant gives the necessary orders for the inspection of boxes and valises; and in a like manner as to the Standard-Bearers. To enable the latter to display their valises, after dismounting, the standards are planted firm in the ground. This division being inspected, the Adjutant may direct the Standard-Bearers to link and to disperse, until the standards are to be escorted back to the place from which they were taken. The non-commissioned staff may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

As the Inspector successively approaches the companies, each Captain commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Unstrap valises.*
3. *Open boxes,*

when the valises are placed at the feet of the men, with the flaps from them. In this position the Inspector may examine the contents of the whole, boxes and valises, or of as many as he may think necessary, beginning again with the non-commissioned officers, noticing, in passing, the tools, &c., of the Farriers, and the trumpets of the musicians.

As the Inspector passes each company, the Captain orders the valises to be repacked and restrapped, and the men to file off to their tents or quarters, except the company which is to escort the standards, which awaits the orders of the Colonel.

In an extensive column, some of the rearmost companies, when dismounted, after the inspection of dress, general appearance, horses and arms, may be permitted to *link*,

awaiting the approach of the Inspector. In this case, such companies resume the position above supposed, before the minute inspection.

---

## ARTICLE THIRD.

### DUTIES OF INSTRUCTORS.

The Colonel is responsible for the instruction of the regiment, and he shall not change, under any pretext, the dispositions contained in this book.

He will be present, as often as his other duties permit, at the theoretical and practical instructions, and especially at that of the officers assembled together.

The Lieutenant-Colonel, and Major, are especially charged with the supervision of the instruction of their respective wings.

Individual instruction being the basis of the instruction of squadrons, on which that of a regiment depends, and the first principles having the greatest influence upon this individual instruction, the classes of recruits should be watched with the greatest care.

The instructors place themselves habitually at such a distance that they can see their whole troop at a glance, and make themselves distinctly heard by it. They leave their place as seldom as possible, and only to make the corrections which are indispensable in the position of the men and the execution of the movements.

They repeat, in a few clear and precise words, the explanations which have not been well understood; and, not to



overburden the memory of the men, they always use the same terms to demonstrate the same principles.

They should often join example to precept, should keep up the attention of the men by an animated tone, and pass to another movement as soon as that which they command has been executed in a satisfactory manner. In fine, they should become every day more exacting in regard to precision and unity.

When at rest, the instructor questions the men, to satisfy himself that their lessons have been well understood. In the theoretical instruction, he requires the commands and explanations to be given as if they were on the ground.

---

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

### DIVISION, ORDER, AND PROGRESSION OF INSTRUCTION.

As instruction cannot be established on a solid basis without joining theory to practice, there is in each regiment a theoretical instruction, independent of the exercises in the field.

From the 1st of November to the 1st of May, the Colonel assembles the officers at least twice a week, for the theory of the different parts of their instruction.

The Major and Adjutant assemble, in a like manner, the Sergeants and Corporals.

From the 1st of May to the 1st of November, these theoretical exercises occur once a week for all, and oftener if necessary.

The practical instruction is divided into *instruction on foot* and *instruction mounted*.

The *instruction on foot*, as well as the *instruction mounted*, includes the *school of the trooper*, the *school of the platoon*, and the *school of the squadron*.

The *school of the trooper* is divided into four lessons, and each lesson into two parts.

The *school of the platoon* is divided into four Articles.

The *school of the squadron* is divided into four Articles.

### **Instruction.**

Each lesson lasts one hour and a half, without including the rests.

When the weather is bad, the men are exercised in the riding-house. They are conducted to the riding ground whenever the weather will permit.

The horses of the Orderly Sergeants, and Trumpeters, cannot be excused on any pretext from participating in the different classes of instruction.

The horses which have not been trained, are sent out with a snaffle bridle at least three times a week; and, as far as possible, they are all saddled and ridden.

The Colonel causes the squadrons, divisions, and platoons, to be commanded by all the officers in turn, in order to satisfy himself of their instruction, and to instruct those who are not already sufficiently instructed.

During the summer, and until the end of October, the regiment is exercised alternately at the evolutions and in the details of the service in war. For this purpose, whenever it is practicable, the Colonel takes the regiment into the country, in order to accustom it to pass over all kinds of

ground, and to apply the evolutions to the different localities.

The remount horses are sent out every day for two hours, saddled, and bridled, with a snaffle.

The non-commissioned officers and privates, who are negligent in the different exercises, either on foot or mounted, are put back into the lower classes.

When the regiment is assembled, the Colonel should direct the superior officers to command, occasionally, in the different evolutions, in order to judge of the progress of their instruction. He should also require the other officers to exercise a command superior to that of their grades, when the instruction is sufficiently advanced.

---

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

### GRADATION OF INSTRUCTION.

#### **Recruits.**

The recruit commences his instruction on foot. The first week after his arrival at the regiment is employed exclusively in instructing him in all the details of discipline, police, and interior service, and in those relating to his dress and the grooming of his horse.

He is taught to mount without saddle, on both sides of the horse.

He is taught the name and use of the principal parts of the arms and equipments, and the manner of keeping them

clean; the manner of rolling the cloak, of folding the effects, and of placing them in the valise.

These different instructions are given by the Corporal of the squad, under the superintendence of the Sergeant and officer of the platoon.

At the end of this week, the recruit commences the first lesson on foot; he continues to be instructed in the above-mentioned details.

The recruits are drilled on foot twice a day, when possible, and an hour and a half each time. Half an hour of this time is employed in teaching them the duties of guards.

At the end of six weeks or two months at most, the recruits should be able to mount the quarter guard, and, consequently, they should have commenced the fourth lesson on foot.

Before the recruit mounts guard, he learns the different parts of a complete equipment, and the means of preserving it; and, also, the manner of saddling, bridling, unsaddling, and unbridling, and of packing his effects on the horse.

After he has mounted his first guard, his instruction on horseback is commenced, care being taken to give him a gentle and well-trained horse.

**Recapitulation of the time necessary to instruct a trooper to the school of the platoon mounted, inclusive.**

**DISMOUNTED.**

*School of the trooper.*

1st lesson	{ 1st part, 4 lessons	}	12 lessons.
	{ 2d " 8 "		
2d "	{ 1st part, 6 lessons	}	18 "
	{ 2d " 12 "		
3d "	{ 1st part, 5 lessons	}	10 "
	{ 2d " 5 "		
4th "	{ 1st part, 15 lessons	}	30 "
	{ 2d " 15 "		
Total.....			70 lessons.

*School of the platoon.*

NOTE.—As the *school of the platoon, dismounted* should progress conjointly with that of the trooper mounted, the number of lessons will be such as may be judged necessary.

**MOUNTED.**

*School of the trooper.*

1st lesson	{ 1st part, 5 lessons	}	20 lessons.
	{ 2d " 15 "		
2d "	{ 1st part, 20 lessons	}	40 "
	{ 2d " 20 "		
3d "	{ 1st part, 15 lessons	}	30 "
	{ 2d " 15 "		
4th "	{ 1st part, 15 lessons	}	30 "
	{ 2d " 15 "		
Total.....			120 lessons.

*School of the platoon.*

1st article.....	15 lessons.
2d   "   .....	15   "
3d   "   .....	15   "
4th   "   .....	15   "
<hr/>	
Total.....	60 lessons.

It results from this gradation, that the trooper, after 180 lessons or days of instruction, should be able to enter the *school of the squadron*.

**Corporals.**

The Corporals should be capable of executing all the lessons mounted and dismounted, and should be qualified to teach at least the two first lessons dismounted, and the first lesson mounted.

Their theoretical instruction should include, in addition to these lessons, all the details relative to the functions of their grade in the interior service, both in garrison and in campaign.

The Colonel selects, in each squadron, a certain number of privates, who may be admitted to the theoretical instruction of the Corporals.

**Sergeants.**

The Sergeants should be capable of executing, dismounted and mounted, all that is prescribed by this book; and should be able to teach the lessons of the *school of the trooper*. They should likewise know all the details of the service, so as to have it in their power to conduct their troop and replace the chiefs of platoons if necessary.

The theoretical instruction of the Sergeants should include the *basis of instruction*, the *school of the trooper*, the *school of the platoon*, and the *school of the squadron*; also, the regulations for the interior service in garrison and in campaign, so far as their grade is concerned.

The Colonel selects, in each company, those among the Corporals whom he judges fit to be admitted to the theoretical instruction of the Sergeants.

### **Officers.**

Every officer, from the Colonel to the 2d Lieutenant, should be able to command according to his rank. No one will be considered fully instructed, unless he can also explain and execute all that is contained in this book.

The theory of the officers should include this book and all the regulations which prescribe their duties in their different positions, either in peace or war.

Every officer who joins the regiment for the first time, must be examined on his theoretical and practical instruction by the Colonel.

If the faults committed on drill by an officer of any rank whatsoever, arise from negligence or want of instruction, the commandant of the regiment shall cause him to be immediately replaced.

If the Colonel thinks proper, he may excuse from the theory, every other time, those officers whose instruction is completed.

## ARTICLE SIXTH.

### INSTRUCTION TO MOUNT WITHOUT SADDLE, TO PACK UP, TO SADDLE, AND TO UNSADDLE.

#### **Manner of vaulting.**

Seize the mane with the left hand, hold the reins of the snaffle in the right hand, and place it on the withers, the thumb to the left, the fingers to the right; raise yourself lightly on the two wrists, the body straight; pass the right leg extended, over the croup of the horse, without touching him, and seat yourself gently on horseback.

*To dismount*, pass the left rein of the snaffle into the right hand; place this hand on the withers; seize the mane with the left hand, raise yourself gently on the two wrists; pass the right leg extended over the croup of the horse, without touching him; bring the right thigh near the left, the body straight, and come to the ground lightly on the toes, bending the knees a little.

#### **Manner of packing up the effects.**

The uniform pantaloons, folded the length of the valise, should be well spread out in the bottom.

The white pantaloons, folded in the same manner, placed on the uniform pantaloons.

The shirts, unfolded, are laid on the white pantaloons.

The soldier's book on the shirts.

The cap-cord on the book.

The shaving case, the pocket-handkerchiefs, the gloves, and the socks, divided equally in the ends.

The second pair of boots under the flap of the valise.



The plume in its case, along with the boots.

The stable jacket in the valise-wallet; and also, the forage cap, which is placed in the middle.

The stable frock rolled the length of the cloak, in the forage-sack.

The things used in grooming, the brushes, grease-box, and other cleaning utensils, in the holster-pouch.

### **Manner of rolling the cloak.**

The cloak being entirely unfolded, the sleeves are laid flat and extended parallel to the two front edges of the cloak; each one is then turned up and folded near the elbow, so as to give a length of 3 feet 6 inches from one elbow to the other, the middle of the cloak remaining uncovered. The cape is then turned down over the sleeves, in such a manner that the front edges may exactly cover those of the cloak.

The lower extremity of the cloak is turned up about ten inches; the skirts are likewise turned towards each other, so that they may touch the fold of the sleeves, and that being folded a second time upon themselves, they may give to the cloak the form of a rectangle; the lower extremity of the cloak is then turned up about 7 inches, and it is rolled as tightly as possible, commencing at the collar and pressing the knee upon it as it is rolled, to hold it. The part of the cloak which is rolled is then introduced into the sort of pocket formed by the part which was turned back.

**Manner of adjusting a saddle.****HEAVY CAVALRY.**

The saddle should be placed on the horse without a blanket, in order to see clearly whether its shape agrees with that of his back.

In order that the saddle may be well placed, it is necessary that the point of the bow should be three fingers in rear of the point of the shoulder; that the gullet leave sufficient room on the withers and loins to permit the hand to be passed easily between these parts and the saddle, when the trooper is mounted; that the front part of the gullet be sufficiently wide to prevent the pad from pressing on the side of the withers; that the bars bear equally upon all parts without touching the back-bone, and that the points of the bow do not press upon the back. The breast-strap should be placed above the point of the shoulders, so as not to interfere with their

**LIGHT CAVALRY.**

The saddle, should be laid on the horse without a blanket, in order to see clearly whether its shape agrees with that of his back.

In order that the saddle may be well placed, it is necessary that the front end of the bare should be three fingers in rear of the point of the shoulder; that the bows be sufficiently elevated above the withers and loins to allow the fist to be passed under the rear bow, and almost as much under the front one, when the trooper is mounted; that the ends of the bars do not bear upon the back, and that the finger can be passed under them; that the rest of the bare bear flatly on the back, in such a way, however, that the finger may be passed between their upper edge and the back, and that they may be at least two finger's breadth from the backbone. The breast-strap should be

movements, and the crupper should not be stretched for fear of wounding the horse under the tail.

placed above the point of the shoulders, so as not to interfere with their movement. The leathern heart should be in the middle of the breast, and the crupper should not be stretched for fear of wounding the horse under the tail.

To attach the stirrups to the saddle run the stirrup-leather through the eye of the stirrup, pass it through the loop, and draw it up until the loop touches the eye of the stirrup: then, holding the stirrup-leather in such a manner that the buckle may be turned towards the horse, run it through the hole or staple in the saddle from above, and draw it down; fasten it at the proper length by means of the buckle, run it through the loop which is under the buckle, and pass the end twice through the same loop.

When the stirrup is arranged in this manner, and hangs naturally, the buckle will be on the inside next the horse.

### **Manner of saddling.**

#### **HEAVY CAVALRY.**

Approach the horse on the left side, and lay the blanket, folded in four equal parts, on his back; the edges on the left side, the large fold on the withers.

Seize it, then, with the left hand on the withers,

#### **LIGHT CAVALRY.**

Approach the horse on the left side, and lay the blanket, folded into 12 or 16 thicknesses, on his back; the edges on the left side.

Seize it, then, with the left hand on the withers, and with the right on the

and with the right on the loins; slide it, once or twice from front to rear to smooth the hair, taking care to raise it in carrying it forward, so as not to brush up the hair.

The blanket should be so arranged as not to project beyond the bars in rear. Throw the girths over the seat of the saddle, and also the crupper, which is held with the left hand.

Seize the saddle with the hand at the pommel, the right hand under the cantle, place it gently on the horse's back, bringing it from the direction of his croup, in order not to frighten him, and place it a little in rear that the crupper may be put on without drawing it back. Let down the girths and crupper, step behind the horse, seize the tail with the left hand, and twist the hair around the dock with the right hand, which then seizes the crupper and passes the tail through it, taking care that none of the

loins; slide it once or twice from front to rear, to smooth the hair, taking care to raise it in carrying it forward, so as not to brush up the hair. The blanket should be so arranged as to project one finger's breath beyond the bars in rear.

Seize the saddle at the pommel with the left hand, at the cantle with the right hand, and place it gently on the horse's back, bringing it from the direction of his croup, in order not to frighten him, and place it a little in rear, that the crupper may be put on without drawing it back. Let down the girth, breast-strap, and crupper; step behind the horse, seize the tail with the left hand, and twist the hair around the dock with the right, which then seizes the crupper and passes the tail through it, taking care that none of the hair remains under it, which would hurt the horse.

Step to the right side of

hair remains under it, which would hurt the horse.

Step to the right side of the horse to let down the right stirrup, return to the left side, raise up the saddle, carry it forward, taking care that the blanket is smooth, and that it does not compress the withers, which is avoided by raising it up over this part; see that there are no straps caught under the saddle; begin by fastening the first girth, which is passed through the loop of the breast-strap; the second girth less tight than the first girth and surcingle, because it is the one which most impedes the respiration of the horse; then buckle the breast-strap and let down the left stirrup.

the horse, and, seizing the saddle at the cantle with the left hand, and at the pommel with the right hand, raise it and carry it forward, without moving the blanket; see at the same time that there are no straps caught under the saddle; place the girth flat, and pass it through the loop of the false martingale; return to the left side by the head of the horse; run the left hand between the withers and the blanket; raise it up a little so that it will not compress the withers; buckle the girth and the breast-strap.

### **Manner of packing the effects on the horse.**

#### **HEAVY CAVALRY.**

The schabraque being on the saddle, the front part turned back on the seat, and the straps run through their holes, fasten the cloak and

#### **LIGHT CAVALRY.**

The schabraque being on the saddle, the front part turned back on the seat, the surcingle passed through the loop of the false martin-

the forage-sack containing the stable-frock, drawing the middle-strap very tight, that the cloak may be on the pommel. With the cloak straps, fasten the ends of the cloak and forage-sack in such a manner that the ends shall not project beyond the schabraque. Place the pistol in the holster in front of the cloak, and fasten the strap in the ring of the butt. Place the hatchet in its case, and turn down the front of the schabraque.

Extend the right and left packing-straps upon

the croup; place the wallet flat upon the pillion; lay the middle packing-strap over the wallet; place the valise with the buckles towards the saddle; fasten it tightly with this strap; fasten the wallet and valise together with the side-straps; then attach the forage-cord, rolled and twisted into a circle, to the left pack-strap, under the schabraque; in the same

gale, the packing straps run thro' their holes, fasten the cloak and the forage-sack, containing the stable-frock, drawing the middle-strap very tight, that the cloak may be front of the pommel, falling down in front of the holsters. With the cloak straps, fasten the ends of the cloak and forage-sack, in such a manner that the ends shall not project beyond the schabraque. Place the pistol in the holster inside of the cloak, and fasten the strap in the ring of the butt. Place the hatchet in its case, turn down the front of the schabraque, and pass the gun-strap through its hole.

Extend the right and left packing-strap upon the croup; place the wallet flat against the cantle; lay the middle packing-strap over the wallet; place the valise with the buckles towards the saddle; fasten it tightly to the peak with this strap; fasten the wallet and valise together with the side-

manner, attach the watering bridle on the right side; see that there is no fold in the valise, and that it lays flat.

When nose-bags are used, they will be attached to the pommel, on the off side.

straps; then attach the forage-cord, rolled and twisted into a circle, on the left side, under the schabraque; in the same manner, attach the watering bridle on the right side to the straps which are fixed to the saddle for that purpose; see that there is no fold in the valise.

Fasten the lock-cover to the cloak-strap on the right side, the buckles against the schabraque.

When blankets are used instead of schabraques, they will be folded twice, with the edges placed on the off side.

To have the effects well packed, the three straps must be tightly buckled, and must come up straight 3 inches from each other; the three buckles on the same line in the middle of the valise; the valise and wallet square, so that both can be seen from behind. (*Light cavalry*, the wallet placed in such a manner that it cannot be seen from behind.)

The valise and wallet should not incline to either side.

The cloak and other Articles in front should be so arranged, as to raise the bridle-hand as little as possible.

Nothing should project beyond the schabraque.

If a bundle of forage is to be carried, it is placed on the valise, a little to the rear, and tied to the packing-straps.

When the carbine is in the boot, it is so placed that its end may be 4 or 5 inches from the horse's shoulder, without projecting beyond it; it is fastened to the saddle by the gun-strap, which makes two turns round the small of the stock. The carbine must never be left in the boot, when the horses enter or go out of the stable.

### **Manner of bridling.**

Stand on the left side of the horse, the reins of the snaffle and of the curb-bridle in the bend of the left arm, the top of the head-stall on the fore arm. Seize the curb-bridle and the snaffle by the top of the head-stall with the right hand, the nails downwards; pass the arm over the horse's neck, so that the hand may be in front of his head; seize the snaffle-bit with the left hand near the ring, and the curb-bit near the boss, taking care that the snaffle-bit is above the curb-bit; place them together in the horse's mouth, pressing the left thumb upon the bars to make him open it; pass the horse's ears between the front and top of the head-stall, commencing with the right; run the nose-band through the square rings of the halter, so that the part of the halter over the nose may be covered, and buckle it, leaving the cheek-pieces of the snaffle outside; hook the curb, buckle the throat-strap, passing it under that of the halter; fasten the button-hole of the halter to the button on the top of the head-stall; clear the forelock; pass the reins of the snaffle and curb-bridle over the horse's neck; attach the halter-strap, with the end wound up, to the holster-strap on the left side; (*Light cavalry*, to the cloak strap.)

If the horse is properly bridled, the buckles of the cheek-piece, and of the throat-strap, on the right side, will be at the same height, and those of the cheek-piece, throat-strap,



and snaffle, on the left side, will form a kind of crow's foot; the throat strap will not be so tight as to impede the respiration; the cheek-pieces will be in rear of the temples, and the snaffle-bit will be above the curb-bit.

### **Manner of unbridling.**

Unhook the curb, unbuckle the nose-band, then the throat-strap, unbutton the halter, unroll the halter-strap, and fasten the horse to the rack until he is unsaddled; bring the reins of the snaffle and curb-bridle on the top of the head, pass them over the ears, let them fall into the bend of the left arm; take off the bridle from the horse's head, beginning with the right ear; make two turns around the bridle, with the reins below the front piece, and pass them between the front and top of the head-stall, so that the bridle may be hung up.

### **Manner of unpacking.**

Unbuckle the packing-straps, ending with the middle one; take off the valise and wallet; unbuckle the front packing straps; take off the lock-cover; turn back the front of the schabraque on the seat; unbuckle the cloak-straps, ending with the middle one; take off the cloak and the sack: free the pistol from its strap, and take it and the hatchet out of the holsters; take off the forage-cord and watering bridle; unbuckle the surcingle, and take off the schabraque, or blanket; double the schabraque or blanket; lay all the effects on it, roll them up in it, and fasten them with the surcingle.

The trooper then rolls up all the straps, and unsaddles in the prescribed manner.

**Manner of unsaddling.****HEAVY CAVALRY.**

Strap up the stirrups, unbuckle the breast-strap, the surcingle, the first girth which is freed from the loop, then the second; carry the saddle a little back to free the tail from the crupper; raise the saddle, passing the left arm along the gullet; take the girths in the right hand to put them on the saddle if they are clean; if not, they will be wiped before being put up; take off the blanket, double it with the wet side inwards, lay it on the saddle and fasten it there by means of the crupper, which is turned up and attached to the cloak strap.

**LIGHT CAVALRY.**

Unbuckle the breast-strap, pass the end of it through the holster-strap to hold it up. Unbuckle the girth; step to the right side, free the girth from the loop of the false martingale; turn up the girth and breast-strap if they are clean, and if not, after having wiped them; then throw over the right stirrup, carry the saddle a little back to free the tail from the crupper, throw the left stirrup and take off the saddle with both hands, the left hand hold of the pommel, the right at the cantle; take off the blanket, double it with the wet side outwards; lay it on the saddle and fasten it there by means of the crupper, which is turned up and attached to the cloak-strap.

## ARTICLE SEVENTH.

## OF THE BIT.

(Pl. 6, *fig. A.*) The bit is composed of seven principal pieces in iron, viz:

The mouth-piece (1), the branches (2), the rings (3), the curb (4), and the cross-bar (5).

The other pieces are the *S* (6), and the *hook* (7).

The *mouth-piece* is fixed to the branches by the *fontceaux* (8), and is divided into *barrels* (9), and *crook* (10).

The *barrels* act upon the bars and render the horse obedient, with the assistance of the curb.

The *crook* forms a place for the tongue.

The *branches* cause the mouth-piece and curb to act. Each one is divided into *eye of the cheek-piece* (11), *eye of the hook* or *S* (12), *banquet* (13), *bow of the banquet* (14), *tongue of the banquet* (15), and *ring eye* (16).

The *eye of the cheek-piece* serves to pass the cheek-piece through. The *eyes of the hook* or *S* serves to hold the hook or *S* of the curb. The *banquet and tongue of the banquet* serve to unite the mouth-piece to the branches. The *bow of the banquet* serves to strengthen the branch, and the *ring eye* is to hold the rings for the reins.

The object of the *cross-bar* is to strengthen the bit, and to prevent the branches from hooking the reins of the other horses.

(*Fig. B.*) The *curb* is composed of *links* (1) and *rings* (2); the *links* act upon the horse's chin, and the *rings* serve to fasten the curb to the *S* and the hook; they are three in

number, two on the side of the hook, and one on the side of the S.

The *S* serves to fasten the curb to the bit, and the *hook* to hook the curb.

The *bosses* (17) are ornaments to cover the fonceaux there are holes in them by which they are riveted to the branches.

(*Fig. C.*) The *snaffle-bit* is composed of five pieces of iron:

The *right side* (1).

The *left side* (2).

The *uniting ring* (3).

The *rings* (4), to receive the cheek-pieces and reins.

(*Fig. D.*) The *bit of the watering-bridle* is composed of four pieces of iron:

The *right side* (1).

The *left side* (2).

Two *rings with wings* (3), to receive the reins and cheek-pieces.

To bit the horse properly, it is necessary to understand:

1st. The effects of the bit.

2d. The horse's mouth.

3d. The conformation of the horse.

The bit is *medium*, (*fig. E.*) when the branches (1) are *straight*, that is, when the eye of the ring is in the prolongation of the line passing through the centre of the fonceaux and the eye of the cheek-piece; and when the mouth-piece is *mean*, that is with the barrel (2) large and rising, and the crook not much elevated.

The bit is *mild* (*fig. F.*) when the branches (1) are short and the eye of the ring in rear of the line; and when the mouth-piece is *straight*, that is, when the barrel (2) is large near the branches, slopes upwards a little, and is almost without crook.

The bit is *severe* (*fig. G.*) when the branches (1) are long, with the eye of the ring in front of the line; and when the mouth-piece is *powerful*, that is, when the barrel (2) is straight and small, and the crook elevated.

The Position of the eye of the branch renders the action of the bit more or less powerful. If the eye is high, the bit resists the motion of the branches and produces a stronger impression on the mouth and chin. If, on the contrary, the eye is too low, the bit yields to the motion of the branches, and produces less effect.

It is necessary to consider the interior and exterior parts of the horse's mouth.

The interior parts are the *tongue*, the *canal* in which the tongue rests, the *tusks*, the *bars*, and the *inside of the lips*.

The exterior parts are the *bones of the lower jaw*, the *canal* between these bones, the *slit of the lips*, the *outside of the lips*, and the *chin*.

The most sensitive parts of the horse's mouth are the *bars* and the *chin*; the *tongue* and the *lips* are less so. Bars which are elevated, sharp, and without flesh, denote sensibility; it diminishes in proportion as the bars become lower, round, and covered with flesh, and as the chin becomes thick and fleshy.

When a horse is well-made, and free in his motions and gait, it is to be presumed that he has a good mouth.

When a horse has a heavy head and limbs, and is lazy and clumsy in his gaits, it is to be presumed that he has a bad mouth.

When a horse has long slim legs, a long body, and is loosely put together, great care is requisite in the choice of a bit, as he submits with difficulty to the action of it, not being able to endure its effects without pain, or without endeavoring to avoid them.

When a horse has the bars elevated, sharp, and without flesh, the tongue thin, and the canal sufficiently large to hold it, he should have a straight bit (*fig. F, No. 2*), that the barrel being thicker near the branches, may press upon the tongue and lips, and ease as much as possible the other parts of the mouth. The tongue and lips, from their slight degree of sensibility, being able to sustain the bit, prevent it from producing too great an effect on the bars, and pressing on them in such a manner as to cause pain.

When a horse has sensitive bars, a thick tongue, and the canal too small to hold it conveniently, he should have a medium bit (*fig. E, No. 2*), that the tongue, having a little liberty, the bit may press at the same time on the bars and tongue, without causing inconvenience. A straight bit, in such a mouth, would deprive the tongue of its liberty, and would bear entirely upon that part which is the least sensitive; the mouth would be incommoded, the horse would bear upon the hand, and would resist.

When a horse has low, round, and fleshy bars, he should have a severe bit (*fig. G, No. 2*), because bars of this kind possessing little sensibility, can only acquire it from the action of the bit, which presses upon them.

When a horse has too large a mouth, he should have a bit with long branches.

When the horse has a small mouth, he should have a light bit; but as the small quantity of iron might be unpleasant to him, from the delicate and sensitive bars which these horses usually have, it is necessary to use the straight mouth-piece with short and mild branches.

When a horse throws out his head to the front, he should have, to prevent it, long and *severe* branches (*fig. G, No. 1*); if at the same time he has a sensitive mouth, which is frequently the case, he should be given a straight mouth-piece (*fig. G, No. 2*).

When a horse carries his head low, and against his breast, he should have short branches (*fig. F, No. 1*); if at the same time his mouth is not very sensitive, which is not uncommon, he must have a severe mouth-piece (*fig. G, No. 2*).

Horses which are lower before than behind, are rarely well upon the haunches; they feel the extra weight which the croup throws on the shoulders, want confidence in their legs, and seek the aid of the bit. They generally have a bad mouth, and bear upon the hand. They should have a *severe* bit with *powerful* branches (*fig. G, No. 1 and 2*). When the mouth is very sensitive, which is rare with this kind of horses, a straight mouth-piece (*fig. F, No. 2*) is arranged with powerful branches (*fig. G, No. 1*). This mouth-piece moderates the effect of the branches.

Horses which are lower behind than before generally have a fine neck and shoulders; but their proportions show little strength in the hinder parts. They are light in their

for-parts, and apt to rear; they should have short and mild branches (*fig. F, No. 1*).

The bit should bear upon the bars one finger's breadth above the lower tusks; if it bore higher, it would wrinkle the lips and hurt the bone of the bar, which is sharper there; lower down, it would touch the upper tusk. In no case should the top of the mouth-piece touch the palate.

The bit should be neither wide nor narrow; in the first case; it becomes displaced and does not fit; in the second case, it compresses and wounds the mouth, and may cause the horse to contract the habit of seizing the branches with his lips, or of taking one of them between his teeth.

The curb should be arranged so as to produce its effect upon the chin, and not to compress it when the bridle hand does not act. It should be neither long nor short; in the first case, it would permit the bit to swing, which would destroy its effect; in the second case, it would restrain the horse too much, and lead him to resist.

When young horses are bridled for the first time, a piece of leather or felt may be placed between the curb and chin, as their chins are often very sensitive. These means are no longer used after they have become accustomed to the effect of the bit.

A bit which is well adjusted should act upon all parts of the mouth, according to their sensibility.

Horses resist the bit when it causes pain; the most sensitive are the most impatient: when the bit hurts them, they rush forward to escape the pain, which they imagine to be a punishment. The more they are restrained by an unskilful hand, the greater the compression of the bars becomes; it



increases the evil instead of allaying it, and gives the horse a bad mouth.

When a horse shakes his head, it is a sign that the bit incommodes him. There are horses which persist in the habit of shaking the head after the bit has been properly arranged; the hand alone can then correct this vice, and not the martingale, which is improperly supposed to be a remedy.

As a general rule, all horses should have a *mild* bit; and, as it is impossible that each horse in a regiment should have a particular bit, they are furnished of three different patters: there is one-sixth of *mild bits*, four-sixths of *medium bits*, and one-sixth of *severe bits*.

---

## ARTICLE EIGHTH.

### MANNER OF TRAINING YOUNG HORSES.

The remount horses are not mounted immediately after their arrival at the regiment; they are merely led out by men mounted on trained horses; in winter, the warmest part of the day is chosen for this exercise. They must be led sometimes on the right and sometimes on the left side.

When the horses have perfectly recovered from the fatigues of the journey, they are ridden out.

They move always at a walk, the men merely requiring their horses to follow those which precede in the column.

The horses being thus habituated to carry the weight of a man, they are taught in the stables to suffer themselves to be saddled, to have the foot taken up, the shoe struck, &c.;

observing always, if the horse objects, to make use of gentle means to remove his fears.

It should be borne in mind that nothing must be required of young horses beyond their strength, and that punishment is to be resorted to only at the last extremity, and when well assured that the faults arise from viciousness and not from ignorance.

The horses should be gentle to mount, should march on a straight line and circular line at all paces, should back, make a few side steps to the right and left, suffer pressure in the ranks, leap the ditch and bar, and should not be alarmed at the noise of arms and drums, or the waving of standards and the flags of lances.

To avoid repetition, this Article presents only those details which regard the horse, and that which is prescribed in the *schools of the trooper and platoon* is conformed to for the commands and execution of all the movements, observing to follow the progression of these schools from point to point, but always with a view to the instruction of the horse.

## FIRST LESSON.

The horses saddled, and with snaffle bridles, are placed in one rank three paces from each other.

The lesson in mounting is given to each horse separately, the instructor holding him by the reins of the snaffle; the trooper caresses the horse, on coming up to him, puts his foot carefully in the stirrup, raises himself without abruptness, seats himself in the saddle, and caresses the horse again; he pauses longer on the stirrup in proportion as the horse becomes more calm, and he mounts and dismounts

successively on the right and left side, to render the horse more submissive.

To teach the horse the effect of the reins, they should be opened without abruptness, but freely, so as to leave no doubt of what is required of him.

To teach him the effect of the legs, the trooper has two switches, one in each hand; they must be of a pliant wood, sufficiently long to reach the horse behind the girths, just where the legs close. The legs are closed gradually, and if the horse does not obey, the switches are used, the force of the blow being increased progressively, until he learns to move off at the sole pressure of the legs. The switches are afterwards used only when he hesitates.

To make the horse turn, open freely the rein on the side toward which he is to turn, and close the leg on the same side; if he does not obey the pressure of the leg, use the switch on that side; when the movement is nearly finished, diminish the effect of the rein and leg, sustaining him with the opposite rein and leg.

At the commencement, the horse is made to describe large arcs, and he is brought by degrees to turn upon the arcs prescribed in the first lesson.

When all that is above prescribed is perfectly understood, the instruction commences.

The instruction is not given at a halt, as is required in the first lesson of the school of the trooper, but the march in column is performed on the track, as in the second part of that lesson; the instructor places a trained horse at the head, and the men preserve an interval of three paces, that they may conduct their horses more easily.

The troopers should, at first, preserve great suppleness in their position, and pliancy in their movements, that they may not discourage the horses, already annoyed by a weight to which they are not accustomed. The horses should not yet be required to march very straight; it is sufficient that they are made acquainted with the reins and legs by bringing them back to the line when they are too far from it, and by using the means prescribed for the passage of corners.

This first instruction is given at a walk, to render it easier to the horse.

It is especially in the execution of the *right wheel*, *left wheel*, *right about wheel*, and *left about wheel*, that the troopers should use the reins and their legs with precision, in order that the horse may become well acquainted with them.

To make the horse back, the instructor having dismounted, places himself in front of the horse, seizes one rein with each hand, and bears upon the snaffle.

If the horse refuses to back, the instructor having taken both reins in one hand, with the other touches him gently on the fore-legs with a switch, caresses him when he obeys, and stops him after two or three steps. He is not required to back straight.

During the first days, the instruction should be short, and interrupted by frequent repose.

During the moments of repose, the lesson in mounting is repeated; and when the horse no longer stirs, the trooper mounts and dismounts without his being held by the instructor. If the horse is still unquiet, the instructor holds him again until he becomes calm, seeking to give him

confidence, and being very careful not to ill-use him, which would only render him more restive.

After a few days instruction, the horse is taught to hold himself straight, and more precision is exacted in the passage of the corners, as well as in all the movements and changes of direction, but always at a walk.

The trooper begins to lessen the movement of the reins a little, and to make less use of the switches, that the horse may become more and more accustomed to obey the *aids* alone.

When the horse has learned to hold himself straight, and when he obeys the hands and legs tolerably, the instructor causes him to take a moderate trot; but he is not kept long at this pace.

At a trot, the same precision is not at first required in the position and movements of the horse as at a walk; it is acquired by degrees.

The horses are practised in backing when mounted; the troopers should act with great gentleness, contenting themselves at the commencement with making the horse take two or three steps to the rear, without requiring him to back straight.

Whenever a horse has obeyed, the hand should be held lightly, and he should be caressed.

## SECOND LESSON.

The horses, saddled, and bridled with a snaffle, are placed in one rank 3 paces from each other.

When the horses obey the aids sufficiently, the switches are no longer used, but they are then made acquainted with

the spur; it is only used when the horse does not obey the legs. In this case, the trooper having conformed to what is prescribed **No. 315**, applies both spurs vigorously, at the moment when the horse commits the fault; at the same time the bridle hand is slackened, unless the horse should have left the track, when he will be replaced on it. The spurs should never be applied unreasonably, in a spiritless manner, or one after the other, for fear the horse may acquire a habit of kicking.

The horses are now required to move perfectly straight on a straight line, and to bend themselves a little in turning to the right or left. They are afterwards made to trot alternately to the right and to the left hand, great attention being paid to give them a free and regular gait.

When the horses have acquired suppleness and courage, the trot becomes more frequent and lasts longer; and all the movements and changes of direction which have been executed at a *walk*, are repeated at this gait.

The oblique march from a halt is not executed.

When the horses perform well on a straight line, they are placed in the ring, and made to take a few turns in each direction, first at a *walk*, and then at a *trot*. When the horses are in the ring, they should have the position described in **No. 327**.

The horses are made to execute the right *wheel*, *left wheel*, *right-about wheel*, and *left-about wheel*, and they are thus confirmed in their knowledge of the reins and legs.

At the end of the lessons, the horses being more calm and obedient, are made to pass successively from the head to the foot of the column, which is done with great care, and those

which leave the track in spite of all precautions, are brought back to it with great gentleness.

This lesson is repeated, the horses being taken indiscriminately from the centre of the column.

The *trot* is not yet commenced from a halt, nor are the horses halted when moving at that pace.

When the horses trot well, the pace is increased, but only for one or two turns at the most.

They then take one or two turns at a gallop, merely to give them a first knowledge of this gait, to try their strength, and to increase their suppleness, without requiring them to start correctly.

Young horses are apt to run away in starting at a gallop; the troopers should endeavor to calm them, and should especially avoid exciting them too much.

Finally, they are taught to take a few side steps, as it is prescribed [No. 342](#).

This exercise, being difficult for the horse, requires great mildness and patience on the part of the instructor; a few movements of the shoulders to the right and left, and one or two side steps, are sufficient for the first time.

When a horse refuses to obey, the instructor shows him the whip, and, if that is not sufficient, he touches him lightly with it behind the girths; the horse is caressed after he has obeyed.

The lesson in *backing* is repeated, but with more strictness, and if the horse throws himself out of the line, he is cautiously replaced on it.

During the moments of repose, the troopers being in column, or in one rank at 3 paces from each other, the instruc-

tor causes them to *mount* and *dismount* alternately on the right and on the left side.

### THIRD LESSON.

For this lesson the horses are bridled with the curb bridle.

The instruction at a halt, which is prescribed [No. 354](#), is not given.

The horses marching on the track, the first thing is to accustom them to the weight of the bit; to effect this, the trooper guides his horse with the snaffle only, which he holds by the middle in his right hand, taking care to hold the reins of the curb-bridle so loose that the bit will not act.

When the horse no longer shows any uneasiness, he is taught the effect of the bit.

Whenever there is a corner to pass, the horse is *gathered* by making use of the snaffle; the horse having obeyed, and having begun to turn to the right or left, the snaffle is slackened, and the movement is completed with the bridle hand; if the horse still shows hesitation, the bridle is slackened and the snaffle is again used.

The snaffle, used in this manner in passing the corners, and in all changes of direction, teaches the horse by degrees the effect of the bit, and the use of it is insensibly diminished until he can be guided with the left hand alone.

The effect of the bit being much more powerful than that of the snaffle, the movements of the left hand should therefore be more progressive.



In all difficult movements, such as to *go out of the column*, to *passage*, &c., if the instructor finds some of the horses undecided, he will make the troopers use the snaffle.

#### FOURTH LESSON.

The horses being perfectly gentle to mount, and knowing how to back properly, the troopers mount and dismount in two ranks, as in [Nos. 268, 292, and 293](#).

The instruction is the same as in the preceding lessons, but the troopers are armed. The carbine is in the boot, and the sabre in the scabbard; in proportion as the horses become accustomed to it, the carbines are slung and the sabres drawn.

The manual of arms is then executed, first at a *halt*, afterwards when marching at a *walk* and at a *trot*, as in the 4th lesson of the *school of the trooper*, the greatest gentleness being always used to accustom the horses to it by degrees.

#### **Manner of accustoming the horses to leap the ditch and the bar.**

At the end of the lesson, and before the horses return to the stable, they are practised in leaping the ditch and the bar.

This instruction demands many precautions and great care. The ditch is leaped before the bar, which is more difficult.

At the commencement, the ditch should be narrow and not deep, and the bar should be quite low.

The horses are always led at first, care being taken to put at their head a horse already used to this exercise.

To prevent the horse from stopping short, as it often happens, he is made to pass by the side of the ditch, and over the bar, which has been let down, in order that he may see beforehand the obstacles which he is to leap.

After these precautions have been taken, the trooper holds the end of the bridle, reins in the right hand, and runs to the ditch or bar, which he leaps the first; the instructor follows the horse, Shows him the whip, and cracks it at the same time, to make him follow; the trooper caresses him after he has leaped.

If the horse refuses, the instructor forces him with the whip, using great patience, but never suffering him to return to the stable until he has leaped.

The horses should leap only once, or at most, twice a day; were it repeated too often, they would at last become discouraged.

The horse should not be made to leap mounted, until he has leaped without hesitation when led. For this purpose, each trooper, on arriving at the ditch or bar, follows what is laid down in [No. 415](#), and the following paragraphs.

When a horse refuses to obey, it is necessary to take room and try again to make him leap, placing him, when necessary, a few paces behind another horse which leaps freely; the instructor follows, to compel him with the whip, and, if in spite of all precautions, he still refuses to leap, the trooper dismounts, leads his horse, and does not mount again until he leaps without hesitation.

### **Assembly of the young horses in a platoon.**

To accustom the young horses to the pressure of the ranks, and to the movements which they must execute

together, the progression of the four Articles of the school of the platoon is followed, conforming to what follows.

The successive alignments at a halt, are not practised at first with the young horses, because they are not generally sufficiently calm.

In the formations, the troopers should keep their horses straight, and align themselves as they arrive on the line; but once in the rank and halted, they should no longer seek to put them straight, or to close, as the young horses are impatient when too long gathered, and almost always resist.

In beginning to march, by twos, by fours, and by platoon, to troopers should preserve sufficient space, taking care not to close; they should relax the thighs and legs, require little from their horses, and calm those which are excited by *stopping* and *slackening the bridle*.

When the horses are calm and march quietly, the troopers approach boot to boot, without, however, pressing each other, and it is not until then, that more exactness is observed in the distances, directions, and alignments.

The horses which suffer most from pressure, are placed on the flanks, and they are taken gradually towards the centre, where the pressure is more felt.

In the march in column and in line, attention is paid to the gaits, to render them equal and regular: without changing the formation too often, until the horses are perfectly trained.

Wheeling by platoon is practised; but these movements are frequently to be interrupted by direct marches, to calm those horses to which the pressure sometimes becomes too severe. The pace of the horses near the pivot being slackened, they become impatient at being thus restrained by the

hand of the rider, and they almost always resist, when they are made to wheel for a long time, and often.

They execute, at a *walk* only, the *right wheel*, *left wheel*, *right-about wheel*, *left-about wheel by fours*, taking care not to repeat them too often.

They are made to gallop by twos, by fours, and by platoon, but not long at a time; no other movements are executed at this pace.

The young horses are not practised at the charge.

On the last day of their instruction they are mounted with arms and baggage; should any horse be rendered uneasy by the valise, and kick and resist, he is separated from the troop, and is accustomed by degrees to the valise by mounting him apart, and by letting him stand packed in the stable an hour or two each day.

When the horses are sufficiently trained, and some weeks before they enter the squadron, they are practised in the different formations of the *school of the platoon*, at the quick paces, the gallop being used with great moderation.

### **Manner of accustoming young horses to firing, and military noises.**

A few trained horses accustomed to the firing, are mounted with the young horses; towards the end of the lesson, the troopers who mount the former separate themselves a few paces from the others and fire pistols, while the others continue to march on the track; the troopers taking care to quiet and caress those which are excited or frightened.

This method is continued during some days, the troopers approaching nearer and nearer, and finally firing inside of

the square; they fire afterwards when returning to the quarters, at first in rear of the column, then near the centre, and at last at the head, facing it at the distance of a few paces.

There will be an interval between the shots at first, and they will be fired more frequently in proportion as the horses become more calm, taking care not to burn them with the grains of powder.

When the young horses are somewhat accustomed to the noise of arms, the troopers who ride them having loaded their pistols between the lessons, fire one after another at a signal from the instructor.

This lesson should be given with care, the firing being stopped when the horses become excited; after they have become more calm, the shots are repeated with shorter intervals. The carbines are afterwards used.

Should there be any horses so restive as to throw the others habitually into disorder, they must be sent back to the stable; they are then taken out separately, every morning and evening, to accustom them to the noise of arms. For this purpose they are led to the riding-ground, where pistols are fired while they are caressed, and a few oats are given them. The shots are first fired from a distance, and approach gradually. After the horses become accustomed to them, they are joined to the others, to receive the same lessons when mounted.

When the horses are no longer frightened at the successive carbine or pistol shots, they are formed at the end of the riding ground; they are marched gently towards some dismounted men placed at the other end, who fire together several times in succession; when the horses are within fifty

paces the firing ceases, and they are marched on until they come up to the men, where they are halted and caressed.

An officer is always present at this lesson, to see that it is given properly and without disorder.

The young horses are likewise accustomed to the manual of arms, the waving of standards, colors, and the flags of lances, to the noise of drums, and finally to all military noises. This is always done at the end of the lessons, the same progression being followed, and the same gentle means used.

### **Horses that are difficult to train.**

Young horses often offer a resistance, the cause of which should be known in order to apply a remedy.

Some jump from gaiety or too much spirit; they should be brought back gently to the track, without ill-using them, and should be calmed by stopping and slackening the bridle, very little use being made of the legs.

Others jump from viciousness, and to throw their rider; they must be made to feel all the degrees of the *aids* to quiet them, punishment being employed as a last resource, as it would make them worse were it too prompt or too frequent.

In regard to horses which stop and refuse to advance, this may arise from weakness, from fear, or from obstinacy.

If it be from weakness, which may be readily seen from the conformation of the horse and the manner in which he moves, the work must be proportioned to his strength.

If it be from fear, he must be taken up gently to the object which frightens him, stopping occasionally before arriving at it, slackening the bridle, encouraging him by

the voice, and using all means to give him confidence. When he has at last come up to the object, he is permitted to smell it, to show him that he has nothing to fear, and he is then caressed. In no case should a timid horse be punished, as that would only increase the evil.

Finally, if it be from obstinacy, after all gentle means have been tried, the whip must be resorted to; as the spur often induces the horse to resist still more, it is for the instructor, who knows him, to prescribe or forbid the use of it.

There are some horses which have a habit of rearing. The rider must throw the upper part of the body forward, without deranging his seat; he must slacken one rein, and draw upon the other.

There are other horses which kick. The rider must throw the body a little to the rear, without stiffness, raise the bridle hand to prevent the horse from putting his head between his legs, and force him to move off by closing the legs.

It is rarely that a horse kicks up straight; he almost always throws the croup to the right or left. While conforming to what has been said above, the trooper should bear harder upon the rein on the side towards which the horse kicks, in order to oppose the *shoulders to the haunches*.

When a horse intends to kick up while in motion, it may be perceived from the slackening of the pace of his fore-legs. In the same manner, his intention to rear may be known, by the slackening of his hind-legs.

If the horses have resisted both gentle means and punishment, recourse is had to the longe.

### **Lesson of the longe.**

This lesson requires great caution, in order not to injure the horse in trying to subdue him; the lesson should last but half an hour, or three-quarters at most, and there should be frequent repose.

The cavesson serves to moderate the pace of the horse, and to bring him near the centre when he is in the ring. It likewise serves to drive him from it, by shaking the longe. It may also be used to repress his faults.

With the whip, the pace of the horse is increased, he is driven from the centre, and he is corrected.

The instructor uses the whip and the cavesson alternately, to overcome the resistance of the horse; but he is very careful not to use both at once, nor to use them improperly, the abuse of the cavesson inclining the horse to resist, and throwing him on his haunches; that of the whip, tending to discourage him and make him restive.

The longe should be held so long as not to tire the horse by forcing him to move on too small a circle.

The horse should have a watering-bridle, and the cavesson should be arranged in such a manner as not to impede the respiration.

An instructor and an assistant are necessary to give this lesson; the assistant holds the longe and places himself at the centre. To start the horse upon the ring, the instructor leads him by the inner rein, holding the whip behind himself with the other hand; he walks with the horse as long as necessary; in proportion as the horse moves with more confidence, he separates from him, holding the longe in the right hand (when moving to the right) and the whip in the left hand, until he is at an equal distance from the horse



and the person who holds the longe. He follows the movements of the horse constantly, and uses the longe, or the whip, as may be necessary, to keep him on the ring, or to maintain the pace.

If the horse stops short when the instructor leaves him, if he backs, or pulls upon the longe, and refuses to move on at the cracking of the whip, he is again led upon the ring, that he may better understand what is required of him.

On leaving him again, the instructor shows him the whip, and even touches him with it between the shoulder and the belly, if necessary; he gives the horse more liberty in proportion as he moves with confidence.

If the horse gallops instead of trotting, the instructor shakes the longe lightly by a very gentle horizontal motion of the hand.

After a few turns, the instructor diminishes the ring and tries to stop the horse by the voice, and to make him come to him; he caresses him when he has obeyed, makes him take a few steps to the rear, and leads him upon the ring to the other hand, with the same precautions.

At the end of the lesson, and when the horse has become more docile, he is mounted, not to work in the longe, but to obtain from him that which he has refused to do; if he is submissive, little should be required of him, he should be caressed, and the cavesson should be taken off.

If, in spite of all the precautions and patience of the instructor, the horse still refuses to obey, he is again put in the longe before being sent away, and these lessons are continued until no more resistance is offered.

The longe may also be used (but with great caution) to give suppleness to those horses which are in want of it.

## ARTICLE NINTH.

### DEFINITIONS AND GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

A **TROOP** is composed of ranks and files.

A **RANK** is composed of men abreast of each other.

A **FILE** is composed of two men, one behind the other.

**FILE-LEADER** is a man of the front rank of a troop, relatively to the one who is behind him in the rear rank.

**FILE-CLOSER** is an officer or Sergeant posted behind the rear rank.

**FRONT** is the direction perpendicular to the alignment of a troop and before it, either in column or in line.

**CENTRE** is the middle of a troop.

**WINGS** are the two grand divisions into which any body of men is divided, when in line.

**FLANK** is the right or left side of a column, or line.

**INTERVAL** is the vacant space between two troops, or between the fractions of a troop in line. It refers more particularly to the space which the squadrons of a regiment in line should preserve between each other.

This interval is 12 paces (12 yards,) measured from the knees of the Sergeant (not counted in the rank) on the left of a squadron, to the knees of the Sergeant on the right of the squadron which follows in order of battle.

On foot, it is measured from the elbows of the same Sergeants.

**DISTANCE** is the vacant space from one troop to another in column, or between the ranks of a troop, either in line or in column.

The distance between the open ranks, when mounted, is 6 yards, measured from the croup of the horses of the front rank to the head of the horses of the rear rank; on foot, this distance is 6 paces.

When the ranks are closed, the distance, if mounted, is 2 feet, measured from the croup of the horses of the front rank to the head of those of the rear rank; on foot, it is 1 foot, measured from the breast of a man in the rear rank to the back of his file-leader.

When a troop is formed in column of platoons, or divisions, the distances prescribed are measured from the men of one front rank to those of another front rank; on foot, they are measured from the elbows of the men of one front rank, to the elbows of the men of another front rank.

**DEPHT** is the space included between the head and the rear of a column.

The depth of a column of platoons is equal to the front which the troop occupied in line; it is measured from the head of the horse of the officer commanding the first platoon, to the croup of the horses of the file-closers of the last platoon.

To estimate the front of a troop, and the depth of a column, it is necessary to know that a horse, when mounted, occupies in breadth one-third of his length; this breadth is a little less than a yard. To avoid fractions, and arrive at the same result by a more simple calculation, having regard also to the room which the men must always preserve in the ranks, it is supposed to be one yard. The length of a horse being 3 yards, the two ranks occupy 6 yards, with a distance of 2 feet between the ranks; a space which is necessary to prevent them from interfering on the march.

Taking the above dimensions for a base, the front of a squadron will consist of as many yards as there are files, plus the two Sergeants on the flanks. There will be a difference, however, according to the corps, and the manner in which the regiment is mounted; commandants of corps should satisfy themselves of it, by causing the front of their squadrons to be measured.

**ALIGNMENT** is the placing of men, or troops, on the same line. There are two kinds: individual alignment, and alignment by troop.

*Individual alignment* is when men are placed abreast of each other, in a parallel direction, and without one being in front or in rear of another.

*Alignment by troop* is when a troop places itself on the prolongation of a line already formed.

Every troop which is to form and align itself on another, halts on a line with the file-closers, parallel to the line of formation, to place itself afterwards on the alignment of the troop which is already formed.

The commandant of a troop places himself, to align it, on the side indicated by the command; it is the same if the troop which he commands serves as base of alignment to another troop. But the commander of a troop which aligns itself on another, moves to the opposite side to align it.

A **PLATOON** is composed habitually of 12 files; it may also be increased to 16; in that case, it is divided into 2 sections.

A **DIVISION** is composed of 2 platoons.

A **SQUADRON** is composed of 2 divisions, or 4 platoons.

A **REGIMENT IN ORDER OF BATTLE (OR LINE)** is composed of its squadrons disposed on the same line, with their intervals; it is in **NATURAL ORDER** when the squadrons are placed in the order of their numbers from right to left.

It is in **INVERSE ORDER** when the first squadrons are on the left of the line, and the last on the right, or when the subdivisions of each squadron are inverted. This order should be used only when circumstances require it.

A **COLUMN** is the disposition of a troop which has broken, and of which the fractions are placed one behind another.

There are three kinds of column: *column in route*, *column with distance*, and *close column*.

**COLUMN IN ROUTE** is formed of men by twos, or by fours.

**COLUMN WITH DISTANCE** is formed of platoons, having between them the distance necessary to form in line in every way. This column may also be formed of divisions; but the proportion of a platoon front is the most advantageous for all movements.

**CLOSE COLUMN** is formed of squadrons with a distance of 12 Yards from one to another; the object of this disposition is to give the least possible depth to the column.

The column has the *right in front* when its fractions are disposed according to the order of their numbers, from front to rear.

The column has the *left in front* when the last fractions, in the order of their numbers, are in front.

**FIXED POINTS, OR POINTS OF DIRECTION**, serve to point out the direction in which a troop in line, or in column, is to march; or else to mark the right and left of a line.

**INTERMEDIATE POINTS** are those taken between the fixed points. They are used to preserve the desired direction during the march, or to ensure the rectitude of the formation of the lines.

**GENERAL GUIDES** are the two Sergeants who, in the formation of a regiment, mark the points where the right and the left are to rest.

They are selected in the first and last squadrons, and are under the orders of the Adjutant and Sergeant-Major, for the tracing of lines.

**PRINCIPAL GUIDES** are the Sergeants who serve to mark the intermediate points in the formation in line.

The Sergeants, file-closers of the 1st and 4th platoons, are the principal guides of their respective squadrons.

**PARTICULAR GUIDES** are the Sergeants who place themselves on the line of formation, to mark the front of their squadrons as they arrive.

The two Sergeants of the flanks, who are not counted in the rank, are the particular guides of their respective squadrons.

**GUIDE OF THE MARCH IN LINE** is the Sergeant file-closer of one of the wings, who, in the march in line, replaces the particular guide in the front rank, when the latter places himself on the alignment, to ensure the direction of the march by serving as an intermediate point.

**GUIDE OF THE COLUMN** is the man on one of the flanks of the front rank of a column; he is charged with the direction of the march.

The guide is always left when the right is in front; the exceptions to this general rule are pointed out in the Title of the evolutions.

In the oblique march, the guide is on the side towards which the march is made and when the primitive direction is resumed, after having obliqued, the guide is where it was before having obliqued.

In a column composed of cavalry and infantry, the guides of the cavalry cover the second file of the subdivisions of infantry on the side of the guides. In line, the officers who are in front of the squadrons, align themselves on the rear rank of the infantry.

**WHEEL** is a circular movement executed by a man, or troop, returning to the point of departure.

When a troop makes a wheel, it turns upon one of its flanks; each of the men composing it describes a circle, larger in proportion to his distance from the central point.

**ABOUT FACE**, or **WHEEL**, is the half of a wheel.

**RIGHT**, or **LEFT FACE**, or **WHEEL**, is the fourth of a wheel.

**RIGHT HALF**, or **LEFT HALF FACE**, or **WHEEL**, is the eighth of a wheel.

**RIGHT QUARTER**, or **LEFT QUARTER FACE**, or **WHEEL**, is the sixteenth of a wheel.

**PIVOT** is the front rank man of the flank on which the wheel is made. There are two kinds: the *fixed pivot*, and the *moveable pivot*.

The pivot is *fixed* whenever he turns upon himself; he is *moveable* when he describes an arc of a circle.

The arc of a circle described by the pivot of a rank of two, of four, of eight, or of a platoon making the fourth of a wheel, is 5 Yards; for a division it is 10 yards; and for a squadron it is 20 yards.

**PLOYMENT** is the movement by which a regiment forms from line into close column.

**DEPLOYMENT** is the movement by which a regiment forms from close column into line.

**FORMATION** is the regular placing of all the fractions of a troop either in line or in column.

**PACES.** There are three kinds: the *walk*, the *trot*, and the *gallop*.

On foot there are two kinds of step: the *common step* and the *quick step*.

When the command does not indicate the pace, the movement is always made at a *walk*, if the troop is halted; if it is marching, the movement is made at the pace at which it was already marching.

On foot the movements are executed habitually at the *quick step*, without the command being given. When they are to be executed at the *common step*, the command should signify it.

The pace, when used as a measure, is 3 feet. On foot it is 2 feet 4 inches.

A horse passes over about 100 yards per minute at a walk, 240 at a trot, and 300 at a gallop.

On foot the common step is at the rate of 90 per minute; the quick step is at the rate of 120 per minute.



**THE DIRECT MARCH** is that which is executed by a troop in line or in column, to move off perpendicularly to its alignment.

**THE MARCH BY A FLANK** is that by which ground is gained to the right or left, after having made the fourth of a wheel.

**THE DIAGONAL MARCH** is thus called in relation to the front from which it commences by changing direction by the eighth of a wheel to the right or left, in order to arrive at a given point on the right or left.

**THE OBLIQUE MARCH** is that by which, when moving forward, ground is gained towards one of the flanks without changing the front. There are two kinds; the *individual oblique march*, and the *oblique march by troop*.

The *individual oblique march* is that which is executed by an individual movement of each man.

The *oblique march by troop* is that which is executed by the movement, at the same time, of each of the subdivisions of a troop in line.

**THE CIRCULAR MARCH** is that which is executed by describing a circle or portion of a circle.

**COUNTER MARCH** is a movement by which the men of each rank, after having made successively the fourth of a wheel to the right or left, form themselves facing the rear, parallel to the first formation.

**THE CHARGE** is a direct, quick, and impetuous march, the object of which is to reach the enemy.

**SKIRMISHERS (OR FLANKERS)** are men dispersed in front, in rear, or on the flanks of a troop, to cover its movements or its position.

**OBSTACLE** is any thing in the nature of the ground, which obliges a troop in line to ploy a part of its front.

**DEFILE** is a passage which compels a line to ploy into column, or a column to diminish its front.

**EVOLUTIONS** are the regular movements by which a regiment passes from one order to another.

*Evolution of line* are these same movements executed by several regiments, on one or several lines. Their application, combined with the position or movements of the enemy, is called *manoeuvres*.

**COMMANDS.** There are three kinds:

The command of *caution*, which is attention. It is the signal to preserve immobility, and to give attention.

The *preparatory command*. It indicates the movement which is to be executed.

It is at this command that the horses are gathered.

The command of *execution*, which is **MARCH** or **HALT**.

The tone of command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the troop which is commanded.

The command *attention* is pronounced at the top of the voice, swelling on the last syllable.

The commands of *execution* are pronounced in a firmer tone than the *preparatory* commands. They are prolonged, because the movement which is to follow them being communicated from the man to the horse, all jerking or abruptness is thereby avoided.

In the exercise on foot, and the manual of arms, the part of the command which causes an execution should be pronounced in a firm and brief tone.

The commands of caution, and the preparatory commands, are distinguished by *italics*; those of execution, by **CAPITALS**.

These preparatory commands which, from their length, are difficult to be pronounced at once, must be divided into two or three parts, with an ascending progression in the tone of command, but always in such a manner that the one of execution may be more energetic and elevated—(*the divisions are indicated by a hyphen -* ). The parts of commands which are placed in a parenthesis are not pronounced.

**TIME**, in the detailed instruction, is an action of exercise which is executed at a command or part of command, and which is divided into *motions*, to demonstrate the mechanism and facilitate the execution of it.

**SOUNDINGS** are the trumpet signals, which make known to the troop the movements or details of service which are to be executed.

**ARTICLE TENTH.**

(The book of signals is at the end of the work.)

1. The general.
2. Boots and saddles.
3. To horse.
4. The assembly.
5. To arms.
6. To the standard.
7. The march. (It also answers for a quick step on foot.)
8. The charge.
9. The rally.
10. Reveille.
11. Stable call.
12. Watering call.
13. Breakfast call.
14. Assembly of the guard.
15. Orders for the Orderly Sergeants.
16. Assembly of the Trumpeters.
17. Retreat.
18. Fatigue call.
19. Dinner call.
20. Distributions.
21. Drill call.
22. Officer's call.
23. Common step.
24. To cease firing.

25. For officers to take their place in line after the firing.
26. Sick call.
27. Tattoo.

**For the service of skirmishers.**

1. Forward.
2. Halt.
3. To the left.
4. To the right.
5. The about.
6. Rallying of skirmishers on their chief.
7. Trot.
8. Gallop.
9. To commence firing.
10. The disperse.

*Note.*—To change to a *walk* from a *trot*, *halt* and *forward* are sounded.

## **TITLE SECOND.**

### **INSTRUCTION ON FOOT.**

---

#### **SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, DISMOUNTED.**

1.— The object of this school being the individual and progressive instruction of the recruits, the instructor never requires a movement to be executed until he has given an exact explanation of it; and he executes himself the movement which he commands, so as to join example to precept. He accustoms the recruit to take by himself the position which is explained, touches him to rectify it only when required by his want of intelligence, and sees that all the movements are performed without precipitation.

Each movement should be perfectly understood before passing to another. After they have been properly executed in the order laid down in each lesson, the instructor no longer confines himself to that order; on the contrary, he should change it, that he may judge of the intelligence of the men.

2.— The instructor allows the men to rest at the end of each part of the lessons, and oftener if he thinks proper, especially at the commencement; for this purpose he commands **REST**.

At the command **REST**, the trooper is no longer required to preserve immobility, or to remain in his place. If the instructor wishes merely to relieve the attention of the

recruit, he commands, *in place*—REST; the trooper is then not required to preserve his immobility, but he always keeps one of his feet in its place.

3.— When the instructor wishes to commence the instruction, he commands, ATTENTION; at this command, the trooper takes his position, remains motionless, and fixes his attention.

## FIRST LESSON.

### FIRST PART.

4.— The first principles of the position and those of the march, are taught, as much as possible, to each man individually, or, at most, to four at a time. In the latter case, they are placed on the same line, one yard from each other, without being required to align themselves.

The trooper is in his stable jacket and forage cap.

#### **Position of the trooper dismounted.**

5.— (Pl. 7, *fig. A. & B.*) The heels on the same line, as near each other as the conformation of the man will permit;

The feet turned out equally, and forming with each other something less than a right angle;

The knees straight without stiffness;

The body erect on the hips, inclining a little forward;

The shoulders square and falling equally;

The elbows near the body;

The palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the little finger on the seam of the pantaloons;

The head erect and square to the front, without constraint;

The chin near the stock, without covering it;

The eyes fixed straight to the front.

When the trooper is armed, the left hand hangs by the side over the sabre.

6.— *The heels on the same line:* because, if one were in rear of the other, the shoulder on that side would be thrown back.

*The feet turned out equally:* because if one were turned out more than the other, the shoulder on that side would be thrown back.

*Forming with each other something less than a right angle:* because, if the feet were too much turned out, the upper part of the body could not be inclined forward without rendering the position unsteady.

*The knees straight without stiffness:* because, if stiffened, constraint and fatigue would result from it.

*The body erect on the hips:* because it is the only means of establishing a perfect equilibrium. (The instructor will observe that most recruits have a bad habit of dropping a shoulder, of drawing in a side, or of advancing a hip.)

*The upper part of the body inclining a little forward:* because recruits are disposed to do the reverse, to project the belly, and to throw back the shoulders. It is important to prevent this fault in the position, or to remedy it, as it throws the recruit out of equilibrium. (To ascertain that the upper part of the body is well placed, the instructor will press his finger against the breast of the recruit; if his position is good, he will resist the pressure.)



*The shoulders square:* because, if the shoulders are thrown forward, and the back arched, which are the common faults of most recruits, the man cannot align himself, or use his arms with ease. (In correcting this defect, care must be taken not to throw the shoulders too far back, which would cause the back to be hollowed.)

*The elbows near the body, and the palm of the hand turned a little to the front:* because this position is equally important to the *carry-arms*, and to prevent the man from occupying more space in a rank than is necessary for a free use of his arms; it also has the effect of throwing back the shoulders.

*The head erect without constraint:* because, if it inclined to either side, the corresponding shoulder would be lowered; and if there were stiffness, it would be communicated to all the upper part of the body, the movements of which would be constrained.

*The eyes fixed straight to the front:* because, if the eyes were turned, the head would at last be turned in the same direction. Too much pains cannot be taken to accustom the men to this position, as it is the surest means of keeping the shoulders in line.

### **Eyes right, eyes left.**

7.— The instructor commands:

1. *Eyes*—RIGHT.
2. FRONT.

(Pl. 8, *fig. A*.) At the last part of the first command, which is RIGHT, turn the head gently to the right, so that

the corner of the left eye, next to the nose, may be on a line with the buttons of the jacket.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head gently to the front.

8.— (Pl. 8, *fig. B*.) The movement *eyes left* is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands:

1. *Eyes*—**LEFT**.
2. **FRONT**.

9.— The instructor will take particular care that the movement of the head does not derange the squareness of the shoulders, which would happen if it were too sudden, or if the head were turned more than is necessary.

As the trooper should turn the head only to align himself, and in the wheelings, it is important that he should be accustomed to turn it but very little.

**Right face, left face, about face, right-quarter face, left-quarter face.**

10.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad right* (or *left*).
2. **FACE**.

1 *time*.

(Pl. 9, *fig. A. & B*.) At the second command, which is **FACE**, raise the right foot slightly, turn on the left heel, raising the toes a little, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left, and in the same line.

11.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad about.*
2. FACE.

2 times.

(Pl. 9, *fig. C. & D.*) 1. At the first part of the command, which is *squad about*, make a *half face to the right*, turning on the left heel, place the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and three inches from, the left heel.

2. At the last part of the command, which is FACE, turn on both heels to face to the rear, raising the toes a little, the knees straight, and bring the right foot by the side of the left.

12.— The instructor commands:

1. Squad right oblique (or left oblique).
2. FACE.

1 time.

(Pl. 9, *fig. E. & F.*) At the second command, which is FACE, raise the right foot a little, turn upon the left, raising the toes slightly, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left, on the same line, taking care not to make more than a quarter face.

13.— The instructor pays particular attention that the position of the body shall not be deranged by these movements.

## SECOND PART.

**Common step.**

14.— The length of the common step is 2 feet 4 inches, measured from heel to heel; its quickness is at the rate of 90 per minute.

15. To explain the principles and mechanism of the step, the instructor places himself 8 or 10 paces in front, facing the squad; he executes the step slowly himself.

He commands:

1. *Squad forward.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 10, *fig. A.*) At the command, *squad forward*, throw the weight of the body on the right leg.

At the command MARCH, carry forward the left foot, smartly and without a jerk, 2 feet 4 inches from the right, the knee straight, the toe a little depressed, and, as well as the knee, slightly turned out, the upper part of the body inclined forward; pause an instant in this position; plant the left foot flat, without a shock, precisely at the distance at which it is from the right, the whole weight of the body being thrown on the foot which is placed on the ground; carry forward the right leg, smartly and without jerk, the foot near the ground; plant it at the same distance, and in the same manner as has just been explained for the left foot, and continue to march without crossing the legs or turning the shoulders, and with the face always to the front.

16.— *The weight of the body on the right leg:* to prepare the man to take his first step smartly.

*The toe slightly depressed:* because the depression of the toe extends the ham, and prepares the foot for coming flat to the ground.

*The toe slightly turned out:* because, if the feet were too much turned out, the body would become unsteady, and the men would hook themselves with their spurs.

*The upper part of the body inclined forward:* in order that the weight of the body may be thrown on the foot which is planted on the ground, that the foot which is in rear may be raised easily, and that the step may not be shortened.

*The knee straight:* because a troop cannot march as if each man were isolated, without constraint and without being disunited; it is therefore important that the recruits should learn to march with a marked and cadenced step, without which there will be no unity of movement.

*Plant the foot flat without a shock:* to avoid the swinging of the body and the shortening of the step, which would take place if the heel came first to the ground, or if there were a shock in planting the foot.

*The foot near the ground:* because, if the men raised the leg too much they would lose time, would fatigue themselves uselessly, and their feet would not be planted together.

*The head erect and square to the front:* because this position of the head prevents the shoulders from turning, and causes the men to march squarely.

17.— To halt, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad.*
2. **HALT.**

At the command **HALT**, bring the foot which is in rear by the side of the other, without shock.

The instructor gives the command **HALT** at the moment when one of the feet is coming to the ground.

18.— The instructor marks the cadence of the step from time to time by the command *one*, at the moment when the foot is raised, and by the command *two*, when it should be planted; this cadence being regulated at the rate of 90 steps per minute. To judge whether all these principles are exactly followed, he often places himself in front, facing the squad. When the recruit begins to take the step properly, he is made to march sometime without halting, in order to confirm him in these principles.

### **To mark time.**

19.— The squad marching, the instructor commands:

1. *Mark time.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command **MARCH**, bring the heels by the side of each other, and mark the cadence of the step by raising each foot alternately without advancing.

The instructor gives the command **MARCH** at the moment when the foot is coming to the ground.

20.— To move forward, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad forward.*
2. **MARCH**

At the command **MARCH**, the squad resumes the step of 2 feet 4 inches.

The instructor gives the command **MARCH** at the moment when the foot is coming to the ground.

**To change step.**

21.— The squad marching, the instructor commands:

1. *Change step.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command **MARCH**, bring the foot which is in rear by the side of that which is in front, and step off again with the foot which was in front.

The instructor gives the command **MARCH** at the moment when the foot is coming to the ground.

In this manner the men are taught to take the step when they have lost it.

**To face to the right or left when marching.**

22.— The squad marching, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command **MARCH**, turn the body to the right, and step off with the right foot in the new direction, without losing the cadence of the step.

The instructor gives the command **MARCH** at the moment when the left foot is coming to the ground.

When it is *to the left*, the command **MARCH** is given at the moment when the right foot is coming to the ground. By this means the new direction is always commenced with the leg on the side towards which the turn is made.

**Quarter-face to the right or left when marching.**

23.— The squad marching, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad right oblique* (or *left oblique*).
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the men make a *quarter face to the right* (or *to the left*), and march in the new direction.

24.— To resume the primitive direction, the instructor commands:

**FORWARD.**

At this command, the men make a *quarter face to the left*, if they have obliqued to the right, and a *quarter face to the right*, if they have obliqued to the left, and march straight to the front.

The right or left oblique is commanded and executed according to the principles prescribed [No. 22](#).

**Quick step.**

25.— The length of the quick step is the same as that of the common step, and its quickness is at the rate of 120 per minute.

26.— The squad being at a halt, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad forward*.
2. *Quick time*.
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, step off smartly with the left foot, and march at the rate of 120 steps per minute.



27.— The impulsion of the quick step disposing the recruit to band the knee, the instructor should regulate the cadence and measure of it, and accustom the man to preserve his balance.

28.— The squad is exercised, when marching at the quick step, to halt, mark time, move on, change step, face to the right and left, half face to the right and left, and move off again, at the commands and according to the principles laid down in Nos. 16, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, and 24.

29.— The squad marching in quick time, to change to common time, the instructor commands:

1. *Common time.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the squad takes the common step.

30.— To resume the quick step, the instructor commands:

1. *Quick time.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the squad resumes the quick step.

31.— In all changes of step, the instructor commands MARCH, at the moment when one foot is coming to the ground, in order that the men may have time to take with the other foot the step which is commanded.

### **Backward step.**

32.— The backward step is 14 inches, measured from heel to heel.

33.— The squad being at a halt, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad backwards.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, carry the left foot 14 inches to the rear; then bring the right foot likewise to the rear, and so on successively until the command:

1. *Squad.*
2. HALT.

At the command HALT, bring the foot which is in front by the side of the other.

The instructor requires only a few steps to be taken to the rear; he observes that the men step straight to the rear, that they do not hollow the small of the back by throwing back the shoulders, and that they always preserve the equilibrium and the position of the body.

## SECOND LESSON.

### FIRST PART.

34.— This lesson is given, when possible, to each man individually, or at most to four men at a time. In the latter case, they are placed in one rank, three feet from each other.

35.— The trooper, armed with the carbine, is in his stable-jacket and forage-cap, and has his cartridge-box and gun-sling; the sabre is not worn. The lancer is armed with his lance; the carabiniers and cuirassiers, being without carbines, wear their sabres.

### **Principles of carried arms.**

36.— (Pl. 10, *fig. B.*) The carbine in the right hand, against the hollow of the shoulder, the barrel perpendicular, the guard to the front; the arm slightly bent, without separating the elbow from the body, the right hand around the small of the stock, the thumb under the guard.

37.— The recruit being inclined to throw back the body, to lower the right shoulder, or to separate the elbow from the body, the carbine should sometimes be taken from him to correct his position.

### **Instruction with carried arms at a halt, and marching with carried arms.**

38.— The instructor requires the men to execute the movements of the first lesson, observing that the position of carried arms is always perfectly maintained.

The carabiniers and cuirassiers execute the movements laid down in Nos. 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, and 105; they are afterwards exercised with the sabre at a *carry*, at all the movements of the first lesson. The instructor observes that the sabre is always properly carried.

## **SECOND PART.**

39.— The carabiniers and cuirassiers continue to be exercised at the manual of the sabre.

### **Manual of arms.**

40.— The execution of each command, or part of command, forms a *time*; but this time is divided into *motions*, to show the mechanism and facilitate the execution of it.

The last syllable of a command, or part of command, causes the quick execution of a time of exercise, or the first motion of this time, when it is divided. The commands *two*, *three*, &c., cause that of the other motions.

When the trooper understands perfectly the motions of a time, he executes them without stopping at each one; but he observes the mechanism of them, in order to avoid what is called *slighting his motions*.

The instructor is very particular that the manual does not derange the position of the body; he devotes to this exercise only half the time of the lesson, and the rest to the marching.

To **REST**, he commands *order arms*, and *ground arms*, which is executed as prescribed in [No. 53](#).

To **REST IN PLACE**, he first commands *order arms*; but if the arms are loaded, he commands *support arms*.

41.— The squad being at *carry arms*, the instructor commands:

### *Order—ARMS.*

#### *1 time, 3 motions.*

([Pl. 11, fig. A.](#)) 1. At the last part of the command, which is **ARMS**, detach the carbine with the right hand perpendicularly, and 4 inches from the shoulder, seizing it at the same time with the left hand, half-way between the two bands.

2. Seize the carbine with the right hand above the left.

3. Let go of the carbine with the left hand, which in dropped smartly by the side; extend the right arm, bring the carbine to the ground, without shock, the toe of the butt

2 inches from, and on a line with the right toe, the elbow near the body, the barrel between the thumb and the three first fingers extended, the little finger behind the barrel.

*Carry—ARMS.*

1 time, 3 motions.

42.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, raise the carbine perpendicularly with the right hand, the barrel 4 inches from the shoulder; seize it with the left hand half-way between the two bands.

2. Seize the small of the stock with the right hand, the thumb  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch below the guard.

3. Press the carbine against the shoulder with the right hand, and drop the left hand smartly by the side.

*Present—ARMS.*

1 time.

43.— (Pl. 11, *fig. B.*) At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, carry the carbine with the right hand opposite to the middle of the body, the barrel perpendicular, the guard to the front, the fore-arm pressed against the body without being constrained; seize the carbine with the left hand, the little finger touching the upper part of the guard, the thumb extended against the swivel-bar, the band as high as the elbow; reverse the position of the right hand on the small of the stock, the fingers extended.

*Carry—ARMS.*

1 time.

44.— At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, shift the position of the left hand, bringing the thumb to the

front; place the carbine against the shoulder with the right hand, the barrel perpendicular, and drop the left hand at the same time by the side.

Support—ARMS.

1 time, 4 motions.

45.— (Pl. 12, *fig. A.*) 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, detach the carbine with the right hand perpendicularly, 4 inches from the shoulder, seize it at the same time at the lower band with the left hand.

2. Raise the carbine with both hands, turning the barrel to the front, and place it opposite to the hollow of the left shoulder, the left hand as high as the neck, the thumb extended; reverse the position of the left hand on the small of the stock, the flat of the stock against the hip.

3. Place the left fore-arm on the breast, the cock resting on the fore-arm, the hand extended on the right breast, the fingers joined, and the thumb separated from them.

4. Drop the right hand smartly by the side.

Carry—ARMS.

1 time, 4 motions.

46.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, seize the carbine with the right hand at the small of the stock.

2. Detach the carbine 4 inches from the shoulder, place the left hand at the lower band, the thumb extended, the fore-arm along the stock.

3. Bring down the carbine with both hands, turning the guard to the front; place it perpendicularly opposite to, and 4 inches from the right shoulder, the left hand a little above

the right hip, the right hand shifting its position at the small of the stock.

4. Place the carbine against the shoulder with the right hand, and drop the left hand smartly by the side.

*Arms—AT WILL.*

*1 time, 1 motion.*

47.— Carry the carbine at pleasure, on either shoulder, with one or both hands, the muzzle always up.

*Carry—ARMS.*

*1 time, 1 motion.*

48.— Retake smartly the position of carry-arms.

*Secure—ARMS.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

49.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, raise the carbine about two inches, seize it with the left hand at the right shoulder, grasp it with the right hand a little below the lower band, the thumb extended along the barrel.

2. Lower the muzzle, bring the butt under the right arm, the guard resting on the hip, the barrel uppermost; at the same time drop the left hand to its side.

*Carry—ARMS.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

50.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, throw up the carbine with the right hand, seize it at the right shoulder with the left hand, and shift the right hand to the small of the stock, as in *carry-arms*.

2. Drop the left hand to the left side.

*Order*—ARMS.

As prescribed, **No. 41.**

*Sling*—CARBINE.

1 time, 2 motions.

51.— (**Pl. 12, fig. B.**) 1. At the last part of the command, which is **CARBINE**, raise the carbine perpendicularly with the right hand, and place it in the left hand, which seizes it below the lower hand, the thumb extended, the barrel to the front; incline the carbine to the right, that the rings may hang down, the left hand as high as, and opposite to the neck; slip the swivel to the Front with the right hand, the thumb pressing upon the short side to open it, insert it in the rings.

(**Pl. 12, fig. C.**) 2. Seize the carbine at the small of the stock with the right hand, let it go with the left hand, which is dropped by the side; pass the carbine behind the back, lowering the muzzle, push the butt to the rear, and drop the right hand by the side.

*Unslung*—CARBINE.

1 time, 2 motions.

52.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is **CARBINE**, seizes the carbine at the small of the stock with the right hand, raise it, seize it again with the left hand below the lower hand, the thumb extended, the hand as high as, and opposite to the neck; incline the carbine to the right, free the swivel from the rings with the right hand, and push the swivel to the rear.



2. Seize the carbine with the right hand, above and near the left hand; bring it down, turning it at the same time, and resume the position of *order-arms*, No. 41.

*Ground—ARMS.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

53.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, turn the carbine with the right hand, the swivel-bar to the front; bend the body, advance the left foot, lay the carbine on the ground in front of the body, lay the guard near the ground, the toe of the butt on a line with the right toe, the right knee slightly bent, the right heel raised.

2. Rise up, bring the left foot by the side of the right, and drop the hands by the sides.

*Raise—ARMS.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

54.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, bend the body, advance the left foot, the heel opposite to the lower band.

2. Raise the carbine, bringing the left foot by the side of the right; at the same time turn the carbine with the right hand, the guard to the front.

When the men have their sabres at the same time that they execute the 1st motion of Nos. 53 and 54, they seize the sabre with the left hand, the point to the front, the hand closed, the thumb extended, and touching the lower ring of the scabbard.

To break the ranks, the instructor commands:

1. *Break ranks.*
2. MARCH.

### **Loading in ten times.**

55.— The squad being at carry arms, the instructor commands:

#### **1. *Load in ten times*—LOAD.**

*1 time, 2 motions.*

(Pl. 13, *fig. A*.) 1. At the command LOAD, make a half face to the right on the left heel, carrying the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and three inches from, the left heel; detach the carbine perpendicularly 4 inches from the shoulder with the right hand, raising it a little, and seize it with the left hand opposite to the right breast, the thumb extended on the stock; change the position of the right hand at the small of the stock, turning the thumb to the rear.

2. Throw the butt under the arm with the right hand; the left hand two inches below the right breast; the left elbow close to the body; the muzzle is high as the chin; half cock, remove the old cap if there be one, and carry the hand to the cap-box.

#### **2. PRIME.**

*1 time.*

56.— At the command PRIME, place a cap on the nipple, press it down with the thumb, let down the cock, and carry the right hand to the cartridge-box.

#### **3. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.**

*1 time.*

57.— At the last part of the command, which is **CARTRIDGE**, take a cartridge between the thumb and the two first fingers, then place the end of it between the teeth.

4. *Tear*—**CARTRIDGE**.

1 *time*.

58.— At the last part of the command, which is **CARTRIDGE**, tear the cartridge to the powder, holding it near the opening between the thumb and two first fingers; carry the right hand to the small of the stock, and seize it with the two last fingers and the palm of the hand, the wrist against the body, the elbow to the rear and slightly separated from the body.

5. *Cast*—**ABOUT**.

1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

59.— (*Pl. 13, fig. B.*) 1. At the last part of the command, which is **ABOUT**, bring the carbine vertical with both hands, extending smartly the right arm; pass the carbine in front of the body, turning it in the left hand, the lock outwards; at the same time face to the front, turning on the left heel and carrying the right foot in front, the heel 8 inches from the hollow of the left foot.

2. Let go the carbine with the right hand, bring it down with the left hand along and near the body, the left arm extended, the guard touching the left leg, the muzzle in the direction of the right eye, four inches from the body; seize the carbine with the two last fingers of the right hand, one inch from the muzzle, the cartridge being still hold between the two first fingers and the thumb.

6. *Charge*—CARTRIDGE.1 *time*.

60.— (Pl. 14, *fig. A*.) At the last part of the command, which is CARTRIDGE, cast the eyes upon the muzzle, turn the back of the right hand towards the body, raising the elbow as high as the wrist, and pour the powder into the barrel; shake the cartridge, push it in with the fore-finger, and keep the right hand in its position, the back of it towards the body, the fingers joined and extended.

7. *Draw*—RAMROD.1 *time*.

61.— At the last part of the command, which is RAMROD, seize the ramrod, draw it, and insert it about six inches into the barrel.

8. *Ram*—CARTRIDGE.1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

62.— (Pl. 14, *fig. B*.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is CARTRIDGE, push the cartridge to the bottom.

2. Strike it twice smartly with the ramrod, the fingers underneath, the elbow separated from the body.

9. *Return*—RAMROD.1 *time*.

63.— At the last part of the command, which is RAMROD, draw the ramrod out of the barrel, and return it, the thumb and fore-finger still holding the end of it.

10. *Carry*—ARMS.1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

64.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, raise the carbine vertically with the left hand, turning it at the same time, the barrel four inches from and opposite to the right shoulder; the left hand as high as the hip; place the right hand at the small of the stock, and carry the right foot by the side of the left.

2. Press the carbine against the shoulder with the right hand, and drop the left quickly by the side.\*

---

\* FOR HALL'S CARBINE.

Loading in five times.

The squad being at carry arms, the instructor commands:

1. *Load in five times*—LOAD.

1 time, 3 motions.

1. At the command LOAD, make a half-face to the right on the left heel, placing the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and three inches behind the heel of the left; seize the carbine at the right shoulder with the left hand.

2. Slip the left hand down to the lower band, and raise the carbine vertically in front of the centre of the body, the barrel towards the right eye; seize the lever with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand.

3. Spring open the chamber, and carry the hand to the cartridge-box and open it.

2. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.

1 time, 1 motion.

Draw the cartridge, tear it to the powder with the teeth, and carry it to the right side of the muzzle of the chamber, holding it carefully between the thumb and two first fingers.

### 3. *Charge*—CARTRIDGE.

*1 time, 1 motion.*

Shake the powder well into the chamber, force the paper and ball upon it with the little finger; shut down the chamber with the thumb, half cock, remove the old cap, and carry the hand to the cap-box.

### 4. PRIME.

*1 time, 1 motion.*

Fix the cap, let down the cock, and seize the piece at the small of the stock with the right hand.

### 5. *Carry*—ARMS.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. Carry the carbine to the right shoulder, the barrel to the rear; reverse the position of the right hand, at the same time face to the front, and bring the right heel by the side of the left.

2. Drop the left hand to its side.

---

### **Loading at will.**

65.— When the men load properly in *ten times*, they are practised to load at will; the instructor commands:

*Load at will*—LOAD.

At the second command, which is **LOAD**, they execute the times of loading without stopping at any one, and without waiting for each other.

The instructor should require the men to load calmly and without hurry, to preserve the proper position of the body, and to execute all the motions with precision, especially those of *prime*, *charge cartridge*, and *ram cartridge*.

### **Firing.**

66.— The instructor should always place himself behind the troop to command the firing.

### **Position of the front rank.**

The instructor commands:

**READY.**

*1 time, 2 motions.*

(Pl. 15, *fig. A.*) 1. At the command **READY**, make a half face to the right on the left heel, carrying the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of it opposite to and three inches from the left heel ; detach the carbine with the right hand vertically four inches from the shoulder, seize it with the left hand below the lower band, the thumb upon the barrel; raise it with both hands, the left as high as the neck; place the right thumb upon the head of the cock, the forefinger upon the guard, the others under it, the elbow as high as the hand.

(Pl. 15, *fig. B.*) 2. Cock the piece by lowering quickly the right elbow, and seize the small of the stock.

**AIM.**

*1 time.*

67.— (Pl. 16, *fig. A.*) At the command **AIM**, lower the muzzle quickly, slip the left hand to the lower band, holding the carbine with the thumb and fore-finger of this hand, the other fingers closed, press the butt against the shoulder, the muzzle a little lowered, the elbows down without being pressed against the body; place the face against the stock, shut the left eye, direct the right eye along the Barrel to aim, and place the fore-finger of the right hand on the trigger.

68.— To recover arms before firing, the instructor commands:

*Recover—ARMS.*

*1 time.*

At the last part of the command, which is **ARMS**, take the finger from the trigger, raise the carbine quickly, and resume the position of the second motion of **READY**, No. 66.

69.— To carry arms without firing, after having made ready or recovered arms, the instructor commands:

**CARRY—ARMS.**

*2 times.*

1. At the first part of the command, which is **CARRY**, place the right thumb upon the head of the cock, the fore-finger on the trigger, the others under the guard; pull back the cock; press the fore-finger on the trigger to uncock, holding the cock with the thumb, let it down until the hammer touches the cap.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **ARMS**, bring down the carbine with both hands, the right one at



the small of the stock; press the carbine against the shoulder, drop the left hand by the side, face to the front, and bring the right foot by the side of the left.

70.— The squad being at the position of AIM, to fire, the instructor commands:

**FIRE.**

*1 time.*

At the command FIRE, press the fore-finger against the trigger and fire, without lowering the head or turning it, and remain in this position.

71.— If, after having fired, the instructor does not wish to load, he commands:

**CARRY—ARMS.**

*2 times.*

1. At the first part of the command, which is CARRY, bring back the carbine quickly, and place the butt under the right arm, the left hand on the lower band, the left wrist two inches below the right breast, the elbow against the body, the muzzle as high as the chin; seize the small of the stock with the right hand.

2. At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, carry arms, facing at the same time to the front, and drop the left hand quickly by the side.

72.— If, after having fired, the instructor wishes to load, he commands:

**LOAD.**

*1 time.*

At the command **LOAD**, bring down the carbine to the position of *load*, load at will, carry arms, and face to the front.

### **Position of the rear rank.**

73.— The instructor commands:

**READY.**

*1 time, 2 motions.*

(Pl. 17, *fig. A.*) 1. At the command **READY**, execute the first motion of *ready*, No. 66; at the same time step off six inches to the right with the right foot, carrying the left foot 3 inches in front of the hollow of the right, so as to be placed opposite to the interval on the right of the file-leader.

2. Execute the second motion of *ready*, No. 66.

**AIM**

*1 time.*

74.— (Pl. 17, *fig. B.*) At the command **AIM**, carry the left foot six inches to the front, without bending the right knee; lower the muzzle quickly in such a manner that it small project beyond the front rank, press the butt against the right shoulder; execute the rest of the motion as it is prescribed, No. 67.

***Recover—ARMS.***

*1 time.*

75.— As it is prescribed, No. 68, remaining opposite to the interval, and bringing the left foot 3 inches from the hollow of the right.

## CARRY-ARMS.

*2 times.*

76.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is CARRY, execute the first motion of *carry arms*, No. 69.

2. At the last part of the command, which in ARMS, bring down the carbine with both hands, the right hand on the small of the stock, press the carbine against the shoulder, drop the left hand quickly by the side; at the same time return behind the file-leader, by stepping six inches to the left with the left foot, face to the front, and carry the right heel by the side of the left.

77.— The squad being at the position of AIM, to fire, the instructor commands:

## FIRE.

As it is prescribed, No. 70.

78.— If, after firing, the instructor does not wish to load, he commands:

## CARRY-ARMS.

*2 times.*

1. At the first part of the command, which is CARRY, execute the first motion of *carry arms*, No. 71.

2. At the second command, which is ARMS, execute the second motion of *carry arms*, No. 76.

79.— If, after firing, the instructor wishes to load, he commands:

## LOAD.

*1 time.*

At the command **LOAD**, bring down the carbine and load as in **No. 65**, carry arms, face to the front, and resume the position behind the file-leader.

### **Principles of carried lance.**

80.— (**Pl. 18, fig. A.**) The lance perpendicular in the right hand, which holds it 2 feet from the butt, the arm nearly extended, the wrist turned in, the thumb in front of the staff, the fore-finger extended on the side, the others in rear, the butt of the lance 2 inches from the ground, the staff against the hollow of the shoulder, the left hand hanging by the side.

### **Manual of the lance.**

#### *Present*—**LANCES.**

##### *1 time.*

81.— (**Pl. 18, fig. B.**) At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, bring the lance with the right hand four inches from, and opposite to the left eye, the right arm nearly extended; seize it quickly with the left hand at the height of the elbow, the thumb extended along the staff; change the position of the right hand, extending the fingers in front of the staff, the thumb behind it.

#### *Carry*—**LANCES.**

##### *1 time.*

82.— At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, change the right hand to the position of *carried lance*, **No. 80**; bring the lance to the right shoulder with both hands, and drop the left hand by the side.

CHARGE-LANCES (*as front rank*).*2 times.*

83.— (Pl 19, *fig. A*) 1. At the first part of the command, which is CHARGE, make a half-face to the right on the left heel, carrying the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and 3 inches from the left heel; detach the lance with the right hand perpendicularly, four inches from the shoulder.

2. At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, bring down the lance with the right hand into the left, which seizes it 18 inches from the right, the left elbow near the body, the upper part of the body inclining forward, the right hand resting upon the right hip, the point of the lance as high as the eyes.

CHARGE-LANCES (*as rear rank*).*2 times.*

84.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is CHARGE, execute the first time of No. 83, and step off 6 inches to the right with the right foot, bringing the left foot 3 inches in front of the hollow of the right, so as to be placed opposite to the interval on the right of the file-leader.

2. At the second part of the command, which is LANCES, bring down the lance as prescribed for the front rank, No. 83, in such a way that it shall fall between the file-leader and the man on his right, without touching them.

Carry-LANCES (*front and rear ranks*).*1 time, 2 motions.*

85.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, turn on the left heel to face to the front, carry-

ing the right heel by the side of the left; bring up the lance with the left hand, carrying it to the right shoulder, and place the right hand as in the position of *carried lance*.

2. Let go of the lance with the left hand, which is dropped quickly by the side.

The men of the rear rank resume their places behind their file-leaders.

### *Order*—LANCES.

1 *time*.

86.— (Pl. 19, *fig. B*.) At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, let the lance slip to the ground through the right hand, which seizes it immediately at the height of the stock, the elbow and fore-arm pressing against the staff, which is held perpendicularly, the butt on a line with, and one inch from the right toe, the left hand hanging by the side.

### *Carry*—LANCES.

1 *time*.

87.— At the last part of the command, which in LANCES, let go of the lance with the right hand, letting it rest against the hollow of the shoulder; extend the right arm downwards to its full length; seize the lance, the wrist turned inwards, the thumb on the front of the staff, the fore-finger extended on the side, the others in rear; raise the butt of the lance about two inches from the ground by slightly bending the arm.

### *Shoulder*—LANCES.

1 *time*.

88.— At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, raise the lance with the right hand, and place it on the right shoulder, the point upwards and directed towards the rear and left; change the position of the right hand, placing the thumb underneath, the fingers on top, the arm half extended, the elbow down, without being pressed against the body.

*Carry—LANCES.*

1 *time.*

89.— At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, bring up the lance perpendicularly, placing the right hand in the position of *carried lance*, No. 80.

*Order—LANCES.*

As prescribed, No. 86.

REST.

1 *time.*

90.— Let go of the lance, resting it against the shoulder, and replace the right hand extended on the staff.

At the command ATTENTION, resume the position of *order lances*, No. 86.

## THIRD LESSON.

## FIRST PART.

91.— This lesson is given to from 4 to 8 men at a time. They are in stable jackets, and schakos, or helmets, and have their cartridge-boxes and gun-slings. They are armed with carbines (or lances), and sabres, and are placed in one rank, three feet from each other.

**Manual of arms, the sabre being worn.**

92.— [Pl. 5.] The troopers, having the sabre hooked up with the hilt to the rear, are exercised at the manual of arms after the principles laid down in the second part of the second lesson; they are then taught to draw the sabre, to present it, and to return it.

The squad being at the position of *order arms*, the instructor commands:

*Sling*—CARBINE.

As prescribed, No. 51.

## DRAW—SABRE.

2 times.

93.— (Pl. 20, fig. A.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is DRAW, turn the head slightly to the left, without deranging the position of the body; unhook the sabre with the left hand, and bring the hilt to the front; run the right wrist through the sword-knot; seize the gripe, draw the blade 6 inches out of the scabbard, pressing the scabbard against the thigh with the left hand, which seizes it at the upper ring, and turn the head to the front.



(Pl. 20, *fig. B.*) 2. At the last part of the command, which is **SABRE**, draw the sabre quickly, raising the arm to its full extent; make a slight pause, carry the blade to the right shoulder, the back of it against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist resting against the hip, the little finger on the outside of the gripe.

This position is the same when mounted, except that the wrist then naturally falls upon the thigh.

*Present—SABRE.*

1 *time.*

94.— (Pl. 21.) At the last part of the command, which is **SABRE**, carry the sabre to the front, the arm half extended, the thumb opposite to, and 6 inches from the neck, the blade perpendicular, the edge to the left, the thumb extended on the right side of the gripe, the little finger by the side of the others.

*Carry—SABRE.*

1 *time.*

95.— At the last part of the command, which is **SABRE**, carry the back of the blade against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist resting against the hip, the little finger on the outside of the gripe.

**RETURN-SABRE.**

2 *times.*

96.— (Pl. 21.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is **RETURN**, execute the first motion of *present sabre*, No. 94.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **SABRE**, carry the wrist opposite to, and 6 inches from, the left shoulder; lower the blade and pass it across and along the left arm, the point to the rear; turn the head slightly to the left, fixing the eyes on the opening of the scabbard; return the blade, free the wrist from the sword-knot, turn the head to the front, drop the right hand by the side, and hook up the sabre with the hilt to the rear.

### **Inspection of arms.**

97.— The squad being at the position of *order arms*, the instructor commands:

#### *Inspection—(of) CARBINE.*

*1 time, 5 motions.*

(Pl. 22, *fig. A*.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is **CARBINE**, raise the carbine with the right hand, turning the barrel to the right; pass it into the left hand, which seizes it below the lower band, the left arm extended, the guard touching the left leg; the muzzle in the direction of the right eye, 4 inches from the body, the right hand seizing the end of the ramrod.

2. Draw the ramrod, insert it into the muzzle, and let it slide in; seize the carbine with the right hand above and near the left, bring it down, turning it at the same time, and resume the position of *order arms*, **No. 41**.

3. Raise the carbine smartly with the right hand, turning the barrel to the right; place it in the left hand, which seizes it below the lower band, the thumb extended along the stock, the hand opposite to the left shoulder, and as high as the chin, the elbow against the butt.

4. Bring down the carbine with the left hand, draw out the ramrod and return it, raise the carbine again, turning the barrel to the front, the guard as high as, and opposite to the left shoulder; incline it to the right, so that the rings may hang down, the left hand as high as, and opposite to the neck; bring the swivel to the front with the right hand, the thumb pressing on the short side to open it, and insert it into the rings.

5. Seize the small of the stock with the right hand, let go with the left hand, which is dropped by the side, pass the carbine behind the bar, lowering the muzzle, push the butt to the rear, and drop the right hand quickly by the side.\*

---

\* With Hall's carbine, the squad being at the position of *order arms*, the instructor commands:

*Inspection—(of) CARBINE.*

1 *time*, 3 *motions*, (which correspond to 3, 4, and 5, with the other carbine.)

(3.) 1. Raise the carbine smartly with the right hand, turning the barrel to the right, place it in the left hand, which seizes it below the lower band, the thumb extended along the stock, the hand opposite to the shoulder, and as high as the chin, the elbow against the butt; carry the right hand to the lever, spring open the chamber, and drop the right hand by the side.

(4.) 2. Bring up the right hand to the chamber, place the thumb upon it and shut it, turn the piece in the left hand to a horizontal position, the muzzle to the right, the barrel to the front, and swivel it.

(5.) 3. Seize the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock, let go with the left hand which is dropped by the side, lower the piece to the right side, push the butt to the rear, and drop the right hand.

---

*Inspection—(of) SABRE.*

*1 time, 7 motions.*

98.— (Pl. 22, *fig. B.*) 1. At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, execute the 1st time of *draw sabre*, No. 93.

2. Execute the 2d time of *draw sabre*, No. 93.

3. Present the sabre as it is prescribed, No. 94.

4. Turn the wrist inwards, to show the other side of the blade.

5. Carry the sabre to the shoulder, as it is prescribed, No. 95.

6. Execute the first time of *return sabre*, No. 96.

7. Execute the second time of *return sabre*, No. 96.

*Unslung—CARBINE.*

As prescribed, No. 52.

99.— When the men execute the inspection of arms correctly, to exercise them without the details, the instructor commands:

*Inspection—(of) ARMS.*

At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, the men execute the first and second motions of the *inspection of carbine*, No. 97. (With Hall's carbine, remain steady.)

Each man, as the instructor passes before him, executes the third (first, with Hall's carbine) motion of *inspection of carbine*, No. 97. (*The instructor takes the carbine to examine it, if he thinks proper, but the trooper does not carry it forward to present it to him.*)

As soon as the instructor has passed by two files, the man who has been inspected executes the fourth and fifth motions of *inspection of carbine*, No. 97, and draws the sabre, first and second motions of *inspection of sabre*, No. 98.

Each man, as the instructor passes before him, presents the sabre, and turns the wrist inwards to show the other side of the blade, third and fourth motions of *inspection of sabre*, No. 98.

As soon as the instructor has passed by two files, the man who has been inspected carries the sabre to the shoulder, returns it, fifth, sixth, and seventh motions of *inspection of sabre*, No. 98; unslings the carbine, and resumes the position of *order arms*, No. 41.

100.— If, instead of inspecting the arms, the instructor merely wishes to ascertain after firing that no arms remain loaded, the squad being at the position of order arms, he commands:

*Spring—RAMRODS.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is RAMRODS, execute the first motion of *inspection of arms*, No. 97.

Seize the ramrod with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, draw it, and insert it in the muzzle, let it slide into the barrel, and place the right hand near the end of the barrel, the thumb extended one inch from the muzzle.

When the instructor has passed, draw out the ramrod and return it; seize the carbine with the right hand above the left, bring it down, turning it at the same time, and resume the position of *order arms*, No. 41.

To satisfy himself that the carbine is not loaded, the instructor takes the ramrod by the end, and springs it in the barrel.

### (LANCERS.)

101.— The lancer being at the position of *order lances*, the instructor commands:

#### *Inspection—(of) LANCES.*

*1 time, 4 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, slip the right hand down along the staff to the height of the hip; raise the lance perpendicularly, the end six inches from the ground.

2. Lower the point to the front, the staff pressing against the elbow, and placed horizontally 2 inches below the right breast; the lance supported under the arm, the thumb extended on the staff, the fingers closed.

3. Turn the hand, the nails downwards, to show the other side of the blade.

4. Bring up the lance, and place the butt of it near the right toe, the hand at the height of the stock.

*Inspection—(of) SABRE.**1 time, 7 motions.*

102.— (Pl. 22, fig. C.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, pass the lance to the left, the butt of it near the left toe, the staff resting against the left shoulder and supported by the left hand ; turn the head slightly to the left, without deranging the position of the body; unhook the sabre, and bring the hilt to the front with the left hand, which holds the scabbard below the upper rings; support the lance with the same hand, by extending the thumb in front of the staff; run the wrist through the sword-knot, seize the gripe, draw the blade 6 inches out of the scabbard, and turn the head to the front.

2. Execute the second motion of inspection of sabre, No. 98.

3. Execute the third motion of No. 98.

4. Execute the fourth motion of No. 98.

5. Execute the fifth motion of No. 98.

6. Execute the sixth motion of No. 98.

7. Execute the seventh motion of *inspection of sabre*, No. 98, and carry the lance with the right hand near the right toe, in the position of *order lances*, No. 86.

103.— When the lancers execute the inspection of arms correctly, to exercise them without the details, the instructor commands:

*Inspection—(of) ARMS.*

At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, the lancers execute the first and second motions of *inspection of lances*, No. 101.

Each lancer, as the instructor passes before him, executes the third motion of *inspection of lances*, No. 101.

As soon as the instructor has passed by two files, the lancer who has been inspected executes the fourth motion of *inspection of lances*, No. 101, and draws the sabre, first and second motions of *inspection of sabre*, No. 102.

Each lancer, as the instructor passes before him, presents the sabre, and turns the wrist inwards to show the other side of the blade, third and fourth motions of *inspection of sabre*, No. 98.

As soon as the instructor has passed by two files, the lancer who has been inspected carries the sabre to the shoulder, returns it, fifth and sixth motions of *inspection of sabre*, No. 98, and places the lance in the position of *order lances*, No. 86.

## SECOND PART.

### **Marching with arms at the different steps.**

104.— The troopers, having the sabre hooked up, are exercised at the different steps and movements explained in the *second* part of the *first* lesson; those armed with carbines are taught, in addition, to support arms and to carry arms when marching, and to fire with cartridges. The lancers are exercised in a like manner, with the lance carried or shouldered.

105.— The instructor orders the arms to be carried before executing an about-face.

106.— Whenever the command **HALT** is given, the troopers will carry arms smartly.



107.— When firing with powder, the instructor directs the men to observe, in half-cocking the piece, whether any smoke comes from the nipple, which is a sign that it has fired. If the smoke does not come out, the man, instead of loading, will pass behind the rear rank, holding the muzzle upwards; he will face to the rear to prick and prime anew.

If the trooper, under the impression that his carbine had fired, has put in a second load on the first, he will perceive it from the size of the charge.

## FOURTH LESSON.

### FIRST PART.

108.— For this lesson the squad is composed of from 8 to 10 men, armed only with sabres; they are placed in one rank, 9 feet from each other. They are in stable jackets, and schakos, or helmets, with their cartridge-boxes and gunslings. When all the motions of the sabre exercise begin to be executed with regularity, the carabiniers and cuirassiers are exercised with the cuirasses, and the dragoons, chasseurs, and hussars, with the carbine slung.

The object of the moulinet is to render the joints of the arm and wrist supple, and as it adds to the confidence of the men when isolated, by increasing their dexterity, they should first be exercised at it, as a preparation for the other motions.

Each lesson is therefore commenced and ended with moulinets, executed with a quickness proportioned to the progress of the troopers. The instructor pays particular attention that the men do not employ a degree of force in the sabre exercise, which not only is less necessary than

skill and suppleness, but which is even prejudicial. He observes, also, that they do not lean to one side, in such a manner as to lose the seat, when mounted; he requires more especially, in the motions of the sabre to the rear, that the blade shall not fall too near the body, for fear of wounding the horse. In describing a circle, the flat of the blade should be to the side, and the edge to the front, and it should be so directed as not to touch either the horse's head, or his haunches, or the knees of the rider.

When the troopers execute all the motions with regularity, the instructor requires each cut to be given without decomposing it; the last syllable of a command is the signal for the quick execution of it. All the cuts are then terminated by a half-moulinet, which brings back to the position of GUARD.

Thrusts should always be used in preference, as they require less force, and their result is more prompt, sure, and decisive. They should be directed quickly *home* to the body of the adversary, the sabre being held with the full grasp, the thumb pressing against the guard in the direction of the blade.

The parries against the lance are the same as against the point.

109.— The instructor explains what is meant by *right and left side of the gripe*; by *tierce*, and by *quarte*.

The *right side of the gripe* is the side opposite to the guard.

The *left side of the gripe* is the side next to the guard.

*Tierce* is the position in which the edge of the blade is turned to the right, the nails downwards.

*Quarte* is the position in which the edge of the blade is turned to the left, the nails upwards.

To *rest*, the instructor conforms to what is prescribed, No. 2. In this case, he causes the sabre to be returned.

### **Sabre exercise.**

110.— The troopers being placed as prescribed, No. 108, the instructor orders the sabres to be drawn.

111.— He commands:

GUARD.

1 *time*.

(Pl. 23.) At the command GUARD, carry the right foot 2 feet from the left, the heels on the same line; place the left hand closed, 6 inches from the body, and as high as the elbow, the fingers towards the body, the little finger nearer than the thumb (*position of the bridle hand*); at the same time, place the right hand in tierce at the height of, and 3 inches from, the left hand, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the little finger by the side of the others, the point of the sabre inclined to the left, and 2 feet higher than the hand.

### **Left—MOULINET.**

1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

112.— (Pl. 24.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is MOULINET, extend the right arm to the front to its full length, the hand in tierce and as high as the eyes.

2. Lower the blade in rear of the left elbow; graze the horse's neck quickly, describing a circle from rear to front, and return to the position of guard.

*Right—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

113.— (Pl. 25.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is **MOULINET**, extend the right arm to the front to its full length, the hand in quarte, and as high as the eyes.

2. Lower the blade in rear of the right elbow; graze the horse's neck quickly, describing a circle from rear to front, and return to the position of guard.

114.— To execute the moulinet without stopping, if the instructor wishes to begin by the left, he commands:

*Left and right—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

115.— If he wishes to begin by the right, he commands:

*Right and left—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

At either of these commands, the troopers, commencing from the position of **GUARD**, execute alternately what is laid down in **Nos. 112** and **113**, without stopping at any motion.

*Rear—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

116.— (Pl. 26.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is **MOULINET**, raise the arm to the right and rear to its full extent, the point of the sabre upwards, the edge to the right, the thumb extended and the back of the gripe, the body slightly turned to the right.

2. Describe a circle in rear from left to right, the hand as far as possible from the body, and return to the position of guard.

When the troopers execute the moulinets well, the instructor requires them to execute several in succession, until the command GUARD.

*In tierce—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

117.— (Pl. 27.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, raise the hand in tierce as high as the eyes, throw back the right shoulder, carrying the elbow to the rear, the point of the sabre to the front, the edge upwards.

2. Thrust to the front, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*In quarte—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

118.— (Pl. 28.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, lower the hand in quarte near the right hip, the thumb extended on the right side of the gripe, the point a little higher than the wrist.

2. Thrust to the front, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Left—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

119.— (Pl. 29.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the left, draw back the hand in

tierce towards the right, at the height of the neck, the edge upwards, the point directed to the left.

2. Thrust to the left, extending the arm to its full length.
3. Return to the position of guard.

*Right—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

120.— (Pl. 30.) At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the right, carry the hand in quarte near the left breast, the edge upwards, the point directed to the right.

2. Thrust to the right, extending the arm to its full length.
3. Return to the position of guard.

*Rear—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

121.— (Pl. 31.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the right and rear, bring the hand in quarte opposite to the right shoulder, the arm half extended, the blade horizontal, the point to the rear, the edge upwards.

2. Thrust to the rear, extending the arm to its full length.
3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry left—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

122.— (Pl. 32.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the left, raise the hand in tierce

near the neck, the point of the sabre directed at the height of the breast of a man on foot.

2. Thrust down in tierce.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry right—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

123.— (Pl. 33.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT turn the head to the right, carry the hand in quarte near the right hip, the point of the sabre directed at the height of the breast of a man on foot.

2. Thrust in quarte.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Front—CUT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

124.— (Pl. 34.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, raise the sabre, the arm half extended, the hand a little above the head, the edge upwards, the point to the rear and higher than the hand.

2. Cut, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Left—CUT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

125.— (Pl. 35.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, turn the head to the left, raise the sabre, the arm extended to the right, the hand in quarte, and as high as the head, the point higher than the hand.

2. Cut diagonally to the left.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Right-CUT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

126.— (Pl. 36, *fig. A.*) 1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, turn the head to the right, carry the hand opposite to the left shoulder, the point of the sabre upwards, the edge to the left.

2. Extend the arm quickly to its full length, give a back-handed cut horizontally.

3. Return to the position of guard.

The cuts Nos. 124, 125, and 126, are also used against infantry, observing to direct them vertically.

*Rear-CUT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

127.— (Pl. 36, *fig. B.*) 1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, turn the head to the right, throwing back the right shoulder; carry the hand as high as, and opposite to the left shoulder, the sabre perpendicular, the edge to the left.

2. Extend the arm quickly to its full length, and give a back-handed cut horizontally to the rear.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Right, in tierce and quarte-CUT.**1 time, 4 motions.*

128.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, execute the 1st motion of *right cut*, No. 126.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *right cut*, No. 126.

3. Turn the hand in quarte, and cut horizontally.

4. Return to the position of guard.



*Left, in quarte and tierce—CUT.**1 time, 4 motions.*

129.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, execute the 1st motion of *left cut*, No. 125.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *left cut*, No. 125.

3. Turn the hand in tierce, and cut horizontally.

4. Return to the position of guard.

*Rear, in tierce and quarte—CUT.**1 time, 4 motions.*

130.— 1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, execute the 1st motion of *rear cut*, No. 127.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *rear cut*, No. 127.

3. Turn the hand in quarte, and cut horizontally.

4. Return to the position of guard.

*In tierce—PARRY.**1 time, 2 motions.*

131.— (Pl. 37, fig. A.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, carry the hand quickly a little to the front and right, the nails downwards, without moving the elbow; the point inclined to the front, as high as the eyes, and in the direction of the right shoulder; the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, and pressing against the guard.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*In quarte—PARRY.**1 time, 2 motions.*

132.— (Pl. 37. *fig. B.*) 1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, turn the hand and carry it quickly to the front and left, the nails upwards, the edge to the left, the point inclined to the front, as high as the eyes, and in the direction of the left shoulder; the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, and resting against the guard.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*For the head—PARRY.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

133.— (Pl. 38.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, raise the sabre quickly above the head, the arm nearly extended, the edge upwards, the point to the left, and about 6 inches higher than the hand.

The hand is carried more or less to the right, left, or rear, according to the position of the adversary.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry right—PARRY.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

134.— (Pl. 39.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, turn the head to the right, throwing back the right shoulder, raise the sabre, the arm extended to the right and rear, the point upwards, the hand in tierce, the thumb tended on the back of the gripe, the edge to the left.

2. Describe a circle quickly on the right, from rear to front, the arm extended; turn aside the bayonet with the back of the blade, bringing the hand as high as the head, the point upwards.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry left—PARRY.**1 time, 3 motions.*

135.— (Pl. 40.) 1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, turn the head to the left, raise the sabre, the arm extended to the front and right, the point upwards, the hand in tierce, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the back of the blade to the front.

2. Describe a circle quickly on the left, from front to rear along the horse's neck, the arm extended; turn aside the bayonet with the back of the blade, bringing the hand, still in tierce, above the left shoulder.

3. Return to the position of guard.

When the troopers begin to execute correctly the above cuts, thrusts, and parries, the instructor requires them to make the application of them by combined motions, as follows:

136.— *In tierce*—POINT AND FRONT CUT.

137.— *In quarte*—POINT AND FRONT CUT.

138.— *Left*—POINT AND CUT.

139.— *Right*—POINT AND CUT.

140.— *Rear*—POINT AND CUT.

141.— *Against infantry right*—POINT AND CUT.

142.— *Against infantry left*—POINT AND CUT.

## CARRY—SABRE.

143.— As it is prescribed, No. 95, and carry the right foot by the side of the left.

**Lance exercise.**

144.— The squad is composed of from 8 to 10 men, armed only with the lance; they are in stable-jackets, schakos, and cartridge-boxes, and are placed in one rank, 15 feet from each other. After they have executed all the motions several times, they are exercised, having the sabre, which is unhooked at the command, **LANCE EXERCISE**.

145.— The lancers being at the position of *carry lance*, No. 80, the instructor commands:

**LANCE EXERCISE.**

*1 time.*

At the command **LANCE EXERCISE**, carry the right foot 2 feet from the left, the heels on the same line; let the lance slip to the ground through the right hand, which seizes it at the height of the neck, the elbow and fore-arm pressed against the staff, the staff held perpendicularly, the butt on a line with, and one inch from the right toe; place the left hand closed 6 inches from the body, as high as the elbow, the fingers towards the Body, the little finger nearer than the thumb.

This position is the same as that of the lancer mounted.

***Rest*—LANCES.**

*1 time.*

146.— At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, throw the lance into the left hand with the right hand, without removing the butt of it from the ground (*mounted*, without taking it from the boot); seize it with the thumb and fore-finger of the left hand, the other fingers closed (to hold the reins); pass the right arm through the

sling above the elbow; then let go of the lance with the left hand, throw it in rear by a motion of the right arm, and drop the right hand by the side.

*After this motion, adjust the reins.*

*Carry—LANCES.*

*1 time.*

147.— (Pl. 41.) At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, bring the lance to the front by a motion of the right arm, seize it with the thumb and fore-finger of the left hand, the other fingers closed (to hold the reins); free the arm from the sling, seize the lance quickly with the right hand, let go of it with the left, place it perpendicularly, the right hand as high as the neck, the elbow and fore-arm pressing against the staff.

*CHARGE—LANCES.*

*2 times.*

148.— (Pl. 42.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is CHARGE, slip down the right hand along the staff opposite to the hip, raise the lance perpendicularly, to free it from the boot.

2. At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, lower the point to the front, the staff pressing against the elbow and held horizontally 2 inches below the right breast, the lance well supported under the arm, the thumb extended on the staff, the fingers closed.

When mounted with closed ranks, the rear rank executes only the first motion of charge lances, and remains in that position.

## FRONT-POINT.

*2 times.*

149.— (Pl. 43.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is **FRONT**, carry the right arm to the rear to its full length, throwing back the right shoulder, the staff resting above the hip, the point as high as the right breast.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **POINT**, carry forward the upper part of the **Body**, throw forward the lance with force, bringing the arm to the front, the wrist passing near and a little below the right breast, extend the arm to its full length, the hand in quarte, the point directed at the height of a man's breast; make a slight pause, and resume the position of *charge lances*.

## RIGHT-POINT.

*2 times.*

150.— The same as to point to the front, except that the lancer, in throwing back the right shoulder, carries the right arm over the horse's croup, in rear and a little to the left, the point of the lance directed to the right, taking care not to lower the hand, for fear of hooking the sling on the cantle.

## LEFT-POINT.

*2 times.*

151.— The same motions as to point to the front, except that the lancer draws back the arm to the right and rear, and that he directs the point of the lance to the left.

## RIGHT REAR-LANCES.

*2 times.*

152.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is **RIGHT REAR**, raise the point of the lance as high as, and opposite the left eye.

At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, lower the point of the lance along the horse's neck, raising the right elbow, the arm half extended; make the point describe a semi-circle, grazing the right leg, place the lance horizontally under the right arm, the point to the rear; press the staff under the arm-pit, and change the position of the right hand, placing the thumb on the staff the fingers closed under it.

#### REAR-POINT.

*2 times.*

153.— (Pl. 44.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is **REAR**, turn the head to the right and rear, extend the right arm in front to its full extent, the hand in tierce and as high as the neck, the fore-finger extended on the staff, the staff touching the arm-pit.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **POINT**, carry the arm quickly to the rear to its full length, throwing back the right shoulder, thrust with force, the point directed at the height of a man's waist; make a slight pause, and resume the position of *right rear lances*.

#### RIGHT REAR-POINT.

*2 times.*

154.— (Pl. 45.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is **RIGHT REAR**, turn the head to the right, extend the arm in front to its full length, the hand in tierce, as high as the neck, and opposite to the left shoulder, the fore-

finger extended an the staff, the staff touching the elbow, the point directed to the right.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **POINT**, carry the arm quickly to the rear to its full length, thrust with force, the point directed at the height of the waist of a man; make a slight pause, and resume the position of *right rear lances*.

This motion, above all others, requires the lancer to preserve his seat with care.

### TO THE GROUND—POINT.

*2 motions.*

155.— (Pl. 46.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is **TO THE GROUND**, turn the head to the right, raise the arm to its full extent, lower the point of the lance towards the ground, the staff pressing against the fore-arm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **POINT**, thrust with force towards the ground, and resume the position of *right rear lances*.

### FRONT—LANCES.

*2 times.*

156.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is **FRONT**, raise the butt of the lance as high as the eyes.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, separate the arm from the body, make the point of the lance describe a semi-circle, the end of it grazing the right leg, replace the lance and the hand in the position of *charge lances*.

### *Left rear*—LANCES.

*1 time.*



157.— (Pl. 47.) At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, separate the elbow from the body; make the point of the lance describe an arc of a circle, above the horse's ears, the staff falling into the bend of the left arm, the hand opposite to, and 6 inches from the right breast, the butt of the lance as high as, and on the right of the horse's head, the point to the rear; change the position of the hand, turning the nails upwards, without taking the thumb from the staff.

#### LEFT REAR-POINT.

*2 times.*

158.— (Pl. 48.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is LEFT REAR, turn the head to the left and rear, extend the right arm to its full length towards the right, the wrist in quarte, as high as the neck; the staff resting lightly above the bend of the arm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, thrust with force to the rear, the point directed at the height of a man's waist; make a slight pause, and resume the position of *left rear lances*.

#### TO THE GROUND-POINT.

*2 times.*

159.— (Pl. 49.) 1. At the first part of the command, which is TO THE GROUND, turn the head to the left, raise the arm to its full length, lower the point of the lance towards the ground, the staff pressing against the left forearm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, thrust with force to the ground, and resume the position of *left rear lances*.

*Front*—LANCES.*1 time.*

160.— At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, change the position of the left hand, turning the nails downwards, without taking the thumb from the staff; make the point of the lance describe an arc of a circle above the horse's ears, and resume the position of *charge lances*.

## RIGHT REAR—LANCES.

As prescribed, [No. 152](#).

## LEFT REAR—LANCES.

*2 times.*

161.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is LEFT REAR, lower the butt of the lance on a line with the horse's nose.

2. At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, raise the arm to its full length, describe a circle with the lance, the point of it passing near the right leg of the lancer and along the horse's neck; the staff then falling into the bend of the left arm, the hand opposite to, and 6 inches from, the right breast, the butt of the lance as high as, and on the right of the horse's head, the point to the rear.

## BY MOULINET FRONT—LANCES.

*2 times.*

162.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is BY MOULINET FRONT, raise the butt of the lance towards the left, the right hand one foot from, and opposite to the left shoulder, the staff still resting on the left arm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, hold the lance squarely in the hand, describe a circle and a half with the point of it, the butt grazing twice the right side of the horse's neck and the lancer's right leg; replace the lance and the hand in the position of *charge lances*.

### BY MOULINET LEFT REAR—LANCES.

*2 times.*

163.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is **BY MOULINET LEFT REAR**, carry the point of the lance a little to the right, and 6 inches higher than the head, change the position of the hand, the thumb downwards, the fingers upwards.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, lower the point of the lance to the left, along the horse's neck; carry the hand to the left, as high as the stock; describe a circle and a half with the point, grazing the left leg twice, and resume the position of *left rear lances*.

### RIGHT REAR—LANCES.

*2 times.*

164.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is **RIGHT REAR**, raise the butt of the lance towards the left, the right hand one foot from, and opposite to the left shoulder, the staff still resting on the left arm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, lower the butt of the lance to the right along the horse's neck, grazing the right leg, and carrying the hand to the right; describe a circle with the butt of the lance, and resume the position of *right rear lances*.

## FRONT-LANCES.

As it is prescribed, [No. 156](#).

## LEFT PARRY—AND RIGHT POINT.

*2 times.*

165.— At the first part of the command, which is **LEFT PARRY**, raise the point of the lance towards the right 6 inches higher than the head; lower the lance with force from right to left, grazing the horse's neck, and extending the arm to the left, so as to strike forcibly the weapon or body of a man on foot, and bring the lance quickly back under the right arm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is, **AND RIGHT POINT**, draw the right arm back to its full extent, to the rear and a little to the left, throwing back the right shoulder, the staff resting above the hip, the point a little lower than the hand; throw forward the upper part of the body, thrust with force, bringing the arm to the front, the wrist passing near and a little below the right breast; extend the arm to its full length, the hand in tierce, the point directed to the right at the height of the breast of a man on foot, and resume the position of *charge lances*.

## RIGHT PARRY—AND LEFT POINT.

*2 times.*

166.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is **RIGHT PARRY**, raise the point of the lance towards the left, 6 inches higher than the head; lower the lance with force from left to right, grazing the horse's neck, and extending the arm to the right, so as to strike forcibly the weapon or body of a man on foot, and bring the lance quickly back under the right arm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **AND LEFT POINT**, draw the right arm back to its full extent, throwing back the right shoulder, the staff resting below the right breast, the point little lower than the hand; throw forward the upper part of the body, thrust with force, extending the arm to its full length, the hand in quarte, the point directed to the left at the breast of a man on foot, and resume the position of *charge lances*.

#### **LEFT AND RIGHT PARRY—AND FRONT POINT.**

*2 times.*

167.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is **LEFT AND RIGHT PARRY**, raise the point of the lance towards the right, 6 inches higher than the head; lower the lance with force from right to left, above the horse's neck; describe a circle on the left with the point, bringing it back to the front; then lower it with force from left to right, to turn aside the adversary's weapon, and bring the lance quickly back under the right arm.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **AND FRONT POINT**, extend the right arm to the rear to its full length, throwing back the right shoulder, the staff resting above the hip, the point a little lower than the hand; throw forward the upper part of the body; thrust with force to the front, extending the arm to its full length, the hand in quarte, the point directed at the breast of a man on foot, and resume the position of *charge lances*.

#### **RIGHT AND LEFT PARRY—AND FRONT POINT.**

168.— The same principles and inverse motions.

If the parries and thrusts are to be used against cavalry, it is necessary to parry horizontally, and thrust at the height of the waist.

### AROUND-PARRY.

*2 times.*

169.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is **AROUND**, carry the point of the lance towards the right, as high as the eyes.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **PARRY**, move the lance with force from right to left, and from left to right, still holding it under the arm, until one of the commands, **FRONT**, **LEFT**, or **RIGHT-POINT**.

### *Carry*—LANCES.

*1. time.*

170.— At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, bring up the lance; place the butt of it on a line with the right toe, one inch from it, the right hand as high as the neck; (*mounted*, the butt is placed in the boot at the stirrup.)

171.— To terminate the lesson, the instructor commands:

1. *As dismounted.*

2. *Carry*—LANCES.

*1 time.*

At the last part of the command, which is **LANCES**, bring the right foot by the side of the left, and the butt of the lance by the side of the right toe; let go of the lance; let it fall against the hollow of the shoulder, and seize it again

with the right hand, as it is prescribed for *carried lance*, *dismounted*, No. 80; hook up the sabre, the hilt to the rear.

## SECOND PART.

### Target practice.

172.— Officers and instructors should thoroughly understand the theory of firing, to be able to teach the men to use their fire-arms in the most advantageous manner.

In firing, three kinds of lines are considered.

(Pl. 16, *fig. B*.) *The line of sight* ( $A B$ ) is the visual ray, which, passing through the highest points of the breech and muzzle, is directed towards the object which is to be hit.

*The line of fire* ( $C D$ ) is the axis or middle of the barrel; this line represents the direction which the ball is inclined to follow at the moment it is forced from the muzzle.

The curve (or trajectory),  $C E F G$ , is the one which the ball actually follows, as the force of gravity operates constantly to sink it farther and farther below the line of fire, which is the primitive direction.

As the barrels are generally made, the line of sight and that of fire form, beyond the muzzle, an angle ( $A o C$ ) more or less acute according to the relative thickness at the breech and muzzle. The ball on leaving the barrel, first cuts the line of sight (at  $E$ ) a short distance from the muzzle, passed above this line, approaches it again, cuts it a second time (at  $G$ ), and describes a curve until its fall. This second point of intersection is called the *point blank*. *The point blank range* is the distance from this point to the muzzle, when the line of sight is horizontal.

To accustom the men to fire with accuracy, they are practised at the target. This practical instruction is divided into two parts. For the first part, the target is a plank 5 feet 6 inches long, by 1 foot 9 inches wide. There is a black band 3 inches wide across the middle of it, at which the shots are aimed. A similar band is painted one foot and a half below the first.

The point blank range of Hall's carbine is about 90 yards, at which distance the aim is directly at the middle band.

Within that distance the aim must be below, and beyond it above this band.

The squad being assembled, the instructor requires the men to go in succession to the point from which they are to fire. He places himself by the side of the man, to explain to him the manner of aiming so as to hit the mark. Each man fires three times in succession at each distance, in order to apply the principles thoroughly.

After the men have been sufficiently instructed, they are made to fire with the carbine slung, and the legs separated as if mounted.

When the men have learnt how much the balls vary from the line of sight, at the different distances, they are practised at a target of the same dimensions as the first, but having only one black band in the middle.

In this second part of the instruction, the men judge for themselves of the height at which they must aim to strike the middle band; they are practised, if possible, on uneven ground.

The instructor requires them to press the butt firmly against the right shoulder when aiming, to support the



carbine well with the left hand, to habituate themselves to take sight quickly; finally, to press upon the trigger with the forefinger to fire, without moving the head, or changing the direction of the piece. He occasionally gives the command, *recover arms*, that the men may acquire the habit of aiming promptly.

All the non-commissioned officers and privates pass through this school each year.

The best shots are noted down.

The greater part of the ammunition furnished for the exercise is used for target practice.

To fire with the pistol, the instructor follows the same progression as with the carbine. The men commence at 10 yards from the target, and remove progressively to 30 yards. They are practised to fire to the front, to the right, to the left, and finally, to the rear.

The instructor observes that the men do not put more powder than is necessary in the pistol.

In the position of aim, the arm should be half extended (except in firing to the rear,) and the fingers should not be tightly closed; by this means, the shaking of the hand is diminished; the finger should be pressed gradually on the trigger, without a jerk, which would destroy the aim.

## SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON, DISMOUNTED.

---

**ARTICLE FIRST.**

173.— The troopers composing the platoon are in undress, schakos or helmets, and are armed; the sabre is hooked up to the belt.

When the platoon is in line, the assistant instructor is posted one pace in front of the centre; he marches at the head of the column, when the platoon is by file or broken by fours.

The troopers regulate the step by that of the assistant instructor, the file-closer attending especially thereto.

Each movement is executed first in common time, then in quick time.

All movements are made in two ranks, except the march by single file, and the wheelings, which are at first by rank. All movements of breaking and formation are, moreover, executed from a halt, decomposing them that their mechanism may be better understood.

The instructor requires the men to change ranks every day, and places those in the rear rank who the day before were in the front, that they may become equally accustomed to both ranks.

Each movement must be repeated by the left, after it has been correctly performed by the right.

The instructor directs the men to count by fours, as soon as the platoon is formed. They do not count again during the instruction; but if any man should change his place, his new number is given to him, and if a man of the front rank should be wanting, he is replaced by one from the rear rank, whose place remains vacant.

174.— The platoon being formed in two ranks, close order, the arms carried, the instructor commands:

*In each rank—Count (by) FOURS.*

At the last part of the command, which in FOURS, the men count in each rank, from right to left, pronouncing in a loud and distinct voice, in the same tone, without hurry, and without turning the head: *one, two, three, four*, according to the place which each one occupies.

### **General principles of alignment.**

175.— In order to align themselves, the troopers must regulate their shoulders by those of the men next to them on the side of the alignment, and must fix their eyes on the line of eyes, so as to see the breast of the second man of their rank on that side; for this purpose, they must turn the head, remaining square in the ranks, and must feel lightly the elbow of the man next to them on the side of the alignment.

The men of the rear rank, independently of the alignment, must be exactly behind their file-leaders, preserving a distance of 13 inches, measured from the shoulders of the front rank men to the breast of those of the rear rank.

**Successive alignment of files in the platoon,  
and alignment of the platoon.**

176.— The instructor causes the different alignments to be made, conformably to what is prescribed in [No. 426](#), and the succeeding Articles, with this difference: that the right or left files move only 3 paces to the front, and in the alignment to the rear, 3 steps to the rear.

The arms will always be carried before the alignment is commanded.

**To open and close the ranks.**

177.— As it is prescribed, [Nos. 436, 437](#), except that the rear rank takes 12 steps to the rear, and the assistant instructor moves 6 paces to the front.

The assistant instructor faces the platoon and fronts by right-about face.

The arms will always be carried before the ranks are opened or closed.

**To march the platoon backwards.**

178.— As prescribed, [No. 438](#). The men take the backward step.

**Direct march in single file.**

Each rank is at first practised separately in marching in single file; for this purpose, the ranks being opened, the instructor directs the assistant instructor to command the rear rank, and he commands the front rank himself.

179.— The command is given:

1. *Platoon right.*

2. **FACE.**

As it is prescribed, **No. 10.**

The command is then given:

1. Column forward.

2. **MARCH.**

At the command **MARCH**, the men step off together with the left Foot. Each man preserves, as far as possible, the same distance from the one who precedes him, and remains exactly behind him, that his head may conceal those of the men in front.

The men must not turn their heads or look at the feet of the man who precedes, as they would thereby lose their distance; they must keep the shoulders square in the direction, must not turn out the toes too much, and must march without swinging.

180.— To halt the column when marching, the command is given:

1. *Column.*

2. **HALT.**

At the command **COLUMN**, the man who is in front marks time, and the others close up to the proper distance.

At the command **HALT**, all the column halts, and no one moves afterwards.

The instructor observes that the men do not close too much in regaining their distances.

181.— To face the platoon to the proper front, the command is given:

1. FRONT FACE.
2. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
3. FRONT.

At the command, FRONT FACE, each man faces to the front by a right or left face.

At the command, FRONT, turn the head to the front.

182.— When the men have faced to the right, at the command FRONT FACE, they face to the left; when they have faced to the left, they front by a *right face*.

When the platoon faces to the front by a *left face*, the alignment is to the right; when it faces to the front, by a *right face*, the alignment is to the left.

### **Change of direction.**

183.— Each rank marching separately, the command is given:

1. *Right* (or *left*)—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

At the last part of the first command, which is TURN, the first man turns in the direction indicated, without shortening the step; the others turn in succession on the same ground where the first one turned.

At the second command, which is FORWARD, the first man marches straight to the front in the new direction: he is followed by the others.

### **Individual oblique march.**

184.— Each rank marching separately, the command is given:

1. *Right (or left) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

The movement is performed as prescribed, [No. 23](#).

To resume the primitive direction, the command is given: FORWARD, which is executed as prescribed, [No. 24](#).

The oblique march is practised from a halt, before being executed while marching, conforming to what is laid down in [No. 12](#), for the command.

185.— When each rank executes properly all these movements, the two are united, and are taken through them again together.

186.— The men of the front rank are guides, when marching by a flank. They preserve the proper distance, and keep in the direction of those who precede; the men of the rear rank march on a line with their file-leaders, touching the elbow lightly, and yielding to pressure.

187.— In the changes of direction, the man on the side towards which the wheel is made, turns as prescribed, [No. 183](#), and the one on the opposite side lengthens the step in turning, touches the elbow of the man next to him, and yields to all pressure.

188.— In the oblique march, the men on the side towards which they oblique are guides, and conform to the principles laid down, [No. 460](#). The men on the opposite side regulate their movements by those of the guide of their rank, casting their eyes in his direction to keep on a line with him; their shoulders, on the side towards which they oblique, are in rear of his.

The men no longer touching elbows in this movement, they can only preserve the alignment by taking perfectly parallel directions, and maintaining the regularity of the step.

**The platoon marching by a flank, to form it front or on right into line.**

189.— The column marching with the right in front, to form it front into line, the instructor commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the first man of the front rank continues to march straight forward. The first man of the rear rank, who is marching on a line with his file-leader, shortens the step and places himself behind him by obliquing to the left; the other men oblique immediately to the left, and form in succession on the left of the first; each man halts on a line with the rank to which he belongs, carries arms, and dresses to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor commands HALT, after the first man has marched 20 paces.

He gives the command *right* DRESS, immediately after that of HALT, and does not command FRONT, until after the last file is aligned.

190.— When the column marches with the left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by



inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *left* DRESS; 5. FRONT.

191.— The column marching with the right in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its right flank, the instructor commands:

1. *On right into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the two first men turn to the right and march in the new direction ; immediately after having turned, the first man of the rear rank, who is marching on a line with his file-leader, shortens the step and places himself behind him, by obliquing to the left. The other men continue to march straight forward, and turn successively one pace beyond those who precede, the rear rank men shortening the step after having turned, to place themselves behind their file-leaders; each file places itself on the left of those already formed. Each man halts on a line with the rank to which he belongs, carries arms, and dresses to the right.

In giving the commands HALT, *right* DRESS, and FRONT, the instructor conforms to what is laid down in [No. 189](#).

192.— When the column marches with the left in front, the movement is executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *On left into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *left* DRESS; 5. FRONT.

193.— These movements are first executed from a halt. The instructor requires the men to march well together until after they have turned, and the rear rank men not to slacken the step until then, to place themselves behind their file-leaders.

The instructor remains on the side of the formation, in rear of the new line, until the last file is formed; he sees that the men execute the movement correctly, and that they do not mistake their ranks.

**To form the platoon left into single rank.**

194.— The platoon being formed in two ranks with carried arms, the instructor commands:

1. *Left into single rank.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. FRONT FACE.
5. *Right*—DRESS.
6. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the men of the front rank do not move; the rear rank men face to the left, and step off together.

At the command HALT, they all halt.

At the command FRONT FACE, they face to the right.

At the command *right*—DRESS, the rear rank men advance to the line of the front rank, and align themselves on it.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor does not give the command **HALT**, until the man on the right of the rear rank arrives opposite the left elbow of the man on the left of the front rank.

**To form the platoon right into two ranks.**

195.— The platoon being in one rank, with carried arms, the instructor commands:

1. *Right into two ranks.*
2. **MARCH**
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. **FRONT.**

At the command **MARCH**, the men of the front rank step one pace to the front; those of the rear rank, face to the right and step off together ; each man halts behind his file-leader, and fronts without command.

At the command *right—DRESS*, the men align themselves to the right.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

**Manual of arms.**

196.— The platoon is exercised in line at the manual of arms, first with open, then with closed ranks. The instructor endeavors to make the men execute the motions together, and if he thinks proper, he takes them through the manual of arms by times and motions, giving the commands, 2, 3, 4, &c., but without explanations.

197.— When the ranks are closed, at the first part of the command, *draw sabre*, or *return sabre*, the rear rank steps back 6 steps to the rear, and after having carried the sabre

to the shoulder, or returned it to the scabbard, closes again without a command.

During this movement, the assistant instructor moves 3 paces to the front, and the file-closer 6 steps to the rear.

When the movement is finished, they both resume their places.

---

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### **The platoon being in line, to break by fours to the right.**

198.— The instructor commands:

1. *By fours right wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the first command, the assistant instructor places himself one pace in front of the four right files.

At the command MARCH, numbers 1 of the front rank, who are the *pivots*, turn on their own ground, marking time; numbers 4, who are the *marching flanks*, step out smartly and wheel to the right, turning the head towards the pivot, that they may neither separate from, nor approach it; numbers 2 and 3 turn the head towards the marching flank, and regulate their step by it, keeping up the touch of the elbow towards the pivot, so as not to separate from it.

The rear rank men follow those of the front rank, inclining towards the marching flank as soon as it has broken.

At the command **HALT**, the men halt; the rear rank men resume their places behind their file-leaders, at their proper distances.

The instructor commands **HALT** at the moment when the wheel is about to finish.

In this column, a distance is maintained between all the front ranks equal to their front.

199.— To break the platoon by fours to the left, the movement is executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By fours left wheel*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **HALT**.

200.— The column being halted, with the right in front, to form the platoon into line, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours left wheel*.
2. **MARCH**.
3. **HALT**.
4. *Right—DRESS*.
5. **FRONT**.

Which is executed as prescribed, **No. 198**, and by inverse means.

### **Direct march in column of fours.**

201.— When a column of fours marches with the right in front, numbers 4 are guides; when the left is in front, numbers 1 are guides.

The guide of the first rank of fours, who is the guide of the column, should march straight to the front, and should regulate his step so that the first rank of fours which

dresses on him, may be always one pace in rear of the assistant instructor who marches at the head of the column.

The guide of each rank should keep the head to the front, and remain always at his proper distance, and in the direction of the guide of the front rank of the four files which precede him. The three other men of each rank of fours dress upon the guide of their rank, touching the elbow lightly, and casting their eyes occasionally towards him; they yield to the pressure which comes from his side, and resist that from the opposite side.

In marching in column of fours, the instructor sees that the guides of the front ranks preserve their distances, in order to be able to form into line by a general movement.

202.— To put the column in motion, the instructor commands:

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, the men step off together, regulating by the guide.

After having given a point of direction to the column, the instructor allows it to march some time without changing direction, in order to give the men an opportunity to practise the principles of the direct march.

203.— To halt the column, the instructor commands:

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

At the command HALT, the men all halt, and do not stir even to regain their distances.

The men are practised to pass from the common step to the quick step, and from the quick step to the common step.

### **Change of direction.**

204.— The column marching, the instructor commands:

*Head of column to the left.*

At this command the assistant instructor commands:

1. *Left*—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

At the last part of the first command, which is TURN, the first rank of fours turns to the left; the pivot, without slackening the pace, describes an arc of 5 paces; the man on the marching flank lengthens the step in turning. Numbers 2 and 3 touch the elbow towards the pivot, and turn the head towards the marching flank so as to regulate their pace by it.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, the first rank of fours marches straight forward, and the men all resume the step at which they were marching before having turned.

Each rank of fours turns in succession on the same ground where the first turned.

The assistant instructor gives the command FORWARD at the moment when the first rank has nearly finished its turn.

In these changes of direction, the instructor requires all the ranks of fours to march straight, without towards the side opposite to the turn, and he sees that the pivot man, and the one on the marching flank, do not shorten or lengthen the step before arriving at the turning point.

To change direction to the right, the movement is executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, at the command: *head of column to the right.*

### **Individual oblique march.**

205.— The column marching, the instructor commands:

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each man makes a *quarter-face to the left*; the man on the left of the first rank of fours, who is the guide of the column, marches in the new direction, and parallel to the assistant instructor.

The man on the left of each of the other ranks, who is the guide of his rank, marches also in this direction, casting his eyes upon the guide of the column, to remain on a line with him while following a parallel direction. The other men of each rank, no longer keeping up the touch of the elbows, give a glance to the line of the shoulders of the men next to them on the side of the guide, and regulate their step so that their shoulders may always be in rear of that of the man next to them on that side, and that his head may hide those of the other men of that rank. The men should, moreover, preserve the regularity of the step, and should oblique in the same degree.

To resume the primitive direction, the instructor commands:

### **FORWARD.**

At this command each man makes a quarter face to the right, while advancing, and marches to the front, conforming to the principles of the direct march.



**The platoon marching in column of fours, to form it to the front or on right into line.**

206.— The platoon marching in column of fours, with the right in front, to form it front into line, the instructor commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

Which is executed as it is prescribed, [No. 462](#), the instructor commanding HALT, when the four first files have marched 20 paces.

207.— The column marching left in front, the movement is executed as prescribed, [No. 463](#), at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

208.— The column marching with the right in front, to form it into line on the prolongation of its right flank, the instructor commands:

1. *On right into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. FRONT

Which is executed as it is prescribed, [No. 466](#).

209.— The column marching with the left in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its left flank, the movement is executed as prescribed, [No. 467](#), at the commands: 1. *On left into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

### Manual of arms.

210.— The platoon is exercised in line at the manual, with open and with closed ranks.

### Firing.

211.— The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

1. *Fire by platoon.*
2. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the first command, the assistant instructor moves quickly behind the centre of the platoon, 6 paces in rear of the file-closer.

At the second command, the assistant instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. READY.
3. AIM
4. FIRE (or *recover—ARMS.*)
5. LOAD (or *carry—ARMS.*)

Which is executed as in the *school of the trooper dismounted* [[No. 66](#), and the succeeding paragraphs].

212.— The arms being carried, the assistant instructor recommences the firing by the same commands, and it

continues until the signal to *cease firing*; if there is no trumpet, the instructor commands: **CEASE FIRING**.

At the signal, or at this command, the men finish loading their pieces, and carry arms; the assistant instructor resumes his place in line.

213.— To fire to the rear, the instructor commands:

1. *Fire to the rear.*
2. **PLATOON ABOUT-FACE.**

At the first command, the file-closer passes quickly by one of the flanks of the platoon, and places himself one pace in rear of the front rank, which has now become the rear rank, and opposite to his place in line. The assistant instructor also moves to the rear, to command the firing.

At the second command the men face about and the instructor commands:

1. *Fire by platoon.*
2. **COMMENCE FIRING.**

Which is executed as prescribed, **No. 211**, the rear rank taking the position pointed out for the front rank, and the front rank that prescribed for the rear rank.

The instructor stops the firing as prescribed, **No. 212**.

214.— To face the platoon to its proper front, the instructor commands:

### **PLATOON ABOUT-FACE.**

During this movement, the assistant instructor and file-closer resume their places.

215.— The instructor observes that the men of the rear rank place themselves exactly opposite to the intervals to fire, and that they resume their places in rear of their file-leaders, when they carry arms. He cautions the assistant instructor to leave between the commands **AIM** and **FIRE**, only the interval which is necessary to permit the men to aim properly. He places himself where he can see both ranks, to observe their faults.

The instructor cautions the men to be perfectly cool during the firing, without, however, rendering them less active in the execution of it.

When the men fire correctly and together, they are practised with powder.

### **Sabre and lance exercise.**

216.— For the sabre and lance exercise, the instructor opens the ranks and commands:

1. *By the left* (or *by the right*)—**OPEN FILES.**
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Right* (or *left*)—**DRESS.**
4. **FRONT.**

At the last part of the first command, which is **OPEN FILES**, all face to the left except the first file.

At the command **MARCH**, the men step off together. The second man from the right, after having marched, for the sabre exercise 5 paces and for the lance exercise 7 paces, halts, fronts by a right-face, and dresses on the right file who has not moved. The others march on, and each one glancing over his right shoulder, halts in succession and fronts when he has arrived at his place. The rear rank men

regulate themselves by their file-leaders, and remain exactly behind them.

When the third man from the right has fronted, the instructor dresses the front rank the assistant instructor dresses the rear rank, and the instructor commands **FRONT**.

217.— When the instructor wishes to form the platoon, he commands:

1. *To the right* (or *to the left*)—**CLOSE FILES**.
2. **MARCH**.

At the last part of the first command, which is **CLOSE FILES**, the men all face to the right (or left), except the file on which they close.

At the command **MARCH**, they step off together, and each one fronts in succession by a right face (or left face), when he has closed up to the man who precedes him.

After the ranks are formed, the instructor closes and dresses them.

---

## ARTICLE THIRD.

### **March of the platoon in line.**

218.— The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. **MARCH.**

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 498](#), the men stepping off together at the command **MARCH**.

The men regulate the step by that of the assistant instructor, who marches in front of the platoon; if they lose it, the instructor commands: **STEP**.

219.— While marching in line, the men are practised to mark time, change step, pass from quick to common time, and from common to quick time.

The instructor conforms to what is laid down in [No. 494](#) and the succeeding Articles, to open and close the ranks, to teach the men to open the files when too close, and to close when too open, and to align themselves when they are in advance or in rear.

220.— To halt the platoon, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. **HALT.**
3. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*
4. **FRONT.**

### **Counter-march.**

221.— The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

1. *Counter-march by the right flank.*
2. *Platoon right.*
3. FACE.
4. *By file right.*
5. MARCH.

At the first command, the file-closer moves 3 paces in rear of the left file, and a little to his left, turning his back to him.

At the third command, the men face to the right; the instructor moves opposite to the first file, and directs him to make a half face to the right.

At the command MARCH, the men step off together; the first file turns immediately to the right, and guided by the instructor, passes in rear of the rear rank. The other men turn in succession on the same ground where the first file turned.

When the head of the column arrives opposite to the guide who is placed on the new alignment, the instructor commands:

1. HALT.
2. *Front*—FACE.
3. *Right*—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command FRONT, the assistant instructor, and the file-closer, resume their places in line.

222.— The counter-march is executed by the left, after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands:

1. *Counter-march by the left flank;* 2. *Platoon left;* 3.

FACE; 4. *By file left*; 5. MARCH; and, 1. HALT; 2. *Front*—FACE; 3. *Left*—DRESS; 4. FRONT.

### Wheelings.

223.— The platoon is exercised at the wheelings, first by rank, and afterwards with the two ranks united, according to the principles laid down in [No. 511](#), and the succeeding Articles.

In wheeling on a fixed pivot, the pivot man turns on his own ground, marking time.

In wheeling on a moveable pivot, he describes an arc of a circle, *taking steps of six inches*.

The man on the marching flank lengthens the step as much as possible when turning.

The other men take steps proportioned to the place which they occupy in the rank, that is, shorter as they are nearer to the pivot. At the command, FORWARD, the men all march straight forward with the step which they were taking before the wheel commenced.

224.— In all the wheelings, the men are careful not to turn the head too much, to keep the shoulders square in the ranks, to touch towards the pivot without separating the elbow from the body, and to rectify mistakes without precipitation.

### Individual oblique march.

225.— The platoon marching in line, the instructor commands:

1. *Right (or left) oblique*.
2. MARCH.



At the command **MARCH**, each man makes a quarter face to the right or left, and marches in the new direction. As the men no longer touch elbows, they must regulate the march in such a manner that the head of the man next to them towards the guide, may hide the heads of the rest of the rank; the alignment is preserved by taking equal steps, and by obliquing in the same degree. The rear rank men preserve their distance and follow the man next to their proper file-Leader. To resume the primitive direction, what is prescribed, **No. 205**, is conformed to.

**The platoon being in line, to break by fours to the right, and to move off after the wheel.**

226.— The instructor breaks the platoon to the right by fours, as prescribed, **No. 198**, and when the wheel is nearly finished, he commands:

1. **FORWARD.**
2. *Guide left.*

At the first command, which is forward, the men march to the front, conforming to the principles of the direct march by fours.

227.— The movement is executed by the left, after the same principles, and by inverse means.

**To form the platoon.**

228.— The platoon marching in column of fours, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *Form platoon.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed as prescribed for front into line, [No. 206](#), except that the four first files continue to march straight forward, shortening the step, until the last files arrive on a line with them; the men then all take the step at which they were marching in the first place, and conform to the principles of the direct march.

The instructor does not command the guide until the platoon is formed.

When the platoon is formed from a column marching left in front, the guide is given to the left.

**The platoon marching in line, to break by fours to the right, and to form in line again without halting.**

229.— The instructor commands:

1. *By fours right wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

And to form into line again:

1. *By fours left wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

These movements are executed as prescribed, [No. 198](#). If the instructor wishes to halt, instead of marching after the wheel, he commands:

3. HALT.
4. *Right*-DRESS.
5. FRONT.

230.— The movement is executed by the left, after the same principles and by inverse means.

**The platoon marching by fours, to form column by the flank without halting.**

231.— The instructor commands:

1. *Fours to the right—and by file left.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, each man faces to the right, and the first file of each rank of fours turns immediately to the left, and places itself in file behind the men of the rank of fours which precedes it. They are then in column of twos.

In this movement the four first files should lengthen the step, so as not to retard the other ranks of fours which enter the column behind them.

232.— When the column is left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

**The platoon marching by the flank, to face it to the front without halting.**

233.— The column being right in Front, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon to the left.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH; each man faces to the left, and at the command FORWARD, marches straight to the front.

If the instructor wishes to halt after the movement, instead of marching to the front, he commands:

3. HALT.
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

234.— When the column is left in front, the movement is made by the same principles and by inverse means.

235.— The platoon marching in line, to form column by the flank without halting, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon to the right.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, each man faces to the right and moves off in the new direction.

236.— To form column by the flank, with the left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

**The platoon being in line, to face it to the rear.**

237.— The instructor commands:

**PLATOON ABOUT-FACE.**

When the platoon has faced about, if the instructor wishes to march, after having aligned it he commands:

1. *Platoon forward.*
2. *Guide right.*
3. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 218](#). To face the platoon to the proper front, the instructor commands:

**PLATOON ABOUT-FACE.**

After the platoon has faced about, the instructor commands, *right dress*.

**Manual of arms.**

238.— The platoon is exercised at the manual of arms with open and with closed ranks, and the two ranks are practised in firing both as front and as rear rank, by facing to the rear as in the preceding Article.

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

### **Rallying and skirmishers.**

239.— The platoon is exercised in line after the principles laid down in the *school of the platoon, mounted*, [No. 571](#), and the succeeding paragraphs.

The movements are made at a moderate pace, with *arms at will*.

At the commencement, the platoon is not marched to the front after having rallied; but the instructor sees that each man has taken his proper place and rank. When the men are accustomed to these movements, the platoon is marched to the front as soon as a portion of it has rallied; the other men rally while marching.

The instructor takes pains to teach the men the rallying signals, and the movements which they are to execute. They are practised, most especially, to rally with order at the point where the instructor is.

## SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON, DISMOUNTED.

240.— The squadron is always exercised at the quick step, which, in this school, is the habitual step without being commanded; if it is wished to march at the common step, the indication of it should precede the command MARCH.

The principles of the breaking and formation being the same as when mounted, that which is prescribed for the *school of the squadron, mounted* is conformed to, to exercise the squadron on foot, with the following modifications.

241.— The squadron being formed in two ranks, close order, the men at carry arms, the officers and non-commissioned officers posted as prescribed in [Title 1st, Art. 1st](#), the Captain commanding orders them to count by fours.

For the alignments, what is laid down in the *school of the squadron, mounted*, is conformed to; and to open and close ranks, what is prescribed, [No. 177](#).

242.— The squadron is exercised at the manual of arms, first with open, then with closed ranks; firing by platoon, by division, and by squadron, is also practised, both to the front and rear.

The platoon firing is executed alternately, by the first and second platoon of each division; the first platoon fires first; the chief of the second does not give the command until he sees one or two carbines carried in the first; the chief of the first platoon, in his turn, observes the same rule towards the second, and they continue to fire thus alternately.

The same rule is observed in firing by division; and by the even and uneven squadrons, when several squadrons are united for firing by squadron.

243.— To fire by platoon, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Fire by platoon.*
2. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the first command, the chiefs of platoons move to the places pointed out in [No. 211](#), the officers of the first division passing by the right flank, and those of the second by the left flank.

At the second command, the uneven platoons commence firing, their chiefs giving the commands prescribed in [No. 211](#), and observing to prefix always to that of platoon, the number *first* or *third*, as the case may be.

The chiefs of the even platoons give the same commands in their turn, prefixing the number *second* or *fourth*.

The chiefs of the uneven platoons, for the first fire only, command FIRE, one after the other. Thus the chief of the third platoon does not command AIM and FIRE, until he has heard the fire of the first platoon.

244.— To fire by divisions, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Fire by divisions.*
2. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the second command, the uneven divisions commence to fire; each Lieutenant commanding prefixes to the command *division* the number *first* or *second*, and conforms for the rest to what is prescribed, [No. 242](#).



245.— To fire by squadrons, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Fire by squadron.*
2. *Squadron.*
3. READY.
4. AIM.
5. FIRE.
6. LOAD.

When there are several squadrons, each Captain prefixes the number of his squadron to the second command, and conforms to what is prescribed above for the order of firing by the even and uneven squadrons.

246.— The Captain commanding observes that the body, the feet, and the carbine, are always in their proper positions; that the commands are executed with life, and that the men do not slight their motions.

247.— The squadron being in line, to break by fours, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours right wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon, and the particular guide of the right, place themselves in front of the four right files.

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed as prescribed, [No. 198](#).

If, instead of halting, the Captain wishes to move off after the wheel, he conforms to what is laid down [No. 226](#).

The officers and Sergeants, except the chief of the first platoon, and the particular guide of the right, post themselves on the flank of the column.

248.— The squadron being in column of fours, the men are exercised to step off and to halt together, to change from the *quick step* to the *common step*, and from the *common step* to the *quick step*.

249.— The squadron being in column of fours, with the right in front, either halted or marching, to form it into line on its left flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours left wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right—*DRESS.
5. FRONT.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 200](#).

250.— The squadron being in column of fours, with the left in front, to form it into line on its right flank, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By fours right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—*DRESS; 5. FRONT.

251.— In the alignment, the particular guides touch with their elbows the breasts of the Sergeants who are placed on the line.

Before the squadron moves off, the command is given to *support arms*, unless there should be a contrary order.

At the command HALT, the men carry arms without a command.

After the command **FRONT**, the command is given to support arms.

252.— The squadron marching in column of fours, right front, to form platoons, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form platoons.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chiefs of platoons command at the same time: *Form platoon.*

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by these same officers, all the platoons are formed as prescribed, [No. 228](#).

The Captain does not announce the guide until all the platoons are formed.

253.— When the platoons are formed from the squadron marching by fours with the left in front, the guide is commanded right.

When the squadron is marching in column with distance, each platoon regulates the step by that of its chief, and each chief of platoon by that of the chief of platoon who precedes him.

254.— The squadron being in column with distance, with the right in front, either at a halt or marching, to break the platoon by fours, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours right wheel—and in each platoon—head of column to the left.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. **FORWARD.**
4. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed as it is prescribed, [No. 198](#), each chief of platoon commanding at the moment when the wheel is nearly finished: FORWARD; and then, 1. *Left-TURN*; 2. FORWARD.

The Captain does not command the guide until the head of each platoon is on the new direction.

255.— The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

256.— The squadron being in column of fours, right in front, either at a halt or marching, to form it into column by the flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Fours to the right—and by file left.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as it is prescribed, [No. 231](#).

257.— The squadron being in column of fours, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

258.— The movement of *about face* is substituted for the *right about wheel by fours* of the *school of the squadron, mounted* [[No. 670](#)].

259.— The counter-march is executed as it is prescribed, [Nos. 221, 688, and 689](#).

260.— The oblique march by troop is executed after the same principles as when mounted, except that each chief of

platoon marching one pace in front of the centre of his platoon, keeps himself two paces in rear of the rear rank of the platoon which precedes him.

261.— The squadron marching in line, to pass a defile by the head of each platoon, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours right wheel—and in each platoon—head of column to the left.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chiefs of platoons, the movement is executed in each platoon as prescribed, [No. 254](#); the chiefs of platoons march by the side of the head of their column to direct it, and to preserve their intervals from the right.

The platoons being broken by twos, or by fours, with the right in front, to form them again, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form platoons.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the first command, the chiefs of platoons command: *Form platoon.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, each platoon forms as prescribed, [No. 228](#).

262.— The squadron is exercised in rallying and in the service of skirmishers, after the principles prescribed, [No. 239](#), and those of the *school of the squadron, mounted* [[No. 735](#), and the succeeding paragraphs].

---

# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

SECOND PART.

---





# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## TITLE THIRD.

### INSTRUCTION ON HORSEBACK.

---

#### SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, MOUNTED.

263.— The object of this School is to make troopers skilful in the management of their horses and arms, in all directions and at all gaits.

To accomplish this, instructors must attend particularly, from the commencement, to placing the recruits well on horseback, and to giving them the means of conducting their horses by a gradual and constant application of the principles.

The method prescribed to instructors in the *school of the trooper, dismounted*, [No. 1](#), for giving the lesson, is applicable to the *school of the trooper, mounted*.

The instruction is always commenced at a *walk*, in order to give the troopers the facility of seating themselves well, and of calming their horses, as they are generally more restive on leaving the stables. The instruction is also terminated at a *walk*.

At the commencement it is necessary to make the men march repeatedly on the same track, *at a walk* and *at a*

*trot*; when the troopers have acquired some solidity, the movements and the changes of direction are varied.

The most quiet and best instructed horses are chosen for the first lesson.

264.— When the instructor wishes to rest the men, he commands: **REST**. At this command the trooper is no longer required to remain immoveable. It is proper to give this command frequently, particularly in the commencement, and to profit by it sometimes to interrogate the trooper on the instruction he has received.

When the instructor wishes to resume the drill, he commands: **ATTENTION**.

At this command the trooper resumes his immoveable position, and fixes his attention.

## FIRST LESSON.

### FIRST PART.

265.— This first part of the lesson is given as far as practicable to each man separately, in order to confine more effectually the attention. In no case ought it to be given by the same instructor to more than four men at the same time; they are then placed on the same line three paces apart.

The trooper is in stable-jacket, forage cap, and boots without spurs.

The horse is saddled and in the snaffle. (*The snaffle-rein is lengthened by means of a strap, a substitute for the whip of the curb-rein.*)

NOTE—To avoid repetition, this lesson contains the complete detail to mount, to dismount, and to file off, as for troopers armed and formed in two ranks. The instructor will omit what is useless to the lesson he is giving, or to the arm in which he is instructing. The details applicable to the lessons which follow, are printed in italics.

### **To conduct his horse to the ground.**

266.— The trooper conducts his horse to the ground, the reins passed over the neck, and their extremity engaged in the left cloak-strap. He holds the reins with the right hand at six inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails under, the hand elevated and firm to prevent the horse from jumping.

*When the trooper is under arms, he has the sabre hooked up* [Pl. 5.]

#### **DRAGOONS, CHASSEURS, AND HUSSARS.**

*The carbine is passed over the right shoulder, the left hand hanging by the side.*

#### **LANCERS.**

*The lance in the left hand which holds it at 2 feet from the butt, the wrist turned in, the thumb in front on the staff, the first finger along the side, the others in rear, the butt of the lance 2 inches from the ground.*

*Having arrived on the ground, the sabre is unhooked. (Lancer), the lance rests on the ground by the side of the left foot.*

**Position of the trooper before mounting.**

267.— (Pl. 50) The trooper places himself on the left side of the horse, abreast of the nether jaw; he holds the reins with the right hand at 6 inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails downward.

The trooper has his heels upon the same line and as near together as his conformation will permit, the feet at little less than a right angle, and equally turned out; the knee straight without being stiff, the body perpendicular upon the haunches, and slightly inclined forward; the left hand hanging at the side, the palm a little turned out, the little finger along the seam of the pantaloons; the head erect without being constrained, the chin drawn in to the neck without covering it, the eyes fixed to the front.

*When the trooper is under arms, he has the left hand over the sabre.*

*The lancer holds the lance with the left hand, at the height of the neck, the elbow and fore-arm closed upon the staff which is held perpendicularly, the butt on the same line and at 1 inch from the point of the left foot*

**To mount.**

268.— The instructor commands:

**PREPARE TO MOUNT.**

*1 time, 2 motions.*

(Pl. 52, fig. A.) 1. *At the command PREPARE TO MOUNT, Nos. 1 and 3 of each rank move 6 [4] paces to the front, stepping off with the left foot, keeping opposite their intervals, and regulating by the right.*

(Lancer), *raise the lance until the butt is two inches from the ground.* Place the right foot 3 inches in rear of the left; make a face and a half to the right on both heels, the right foot remaining in front; let go the right rein; slip the right hand along the left rein; take two steps stepping off with the right foot, and face to the left upon the point of the left foot, the right side towards the flank of the horse; carry back the right heel 3 inches in rear of the left; the right hand seizing the end of the reins is placed upon the cantle of the saddle.

(Lancer), *bring the lance to the ground, at the side of the left foot.*

2. Place a third of the left foot in the stirrup, supporting it against the fore-arm of the horse; rest upon the point of the right foot, and seize with the left hand over the reins a lock of the mane as far forward as possible, the extremity of the lock passing out of the hand on the side of the little finger.

## MOUNT.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the command **MOUNT**, spring from the right foot holding firmly to the mane, at the same time pressing upon the cantle to prevent the saddle from turning; the body erect.

2. Pass the right leg stretched over the croup of the horse, without touching him; sit lightly in the saddle, placing at the same time the right hand, without quitting the reins, upon the right holster, the palm of the hand resting upon it, the fingers on the outside of it, and take one rein of the snaffle in each hand.

*(If the trooper is using the curb-bridle, he will pass the reins of it in the left hand and adjust them).*

Place the right foot in the stirrup.

DRAGOONS, CHASSEURS,  
AND HUSSARS.

*Let fall the carbine by the side.*

LANCERS.

*Seize the lance with the right hand under the left, which lets go of it without quitting the reins; elevate it, passing it over the neck of the horse between the reins and the body. Rest at this point an instant; then lower and place it in the boot of the stirrup; the right hand then grasps it at the height of the neck.*

Form—RANKS.

*At the last part of the command, which is RANKS, Nos. 1 and 3 raise the wrists (or the bridle hand), and hold the legs close to the body of the horse to keep him quiet; Nos. 2 and 4 enter the intervals without jostling and without precipitation.*

*The rear rank being formed, closes to the distance of 2 feet from the front. (Lancer), rest the lance.*

269.— Before causing the command MOUNT to be executed, the instructor explains in detail the two times of it, and allows but a short interval between the first and second part of this command, because, were the trooper to remain a

long time on the stirrup, the horses would become restive and move out of their proper places.

The instructor will explain to the troopers, that in carrying the right hand to the holster before placing themselves in the saddle, they will be able to do so lightly, and will not run the risk of injuring themselves in bestriding their horses.

The instructor causes the stirrups to be crossed upon the neck, the left stirrup over the right.

### **Position of the trooper, mounted.**

270.— (Pl. 51.) The buttocks bearing equally upon the saddle, and as far forward as possible;

The thighs turned upon their flat side without effort, embracing equally the horse, and stretched only by their own weight and that of the legs;

A supple bend of the knees;

The legs free and falling naturally;

The point of the feet falling in like manner;

The loins supported without stiffness;

The upper part of the body at ease, free and erect;

The shoulders equally thrown back;

The arms free, the elbows falling naturally;

The head erect, at ease, and nut drawn in between the shoulders;

One rein of the snaffle in each hand, the fingers closed, the thumb along each rein, the wrists as high as the elbow, at 6 inches from each other, the fingers turned towards each other, the upper extremity of the reins leaving the hand on the side of the thumb.

*The buttocks bearing equally upon the saddle:* Serving as a base to the position of the trooper, they ought to be equally charged with all the weight of the body to assure its steadiness.

*And as far forward as possible:* In order that the trooper may have greater facility in embracing his horse, and conforming to all his movements.

*The thighs turned upon their flat side without effort, embracing equally the horse:* The more the thighs adhere to the horse, the greater is the solidity of the trooper. If they did not embrace the horse equally, the seat of the trooper would be unfixed.

*And stretched only by their own weight and that of the legs:* If they did not fall naturally, they could be extended, only by an effort, which would cause constraint.

*A supple bend of the knees:* To give a facility in carrying the legs more or less to the rear, without deranging the position of the thighs.

The legs free, and falling naturally, the point of the feet falling in like manner: Stiffness in the legs would impair the good effects of their action.

*The loins supported without stiffness:* The loins should be sustained, to give the trooper grace and solidity. Stiffness would prevent his accommodating himself to all the motions of the horse.

*The upper part of the body at ease, free and erect:* The body can preserve its erectness only by suppleness and ease.

*The shoulders equally thrown back:* Were the shoulders thrown forward, the back would be curved and the breast



contracted; were they thrown too much to the rear, the loins would be hollowed and the action of the arms constrained.

*The arms free:* In order not to employ more force than is absolutely necessary; constrained movements produce uncertain effects.

*The elbows falling naturally:* That they may contribute to the steadiness of the seat, and communicate stiffness neither to the body nor fore-arms.

*The head erect:* If the head were not erect, the body would lean towards the side it inclined to.

*At ease, and not drawn in between the shoulders:* To be able to turn it with ease, and that its movements may be independent of those of the body.

### **Eyes right, eyes left.**

271.— As prescribed, Nos. 7, 8, and 9.

### **To lengthen the reins of the snaffle.**

272.— The instructor commands:

*Lengthen left (or right)—REIN.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is REIN, bring the wrists towards each other without turning them in, seize the left rein with the thumb and first finger of the right hand, at one inch from the left thumb.

2. Half open the left hand, and allow the rein to slip until the thumbs touch; reclose the left hand, and replace the wrists.

**To shorten the reins of the snaffle.**

273.— The instructor commands:

*Shorten left (or right)—REIN.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is REIN, bring the wrists towards each other without turning them in, seize the left rein with the thumb and first finger of the right hand, so that the thumbs touch.

2. Half open the left hand, elevate the right hand, and suffer the rein to slip until the thumbs are 1 inch apart; reclose the left hand, and replace the wrists.

The right rein is lengthened and shortened on the same principles, but by inverse means.

**To cross the reins in the left hand.**

274.— The instructor commands:

*Cross reins—IN LEFT HAND.*

*1 time.*

At the last part of the command, which is LEFT HAND, turn in the left wrist, the nails downward, at the same time bring the wrist opposite to the middle of the body, half open the left hand, place in it the part of the rein that was in the right; reclose the left hand, and let the right fall to the side.

**To take the reins in both hands.**

275.— The instructor commands:

*Separate—REINS.*

*1 time.*

At the last part of the command, which is **REINS**, half open the left hand, seize with the right hand, the nails downward, the part of the right rein which is in the left hand, and replace the wrists 6 inches apart.

**To cross the reins in the right hand.**

276.— The instructor commands:

*Cross reins*—IN RIGHT HAND.

1 *time*.

As prescribed, **No. 274**, but by inverse means. The reins are separated as prescribed, **No. 275**, but by inverse means.

To employ at these movements as little time as possible, and to render them more easy to be understood, the instructor executes them himself at the same time that he explains them.

**The use of the reins.**

277.— The reins serve to prepare the horse for the movements he is required to execute, to direct him, and to stop him. Their action should be progressive, and in accordance with that of the legs.

When the trooper makes use of the reins, the arms should act with suppleness, and their movements ought to extend from the wrist to the shoulder.

**The use of the legs.**

278.— The legs serve to urge the horse forward, to support him, and to aid him in turning to the right and to the left. Whenever the trooper wishes his horse to move forward, he should close the legs by degrees behind the girths, causing their effect to correspond with the sensibility of the

horse, taking care neither to open nor elevate the knees, of which the bend should be always pliant. The trooper relaxes the legs by degrees, as he closed them.

### **The effect of the reins and legs combined.**

279.— In elevating a little the wrists, and closing the legs, the trooper "gathers his horse;" in elevating again the wrists, he slackens the pace; in repeating this movement of the wrists, he stops the horse, or "reins back." The trooper ought to elevate the wrists without curving them, at the same time drawing them slightly towards the body.

In opening the right rein and closing the right leg, the trooper turns his horse to the right. To open the right rein, the right wrist is carried, without turning it, more or less to the right, according to the sensibility of the horse.

In opening the left rein, and closing the left leg, the trooper turns his horse to the left. To open the left rein, the left wrist is carried, without turning it, more or less to the left, according to the sensibility of the horse.

By lowering slightly the wrists the horse is at liberty to move forward; the closing the legs determines the movement.

### **To march.**

280.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad forward.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 52, fig. B.) At the command *squad forward*, elevate slightly the wrists, and close the legs, in order to "gather the horse."

At the command **MARCH**, lower slightly the wrists, and close the legs more or less, according to the sensibility of the horse. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

281.— If the trooper did not gather his horse at the preparatory command, the execution of the second command would be too abrupt or too slow.

If the trooper, at the command of execution, did not commence by lowering the wrists, the horse would not have the liberty necessary to enable him to move forward.

If the trooper did not close equally the legs, the horse would not move directly to the front; and if he did not close them progressively, the horse would not obey without irregularity.

### **To halt.**

282.— After some steps, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad.*
2. **HALT.**

At the command *squad*, the trooper gathers his horse, without slackening his pace.

At the command **HALT**, the trooper braces himself in the saddle; elevate the wrists at the same time by degrees, and close the legs in order to prevent the horse from receding. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

When the horse does not obey, cause him to feel successively the effect of each rein, according to his sensibility.

283.— If the trooper pressed the horse with the thighs or legs, it would be difficult for him to stop.

If he did not use the two reins equally, and hold the legs equally near, the horse would stop in a diagonal position.

If the trooper used the reins with too much force and precipitation, the horse would stop suddenly and fall back.

### **To turn to the right, and to the left.**

284.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right (or to the left).*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

(Pl. 52, *fig. C.*) At the command *squad to the right*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, open the right rein, and close progressively the right leg. In order not to turn the horse too short, perform the movement upon a quarter of a circle of 3 paces. The movement being almost completed, diminish the effect of the rein and the right leg, supporting the horse at the same time with the left rein and leg to terminate the movement.

At the command HALT, elevate slightly the wrists and hold the legs near, in order to keep the horse straight in the new direction; replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

285.— If the trooper did not describe the arc of the prescribed circle, the movement would be too much shortened.

If the trooper, towards the end of the movement, did not diminish the effect of the right rein and the right leg, by means of the left rein and left leg, the horse would perform more than a turn to the right.

**To turn-about to the right, and to the left.**

286.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right-about* (or *to the left-about*).
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

(Pl. 52, *fig. D*.) This movement is executed on the principles prescribed for the *turn to the right or to the left*, with this difference, that the horse should pass over a semi-circle of 6 paces, and face to the rear.

287.— In order to make the trooper comprehend better the movements detailed, Nos. 284 and 286, the instructor places himself at the shoulder of the horse, and describes each movement on foot, in marking off the arc of the prescribed circle.

**To make a quarter-turn to the right and to the left.**

288.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad right oblique* (or *left oblique*).
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

(Pl. 52, *fig. E*.) At the command *squad right oblique*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, open a little the right rein, and close slightly the right leg, in order to make the horse execute a *quarter turn* to the right; cause the horse to feel, almost at the same time, the effect of the rein and the left leg, to terminate the movement without increasing the degree of obliquity.

At the command **HALT**, elevate slightly the wrists and close the legs, to keep the direction of the *quarter-turn to the right*; replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.'

The instructor commands **HALT**, almost immediately after the command **MARCH**; he does not require great exactness in this movement, the object of which is, to give the trooper the first idea of the oblique direction.

289.— The movements detailed, **Nos. 284, 286, and 288**, after having been executed to the right, are executed to the left, according to the same principles, but by inverse means.

**To rein-back, and to cease reining-back.**

290.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad—Backwards.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Squad.*
4. **HALT.**

At the command *squad-backwards*, gather the horse.

At the command **MARCH**, keep a firm seat, elevate the wrists, and close the legs. As soon as the horse obeys, lower and elevate successively the wrists, which is called *yielding and checking*. If the horse throws the haunches to the right, close the right leg; if he throws them to the left, close the left leg. If these means are not sufficient to replace the horse in his proper position, open the rein on the side towards which the horse throws his haunches causing him to feel, at the same time, slightly, the effect of the opposite rein.

At the command *squad*, the trooper prepares to stop.



At the command **HALT**, lower the wrists and close the legs. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

291.— If the trooper did not keep a firm seat, he would incline forward, from the effect of the movement of the horse.

If, instead of lowering and elevating the wrists alternately, the trooper were to prolong the effect of the hands, the horse would step back suddenly, and would cross or throw himself upon his haunches.

### **To dismount.**

292.— The instructor causes the stirrups to be let down and the feet put in them. He then commands:

### **PREPARE TO DISMOUNT.**

*1 time, 2 motions.*

(Pl. 52. *fig. F.*) 1. At the command **PREPARE TO DISMOUNT**, Nos. 1 and 3 of the front rank move forward 6 paces, Nos. 2 and 4 of the rear rank rein-back 4 paces, and keep themselves opposite their intervals. The troopers of each rank dress by the right. Pass the right rein of the snaffle into the left hand, the extremity of the reins leaving the hand on the side of the thumb.

#### **DRAGOONS, CHASSEURS, AND HUSSARS.**

*Seize the carbine with the right hand, at the lower band; pass it over the right shoulder diagonally, the muzzle in the air, so*

#### **LANCERS.**

*Carry the lance, draw it from the boot; raise it with the right hand, pass it perpendicularly over the*

*that it cannot fall back.*

*neck of the horse, between the reins and the body, and rest an instant at this point; allow it to slip to the ground, the butt at 1 foot in front of the left foot of the horse, and seize it with the left hand.*

Seize the reins of the snaffle (or of the *curb-bridle*) above and near the left thumb with the right hand, the nails downward, and place this hand upon the right holster. Disengage the right foot from the stirrup, and seize with the left hand a lock of the mane over the reins. (Lancer), *without letting go the lance.*

### DISMOUNT.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the command **DISMOUNT**, rise upon the left stirrup; pass the right leg extended over the croup of the horse, without touching him, and bring the right thigh near to the left, the body well sustained; place at the same time the right hand upon the cantle of the saddle, slipping it along the reins without letting them go; descend lightly to the ground, the body erect, the heels upon the same line. Let go the mane with the left hand; engage the extremity of the reins in the left cloak-strap with the right hand, which then seizes the left rein. (Lancer), *hold always the lance at the height of the neck.*

2. Make a face and 2 steps to the left stepping off with the left foot; slip the right hand along the left rein, seize with the same hand both reins at 6 inches from the mouth

of the horse, the nails downward, and take the *position of the trooper before mounting* [No. 267].

For the detail and execution of the command DISMOUNT, the instructor conforms to what is prescribed in the 1st paragraph of No. 269.

### *Form*—RANKS.

*At the last part of the command, which is RANKS, Nos. 1 and 3 of each rank elevate slightly the right hand to keep the horse quiet; Nos. 2 and 4 return to their intervals gently. (Lancer), in re-entering the intervals, raise the lance 2 inches from the ground, and replace it as prescribed, No. 267.*

### **To file off.**

293.— The instructor commands:

1. *By the right* (or *by the left*)—FILE OFF.
2. MARCH.

*At the last part of the first command, which is FILE OFF, hook up the sabre; use both hands to unhook the curb and unbuckle the nose-band; retake the reins with the right hand, and replace the left hand at the side.*

*(Lancer), let go the lance with the left hand, allowing it to fall in the hollow of the shoulder; hook up the sabre; use both hands to unhook the curb and unbuckle the nose-band; retake the reins in the right hand and the lance in the left, as prescribed, No. 266.*

At the command MARCH, the trooper of the right, in each rank, steps off with the left foot, leading his horse to the front; he takes 4 steps, turns to the right, and marches

in the new direction, holding at the same time the hand high and firm to prevent the horse from jumping. Each trooper in each rank, executes successively the same movement when the one who precedes him has moved 4 paces to the front.

The troopers conform to the same principles to file off by the left.

## SECOND PART.

294.— The instructor may unite for this part of the lesson 8 troopers, but not more; they are placed on the same line 3 paces apart. The instructor requires the stirrups to be crossed over the neck of the horse, after the trooper has mounted.

Two Corporals, or instructed troopers, are designated to be conductors; they are placed on the right and on the left of the troopers. They use their stirrups.

The instruction is divided into several stages, commencing alternately by the right and by the left.

### **To march to the right hand; to march to the left hand.**

295.— The instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right (or to the left).*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

(Pl. 53, *fig. A.*) At the first and second commands, the troopers conform to what is prescribed in order to execute a turn to the right from a halt, No. 284.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, the troopers, in lowering the wrists and closing the legs, march straight forward, and follow the conductor.

At the extremity of the riding-house, the conductor turns to the right, then the troopers march to the right hand, having between them the distance of 4 feet from head to croup.

296.— The trooper *marches to the right hand*, when he has the right side towards the interior of the riding-house. He *marches to the left hand*, when it is the left side.

297.— The instructor follows the trooper, keeping on the inside of the track.

He observes that their seat is not deranged, and warns them to conform with suppleness to all the motion, of the horse.

Passing from one trooper to another, he occupies himself successively with all the details of the position of each, so as to instruct without confusing them.

### **To turn to the right, and to the left, in marching.**

298.— The troopers follow the conductor, and make, on arriving at the angles of the riding-house, a *turn to the right* (or *to the left*), in marching. The instructor directs the trooper to advance the outer haunch and shoulder, without inclining inward, in order to conform to the movement of the horse.

### **To halt, and to step off.**

299.— The troopers marching in column on one of the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad.*
2. HALT.

The troopers stop as prescribed, [No. 282](#).

300.— To re-commence the march, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad forward.*
2. MARCH.

The troopers move forward as prescribed, [No. 280](#). The instructor causes the squad frequently to stop and to move off, to habituate the troopers in conducting their horses; he observes that they do not incline the body too much forward at the moment of stopping, and that they do not lean back at the moment of starting. When the troopers have stopped, he rectifies their position.

**To pass from the walk to the trot, and from  
the trot to the walk.**

301.— The troopers becoming habituated to the movement of the horse, the instructor causes them to pass *to the trot*. When they are in column upon one of the long sides commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *trot*, gather the horse, without increasing his gait.

At the command MARCH, lower a little the wrists, and close the legs more or less, according to the sensibility of the horse. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

302.— The instructor employs this gait at first cautiously, and at a moderate trot, that the men may not lose their position.

He makes them understand that it is in remaining well seated, and in relaxing, measurably, all the parts of the body, especially the thighs and legs, that they can acquire the necessary ease and solidity. He observes also that they do not bear too much upon the reins in this gait.

When he perceives that their position is deranged, he causes them to resume the walk, and even to stop.

303.— To pass from the *trot* to the *walk*, the instructor commands:

1. *Walk.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *walk*, gather the horse without affecting his gait.

At the command MARCH, elevate the wrists by degrees, and hold the legs near, in order to prevent the horse from stopping. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

### Changes of hand.

304.— When the troopers have marched some time to *the right hand* (or to *the left hand*), to make them change hands, in the breadth of the riding-house, without stopping, the instructor commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*)—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

(Pl. 53, *fig. B.*) At the last part of the first command, which is **TURN**, the conductor turns to the right.

At the last command, which is **FORWARD**, he moves straight forward and crosses the riding-house in its breadth, followed by the other troopers.

The conductor being at two paces from the opposite track, the instructor commands:

1. *Left (or right)*—**TURN**.
2. **FORWARD**.

At the last part of the first command, which is **TURN**, the conductor turns to the left; and at the last command, which is **FORWARD**, he follows the track.

All the other troopers turn successively on the same ground.

The instructor causes these changes of hand to be executed *at a walk*, and *at a trot*.

**To cross the reins alternately in the two hands, and to separate them in marching.**

305.— The instructor causes the reins to be crossed and separated in marching, as prescribed, **Nos. 274, 275, and 276.**

The trooper, whether to cross or separate the reins, ought to avoid acting abruptly; he should keep the legs near, to keep from slackening the gait.

The reins being crossed, the trooper, in order to turn to the right, carries the hand forward and to the right; to turn to the left, he carries the hand forward and to the left, the nails always downward.



**To turn to the right and to the left by trooper, in marching.**

306.— The troopers marching in column, and having arrived about the middle of one of the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH
3. FORWARD.

(Pl. 54, *fig. A.*) At the command *squad to the right*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn to the right* in marching.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, each trooper moves straight to the front.

The troopers being at two paces from the opposite track, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn to the right*, following the same principles; and at the last command, which is FORWARD, all return to the track.

The same movements are repeated to resume the order in which the troopers were originally.

**To turn-about to the right and to the left by trooper, in marching on the same line.**

307.— The troopers having made a turn to the right, as has just been explained, and having arrived near the opposite track, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right-about* (or *to the left-about*).
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

(Pl. 54, *fig. B.*) At the command *squad to the right-about*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn-about to the right* in marching, following the principles prescribed, No. 286.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, each trooper moves directly to the front.

The instructor gives the command MARCH, at the moment the troopers are within 2 paces of the track; the troopers are then reformed in column upon the opposite track, by the movement of *squad to the right* (or *to the left*).

**To turn-about to the right and to the left by trooper, in marching in column.**

308.— The troopers marching in column, and the conductor having arrived near one of the long sides of the riding-house, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right-about* (or *to the left-about*).
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

(Pl. 54, fig. C.) At the command *squad to the right-about*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn-about to the right* in marching.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, each trooper moves forward.

On arriving at the opposite short side, the conductor turns to the left without command; the squad returns to the order in which it was originally, in executing the inverse movement.

309.— The object of the turns *to the right, to the left, to the right-about, and to the left-about*, in this lesson, is to habituate the troopers to turning in all directions their horses; the instructor causes these movements to be executed at a *walk* only: he not only observes the squad generally, but watches and rectifies with the greatest care the means employed by each trooper in turning his horse.

In the instruction *to the right hand*, the turns *to the right*, and *to the right-about*, are executed; and in the work *to the left hand*, those *to the left* and *to the left-about*. When the troopers have become accustomed to these movements, the instructor causes them to be executed in returning to the tracks, by turns *to the right* or *to the left*, without having regard to the change of hand.

310.— To *rest* the squad, the instructor causes the troopers to turn *to the right*, or *to the left*, when they are about the middle of one of the long sides of the riding-house, and gives the command HALT when they are out of the track.

The instruction is re-commenced by a turn *to the right* or *to the left*.

To terminate the drill, the stirrups are let down and the feet placed in them, when the instructor commands the troopers to *dismount* and *file off*.

## SECOND LESSON.

311.— Before the troopers are exercised in separate columns, Corporals, or instructed troopers, to serve as conductors, are placed at the head and rear of each.

When the troopers begin to execute this lesson correctly, the instructor changes their horses each day of the instruction, to give them the habit of managing different horses.

312.— During *the rests*, the instructor exercises the troopers in *vaulting on* and *from their horses*, without commands,

*To leap to the ground*; the trooper, holding the reins of the snaffle as prescribed, No. 292, seizes with the left hand a lock of the mane, the fingers well closed; places the right hand upon the pommel, raises himself upon the wrists, brings the right thigh to the side of the left, remains an instant in this position, and descends lightly to the ground.

*To leap on the horse*; the trooper seizes the mane with the left hand, places the right hand which holds the reins upon the pommel of the saddle, springs lively, raising himself upon the two wrists, remains an instant in this position, and places himself lightly in the saddle.

313.— The instructor sometimes gives the command *to rest, in marching*, in order to calm the horses after a quick pace, and to relieve the troopers who may become fatigued. During the *rest in marching*, the troopers relax themselves

a little; but without changing the pace and without losing their distance. The conductors always regulate the march.

All the movements in this lesson are explained in detail *by the right*; they are executed *by the left* according to the same principles, but by inverse means.

## FIRST PART.

314.— From 12 to 16 troopers are united; they are in stable-jacket, forage cap, and boots with spurs.

The horses are saddled and in the snaffle.

The troopers are placed in two ranks opened, with 6 paces distance, and the horses at 1 foot from each other. Two Corporals place themselves beforehand at this same distance, and serve as the base in the formation of each rank.

The instructor makes the troopers count off by fours, as prescribed, [No. 174](#); he then orders them to mount in two ranks, as prescribed, [No. 268](#), and causes the stirrups to be crossed.

### Of the spur.

315.— The instructor explains to the troopers the use and the effect of the spur.

If the horse does not obey the legs, it is necessary to employ the spur.

The spur is not an aid, it is a means of chastising. It is only necessary to use it occasionally, but always vigorously, and at the moment the horse commits the fault.

In order to use the spurs, it is necessary to keep steady the body, the waist, and the wrists; to cling to the horse with the thighs, and the calves of the legs; turn the point of

the feet a little out; lower a little the wrists; press the spurs close behind the girths, without moving the body, and let them remain there until the horse obeys; replace then the wrists and the legs by degrees.

When the troopers employ the spur, the instructor observes that they do not bear too much upon the reins, which would counteract the effect of the spur. He also observes that the troopers do not use the spur unnecessarily.

316.— To conduct the horse to the riding-house, the instructor commands:

1. *By file to the right* (or *to the left*).
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 55, fig. A.) At the command *by file to the right*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, the trooper on the right of each rank executes a *turn to the right*, and moves forward, the trooper of the rear rank approaching in marching to within 1 foot of the one of the front rank.

This movement is executed by all the other troopers successively.

**To march to the right hand, or to the left hand.**

317.— In entering the riding-house, the instructor marches his squad parallel to the long sides, and when the head of the column arrives towards the middle, he commands:

1. *Right and left*—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

(Pl. 55, *fig. B.*) The conductor of the front rank turns to the left, the one of the rear rank turns to the right; when the conductors have arrived within 2 paces of the track, the instructor commands: 1. *Right*—TURN. 2. FORWARD. The two columns then march to the right hand, and at the same pace.

The troopers preserve the distance of 4 feet from head to croup.

The conductors regulate the pace of their horses so as to arrive at the same time at the opposite angles of the riding-house, the conductor of the rear rank regulating himself on him of the front.

The instructor observes that the position of the troopers becomes more and more regular; that they march at a free and even pace; that they keep their horses straight and look constantly before them in order to maintain themselves in the direction of the conductors; that they preserve their distances, and recover them gradually when lost.

318.— A horse is straight, when his shoulders and haunches are upon the same line.

If in marching to the right the horse carries his shoulders to the right, it is necessary to open a little the left rein, and to hold the right leg near.

If the horse carries his haunches to the right, close a little the right leg and feel lightly the left rein.

If the horse casts himself towards the interior of the riding-house, to replace him on the track, open the outer rein and close the inner leg.

319.— The instructor reminds the troopers of the principles prescribed, No. 293, to turn to the right or to the left,

and directs them to gather their horses a little before arriving at each corner.

The horses should not enter the corners too far, neither should they commence the turn too soon. To pass a corner to the right, a *turn to the right* is executed; to pass a corner to the left, a *turn to the left* is executed in marching; the troopers should act as if there were no walls; and as the movement of each one should be independent of the trooper who has gone before, their hands and legs alone should determine the horse to go to the right or to the left.

**To pass from the walk to the trot, and from the trot to the walk.**

320.— The troopers marching in column upon the long sides, the instructor causes them to commence the trot.

Whenever the change is made from a slow gait to one more rapid, as from the *walk* to the *trot*, it is necessary to commence slowly, and increase it gradually to the degree prescribed.

The troopers marching in column *at the trot* upon the long sides, the instructor causes them to pass *to the walk*.

Whenever the change is made from a lively gait to one more slow, as from the *trot* to the *walk*, it is necessary to commence the last gait as gradually as possible, and to reduce it by little and little to the degree indicated.

The squad passes frequently from the *walk* to the *trot*, and from the *trot* to the *walk*, in order to accustom the troopers to the changes of gait.



### **Change of direction in the breadth of the riding-house.**

321.— The instructor causes the change of direction in the breadth of the riding-house, as prescribed for the changes of hand, **No. 304**, taking care to give the command in sufficient time to prevent the columns from meeting at the end of the change of direction.

(**Pl. 56, fig. A.**) The change of direction ought to be executed so as neither to stop nor check the rear of the column; the troopers, and particularly the conductors, ought to turn without slackening the pace, aiding themselves not only with their hands, but also with their legs.

### **Change of direction in the length of the riding-house.**

322.— (**Pl. 56, fig. B.**) This change of direction is executed on the same principles as that in the breadth of the riding-house, the instructor observing, in order to commence it, to command *right* or *left*, at the instant the conductors arrive at the first angle of the riding-house, and to command **TURN**, when having passed the corner they are at 3 paces from the middle of the short side.

The troopers then cross the riding-house in its length, in a right line, without touching each other, passing to the left, and re-enter upon the track at the commands: 1. *Right* (or *left*)—**TURN**; 2. **FORWARD**.

### **Change of direction diagonally.**

323.— When the conductors have passed the second corner, and have arrived upon the long sides, the instructor

causes to be executed a diagonal change of direction at the commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*)—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

(Pl. 57, *fig. A*.) At the last part of the first command, which is TURN, the conductors make a half-turn to the right.

At the last part of the command, which is FORWARD, they move straight forward, cross the riding-house diagonally, pass each other to the left, and re-enter upon the track at the commands:

1. *Left* (or *right*)—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

All the other troopers execute successively the same movement, in turning upon the same ground on which the conductors have turned.

The instructor gives the command FORWARD, in sufficient time for the conductors to make a half-turn to the right or to the left.

### **Change of direction obliquely by trooper.**

324.— The squad commences a change of direction in the length of the riding-house; and as soon as all the troopers have turned, and are in the same direction, the instructor commands:

1. *Column*.
2. HALT.

(Pl. 57, *fig. B*.) The troopers stop at the same time, keeping their horses straight, and at their distances.

The instructor causes the troopers to make a *quarter-turn to the right* or *to the left* from a halt, as prescribed, No. 288.

This movement being executed, the instructor assures himself of the exactness of the directions and the intervals, and then commands:

1. *Squad forward.*
2. MARCH.

The troopers march at the same gait, each the direction he has taken.

When they arrive at 1 foot from the track, the instructor commands:

#### FORWARD.

At this command, make a *quarter-turn to the left* in advancing, with the hand light and the legs near, in order to follow the track.

The instructor causes these movements to be repeated without halting; for this purpose, after having commenced the change of direction in the length of the riding-house, as soon as the two ranks are in column, he commands:

1. *Squad right (or left) oblique.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

At the command *squad right oblique*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH execute a *quarter-turn to the right*; having taken this direction, keep the legs equally near, and march straight forward at the same gait.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, return upon the track, or return to the original direction.

325.— In all these changes of direction, the instructor governed as to the time of giving his commands, by the conductor who is more advanced; he will then be able to rectify the fault committed by the one who has augmented or diminished his gait.

### **To march in a circle.**

326.— When the conductors have passed over about a third of the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *In circle to the right (or to the left).*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 58, *fig. A.*) At the command in *circle to the right*, the conductors, and successively the troopers, gather their horses.

At the command MARCH, the conductors describe a circle between the two tracks; they are followed by the other troopers who march exactly in the same direction.

327.— Every horse which exercises in the circle ought to be bent towards the line he is to pass over. For this purpose, the trooper keeps him in the direction of this line with the inner rein, supporting him at the same time with the leg on that side. The effect of the inner rein ought to be modified by that of the outer, and the haunches should be kept in by the outer leg.

328.— If the trooper did not feel a little more the inner than the outer rein, the horse would leave the circular line; and if he did not sustain him with the outer rein, the horse would describe a smaller circle.

If the trooper did not close a little more the inner than the outer leg, the haunches of the horse would not pass the same points as the shoulders; and if he did not close slightly the outer leg, the haunches would be thrown out of the circle.

**To change hand on the circle.**

329.— The instructor commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*)—TURN
2. FORWARD.

(Pl. 58, *fig. B.*) At the last part of the first command, which is TURN, the conductors turn to the right.

At the second command, which is FORWARD, they move straight forward, directing themselves, in passing the centre, towards the opposite point of the circumference.

When the conductors are at 2 paces from this point, the instructor commands:

1. *Left* (or *right*)—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

At the last part of the first command, which is TURN, the conductors turn to the left.

At the second command, which is FORWARD, they re-enter upon the circle at the new hand.

All the other troopers follow exactly the direction of the conductors.

The squad is exercised in the circle and at the change of hand *at a trot*, following the same principles.

In the circular march, particularly at a lively gait and upon a small circle, the instructor observes that the troop-

ers preserve the same degree of inclination as their horses, and maintain themselves in the direction without permitting the shoulder or the haunch to be out of place.

When the instructor wishes to resume the exercise upon the right line, he takes care that the conductors are at opposite points of the circumference; and when they arrive on the track of the long sides, he commands:

### FORWARD.

At this command the conductors straighten their horses and re-enter on the tracks, followed by the other troopers.

330.— (Pl. 59, *fig. A.*) To re-unite the troopers in order to conduct them to the quarters, the instructor causes them to close to the distance of 2 feet; he then orders a change of direction in the breadth of the riding-house, at the moment the conductors are opposite to each other.

When the conductors, in the act of meeting each other, arrive towards the middle of the riding-house, the instructor commands: 1. *Left and right*—TURN; 2. FORWARD. The conductor of the front rank turns to the left, and the one of the rear rank to the right, the two columns thus reunite, the troopers of the rear rank approaching to within one pace of those of the front.

The column having arrived in the yard of the quarters, the instructor commands:

1. FRONT.

2. HALT.

(Pl. 59, *fig. B.*) At the command FRONT, the first trooper of each rank turns to the left and moves straight forward.

At the command **HALT**, the trooper of the front rank stops; also the trooper of the rear rank, when he finds at 2 feet from him of the front rank.

All the other troopers execute a *turn to the left* successively, when they are nearly opposite the place they are to occupy in the rank, and halt abreast of this rank.

To terminate the exercise, the instructor gives the command to dismount in two ranks, and to file off, as prescribed, **Nos. 292** and **293**.

## SECOND PART.

### **Length of the stirrups.**

331.— Having commenced the exercise, the instructor assures himself that the stirrups are properly adjusted.

They are of the proper length if, when the trooper raises himself on the stirrups, there is a space of 6 inches between the fork and the saddle.

### **Position of the foot in the stirrup.**

332.— (**Pl. 60.**) The stirrup should support only the weight of the leg; the foot ought to be inserted one-third of its length, the heel lower than the toe.

*The stirrup should support only the weight of the leg:* if the trooper bore too much upon the stirrups, his seat would be deranged as well as the position of the legs, and the justness of their action would be impaired.

*The foot ought to be inserted one-third of its length:* if the trooper did not insert the foot sufficiently far in the stirrup, he would risk losing them, particularly during the

lively gaits. If the foot were inserted too far, the legs would not fall naturally.

*The heel lower than the toe:* that the foot may keep the stirrup without effort and without stiffness; that the play of the joint with the leg may remain free, and that the spur being further removed from the horse, there is less danger of its being improperly employed.

**To turn to the right, or to the left by  
trooper, in marching.**

333.— The instructor causes this movement to be executed as prescribed, [No. 306](#), at the commands: 1. *Squad to the right*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD: observing that the troopers marching in two columns, the preparatory command ought to be given so as to command MARCH at the moment the conductors arrive opposite to the last trooper but one of the other column.

([Pl. 61, fig A.](#)) Immediately after the command FORWARD, the troopers move straight forward, preserving their gait and their direction, so that each one may find before him the interval and the place he is to occupy in the column on the opposite track.

In passing into the intervals, the legs should be kept near, to prevent the horse slackening his gait.

The instructor attaches much less importance to the uniformity of these movements, than to the manner in which each trooper conducts his horse.



**To turn-about to the right, or to the left, the troopers marching on the same line.**

334.— (Pl. 61, *fig. B.*) The instructor causes these movements to be executed as prescribed, No. 307, always requiring more regularity.

**To turn-about to the right, or to the left, the troopers marching in column.**

335.— The instructor causes these movements to be executed as prescribed, No. 308.

In each column, the last trooper, who becomes the head of the column, should pay attention not to slacken the gait in making his movement, in order not to retard the others.

This principle is equally applicable to the troopers who take the head of the column in re-entering upon the tracks.

**To pass successively from the head to the rear of the column.**

336.— To make the troopers masters of their horses, to force them to use both the reins and the legs; also, to accustom the horses to leaving each other, the instructor requires the troopers to pass frequently from the head to the rear of the column; each one, becoming in his turn conductor, regulates himself accordingly.

This movement is executed successively in the two columns, at a simple warning from the instructor, by two *right-about* (or *left-about*) turns.

The trooper designated to pass to the rear of the column, gathers his horse and executes the movement in advancing, so as not to retard those who are behind him. He holds the outer leg near, in order not to describe a semi-circle of more

than six paces; he marches then parallel to the column, and when he has re-entered upon the track by a second turn, he closes to the distance of 4 feet from the last trooper.

The trooper who follows and who becomes conductor, should gather his horse and direct him with the outer rein and the inner leg, to prevent his following the horse which has left the column.

The instructor also requires the troopers to leave the column, without commencing at the head. In this case, he directs the troopers who follow the one designated, to close to the prescribed distance; or if he thinks proper, in order to habituate the troopers to holding in their horses, causes the place of the absent trooper to continue vacant.

When the troopers have been thus misplaced, the instructor halts the squad, and directs each trooper to return to his place before passing to another movement.

### **Being halted, to commence the move at a trot.**

337.— The troopers being in columns upon the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Column forward.*
2. *Trot.*
3. MARCH.

At the command *trot*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, lower the wrists and close the legs progressively; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

**Marching at a trot, to halt.**

338.— The troopers marching *at a trot*, and in column, upon the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

At the command *column*, gather the horse.

At the command HALT, elevate the wrists by degrees, until the horse stops; and hold the legs always near, to keep him straight and to prevent his stepping back. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

The instructor requires all the troopers to set off freely *at the trot*, at the command MARCH, and to stop all together without jostling, at the command HALT.

**To pass from the trot to the trot-out, and from the trot-out to the trot.**

339.— The troopers marching at the trot, and in column upon the long sides, the instructor commands:

**TROT-OUT.**

At this command, lower a little the wrists and close the legs progressively; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

The gait being lengthened to a suitable degree, the instructor sees that the troopers keep their horses up to it.

He pays particular attention to the position of the troopers. He reminds them that it is in holding the body erect, having a light hand, the loins supple, and in allowing the thighs and legs to fall naturally, they can diminish the

effect of the reactions of the horse, and conform more readily to all his motions.

To prevent the horses from over-reaching, it is necessary to raise the wrists and close more or less the legs.

The lengthened gait is executed only during one or two turns towards each hand; in continuing it longer, the horses lose their steadiness, and the equality of their gaits is destroyed.

340.— To pass from the trot-out to the trot, the instructor commands:

### SLOW TROT.

At this command, elevate the wrists by degrees and close the legs, to prevent the horse from taking the walk; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

### To pass from the trot to the gallop.

341.— When the troopers have acquired some suppleness and confidence, and preserve at the trot, an easy and regular position, the instructor causes them to make a few turns *at the gallop*. He does not explain to them at first the mechanism of this gait, neither the means of assuring its regularity; he only requires that each trooper accommodates himself to the motions of his horse without losing his seat.

Before commencing this exercise, and when the rear rank arrives upon one of the short sides of the riding-house, it is formed, by causing the troopers to **FRONT** and **HALT**, as prescribed, **No. 330**, paying attention to make them move forward 6 paces from the track.

The troopers of the front rank continue march, take between them the distance of 4 paces, pass *to the trot* and commence successively *the gallop*, at the indication of the instructor, as follows:

On approaching the corner, lengthen *the trot*, and gather the horse, feeling slightly the left rein in order to keep back the left shoulder, and leave the right shoulder entirely free.

At the moment of passing the corner, close the legs equally but not suddenly. The horse having taken the gallop, hold a light hand and the legs near, to keep him at this gait.

After one or two turns at the most, the troopers pass from *the gallop to the trot*, and from *the trot to the walk*. The instructor makes them change hand in the breadth of the riding-house, and recommence the same exercise *to the left hand*. The troopers of the front rank are then formed as those of the rear rank, upon the other short side.

The troopers of the rear rank go through with the same exercise.

**To passage to the right or to the left, the head to the wall.**

342.— The two columns marching *at the walk* upon the long sides, the instructor causes to be executed the movement *squad to the right*, or *to the left*, as prescribed, No. 333; but he causes the troopers to halt when the horses reach the opposite track, their heads to the wall, and he commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*) *pass*.
2. MARCH.
3. *Squad*.
4. HALT.

(Pl. 62, *fig. A*.) At the command *right-pass*, bear the shoulders of the horse to the right, in opening a little the right rein, and closing the right leg.

This movement is only preparatory; it indicates to the trooper that the shoulders of his horse should always commence the march, and precede the movement of the haunches.

At the command MARCH, open the right rein to incline the horse to the right, closing at the same time the left leg that the haunches may follow, without leaning the body to the left; make use of the left rein and the right leg to support the horse and moderate his movement.

After some steps upon the side, the instructor halts the squad.

At the command HALT, cause to cease insensibly the effect of the right rein and the left leg, employing the opposite rein and leg; straighten the horse and replace the wrists and legs by degrees.

To passage to the left, and to halt, employ the same principles and inverse means.

343.— The instructor causes this movement to be executed in the commencement by each man separately, and then by all at the same time. He explains to each one the means to be employed.

The trooper should hold his horse obliquely to the track, to render his movement more easy. He ought to commence

this movement moderately, and look to the side towards which *he passes*, without inclining the body to the opposite side, which would derange his seat and constrain the movement of the horse.

The horse having obeyed the aids, the trooper should keep up the effect by gentle means.

If the horse turns from his oblique direction, the trooper should correct it by augmenting the effect of the left rein and leg.

If, on the contrary, the horse takes a position perpendicular to the wall, or if the haunches are in advance of the shoulders, the trooper replaces him obliquely to the right, in augmenting the effect of the right rein and leg.

If the horse steps too quickly to the side towards which the trooper *passes*, diminish the effect of the right rein and left leg, at the same time increasing that of the left rein and right leg.

If the horse moves forward against the wall, it is necessary to diminish the effect of the legs, and increase that of the hands, in yielding and checking the horse alternately.

If, on the contrary, he steps back, it is necessary to increase the effect of the legs and diminish that of the hands, inclining always the shoulders of the horse to the side towards which he passes; for it is generally the constraint that he experiences when the movement of the shoulders does not precede that of the haunches, which causes him to back.

**To passage to the right or to the left, being in column.**

344.— (Pl. 62, *fig. B.*) After having executed the passage, the head to the wall, the troopers being returned to the track, and marching *to the right hand* or *to the left hand*, the instructor orders a change of direction in the length of the riding-house; and when the two columns are by the side of each other, he halts them and causes them to execute *passage to the right* (or *to the left*).

When the troopers have nearly arrived at the track, the instructor halts them again.

The horses being quieted, he orders the passage to the left, and each trooper returns to the place he occupied before halting, in the middle of the riding-house.

When the troopers have reached the track, the instructor may, if he thinks proper, cause them to march in column upon this same track, in order not to keep the horses too long at the movement of *passing*.

345.— When the troopers have *passed, the head to the wall*, the instructor causes them sometimes *to rein back* and *to cease reining back*, as prescribed, No. 290.

346.— During the last days of this lesson, the instructor requires, from time to time, the reins to be crossed in the left hand, so that the troopers, conducting their horses with this hand alone, may be somewhat prepared for the exercises in the curb-bridle; he observes that each trooper keeps himself square upon the horse.

347.— To terminate the lesson and return to the quarters, the instructor conforms to what is prescribed, No. 330.



## THIRD LESSON.

## FIRST PART.

348.— The same number of troopers are united as for the second lesson. Their dress is also the same.

The horses are saddled and in both curb and snaffle. In all other respects conform to what is prescribed, [No. 311](#), and following.

The troopers are conducted to the riding-house as prescribed, [No. 316](#). The first time they exercise in this lesson, they conduct their horses to the riding-house with the snaffle, which is held in the right hand, the reins of the curb in the left hand.

In entering the riding-house the instructor conforms to what is prescribed, [No. 317](#). and when the two columns are upon the long sides, and exactly opposite, he commands 1. *Squad to the right (or to the left)*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT.

He explains then the position of the bridle-hand.

**Position of the bridle-hand.**

349.— ([Pl. 60.](#)) The reins with their slide in the left hand, the little finger between the reins, the other fingers well closed, and the thumb upon the second joint of the first finger; the elbow slightly detached from the body, the hand 4 inches above the pommel of the saddle, the fingers 6 inches from, and turned towards the body ; the little finger a little nearer the body than the upper part of the wrist, the right hand at the side.

**To adjust the reins.**

350.— The instructor commands:

*Adjust*—REINS.

*2 times.*

1. At the first part of the command, which is *adjust*, seize the reins with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, above and near the left thumb; raise them perpendicularly, slipping the right hand up to the button; the other fingers open, the nails to the front, the elbow 8 inches lower than the hand; half open the fingers of the left hand, the thumb elevated in order to equalize the reins; bear lightly on the bit, and hold the legs near.

2. At the last part of the command, which is REINS, close the left hand; let fall the reins and the right hand to the right side, and relax the legs.

**To take the snaffle in the right hand.**

351.— The instructor commands:

*Snaffle*—IN RIGHT HAND.

*1 time.*

At the last part of the command, which is IN RIGHT HAND, grasp the snaffle at the middle of the reins, with the four fingers of the right hand, the nails downward, without lowering the body; hold the reins of the snaffle over those of the curb, and lower the left hand so as not to bear upon the bit.

352.— In using alternately the curb and snaffle, the trooper relieves the bars of the horse's mouth; he should never use both at the same time.

The troopers are required to take the snaffle in the right hand during the commencement of the exercise in the curb-bridle, in order to make the change of position of the rider less abrupt, and to bring up his right side, which is apt to remain in rear.

### **To drop the snaffle.**

353.— The instructor commands:

#### *Drop—SNAFFLE.*

At the last part of the command, which is SNAFFLE, replace the left hand, and let fall the reins of the snaffle so that they will be under those of the curb, the right hand to the side.

### **The principal movements of the bridle-hand.**

354.— In raising slightly the hand and drawing it in towards the body, the trooper gathers his horse; in raising it still more, the gait is made slower. By increasing the effect of the hand, the horse is stopped; if increased still more, the horse is reined back.

In lowering slightly the hand, the horse is at liberty to move forward.

In carrying the hand forward and to the right, the horse is turned to the right.

In carrying the hand forward and to the left, the horse is turned to the left.

As soon as the horse obeys, the bridle-hand resumes its original position.

In all the movements of the hand, the arm should act freely, without communicating constraint to the shoulder or

body; the effect of the curb being more powerful than that of the snaffle, it should be used progressively, particularly in stopping and reining back.

The instructor causes the following movements to be executed, by the commands prescribed in the first lesson.

### **To gather the horse.**

355.— Elevate slightly the hand, drawing it at the same time towards the body, and close the legs.

### **To march.**

356.— Lower slightly the hand, the wrist always opposite the middle of the body, and close the legs progressively. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and legs by degrees.

### **To halt.**

357.— The trooper braces himself in the saddle; elevate the hand by degrees in drawing it in towards the body, and close the legs to keep the horse straight and prevent him from stepping back. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

### **To turn to the right.**

358.— Carry the hand forward and to the right, according to the sensibility of the horse; close the right leg, the left leg held near to sustain him. The movement being nearly finished, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

### **To turn to the left.**

359.— Carry the hand forward and to the left, according to the sensibility of the horse; close the left leg, the right leg

held near to sustain him. The movement being nearly finished, replace the hand and legs by degrees.

**To turn-about to the right and to the left.**

360.— The same principles as prescribed to execute a turn to the right, or to the left, observing to pass over a semi-circle.

**To make a quarter-turn to the right, and to the left.**

361.— The same principles as prescribed to execute a turn to the right, or to the left, observing that the movement of the hand does not require the horse to do more than make a quarter-turn to the right, or to the left.

**To rein back, and to cease reining back.**

362.— The same principles as prescribed for the halt, observing as soon as the horse obeys, to lower and raise the hand alternately, that the movement may be regular.

To cease reining back, relax the effect of the hand and close the legs; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

363.— The instructor does not require these different movements to be executed simultaneously, but observes particularly the manner in which each trooper employs his bridle-hand. He always rectifies its position before passing from one movement to another.

**Exercise of the 2d lesson with the curb-bridle.**

364.— When the troopers begin to understand the movements of the bridle-hand, the instructor causes them to

march upon the track, first *at the walk*, and then *at the trot*; he requires the squad frequently to halt, to move off, to change direction, and to execute successively the different movements of the second lesson, observing that each trooper makes an exact application of the principles prescribed when at a halt.

The habitual fault with the troopers being to carry the left hand forward, and to throw back the right shoulder, the instructor is particular in requiring them to keep the hand above the pommel of the saddle without deranging the position of the body.

**To take the snaffle in the left hand.**

365.— The instructor commands:

*Snaffle*—IN LEFT HAND.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is IN LEFT HAND, pass the two first fingers of the left hand, the nails under, in the reins of the snaffle, and draw in the hand towards the body until the reins of the curb-bridle cease to act upon the bit.

**To drop the snaffle.**

366.— The instructor commands:

*Drop*—SNAFFLE.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is SNAFFLE, let go the snaffle without inclining the body, and retake the position of the bridle-hand, at the same time adjusting the reins.

The instructor does not cause the snaffle to be taken in the left hand until the troopers have acquired the habit of conducting their horses with the curb-bridle.

### **To passage to the right, or to the left.**

367.— The instructor causes the squad to passage to the right, or to the left, the head to the wall and in columns, conforming to the principles prescribed, **Nos. 342, 343, and 344.**

To passage to the right, bear the shoulders of the horse to the right, by inclining the hand forward and to the right; close the left leg that the haunches may follow, keep the right leg near, to sustain the horse.

In order to cease passaging, straighten the horse, hold the right leg near, and replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

To passage to the left, and to cease passaging, employ the same principles but inverse means.

## **SECOND PART.**

### **Principles of the gallop.**

368.— (**Pl. 63, fig. A.**) A horse gallops on the right foot, when the right fore and hind-leg move in advance of the left fore and hind-leg. This gait is generally divided into three distinct times or treads. The 1st time is marked by the left hind-foot which reaches the ground first; the 2d by the left fore and right hind-foot which touch at the same instant, and the 3d by the right fore-foot.

(**Pl. 64, fig. A.**) A horse gallops on the left foot when the left fore and hind-leg move in advance of the right fore and

hind-leg. In this case the right hind-foot first reaches the ground, then the right fore and left hind-foot, and lastly the left fore-foot.

A horse gallops true when he gallops on the right foot, in exercising or turning to the right hand, and on the left foot, in exercising or turning to the left hand.

A horse gallops false when he gallops on the left foot, in exercising or turning to the right hand, and on the right foot, in exercising or turning to the left hand.

A horse is "disunited" when he gallops with the near fore-leg followed by the off hind-leg, or with the off fore-leg followed by the near hind-leg.

When the horse gallops on the right foot, the trooper experiences in his position a sensible movement from right to left.

When the horse gallops on the left foot, the trooper experiences a sensible movement in his position from left to right.

When the horse is disunited, the trooper experiences in his position irregular movements; the centre of gravity of the horse is deranged and his strength impaired.

### **Exercise at the gallop upon right lines.**

369.— When the troopers preserve in the second lesson their proper position at the gallop, they are taught to move off on a straight line, to either hand.

After the troopers of the rear rank are formed, as prescribed, [No. 341](#), the instructor causes the men of the front rank to take the distance of 4 paces from each other; these troopers marching *at the trot*, and *to the right hand* upon one of the long sides, the instructor commands:



1. *Gallop.*
2. MARCH.

At the command **GALLOP**, gather the horse and keep him perfectly straight.

At the command **MARCH**, carry the hand slightly forward and to the left, to enable the right shoulder to move in advance of the left, and close the legs behind the girths in order to urge the horse forward, causing him to feel lightly the effect of the left leg. The horse having obeyed, hold a light hand and the legs near, to keep him at his gait.

370.— The instructor requires the troopers to be perfectly calm, to conduct their horses with mildness, and particularly to preserve a light hand that the gallop may be free and regular.

During the first days of the exercise *at the gallop*, the troopers are required to take the reins of the snaffle in the right hand, in order to calm their horses; this is discontinued when they have acquired the habit of managing them with the curb-bridle alone.

To preserve the movement of the horse true, it is necessary for the trooper to accommodate himself to all his motions, particularly in passing the corners, where the slightest derangement in the seat would render the action of the horse irregular.

When a horse gallops false, or is disunited, the trooper is ordered to take the trot and pass to the rear of the column, taking care not to interfere with those who follow. When he arrives at the rear he resumes the gallop, and the instructor explains to him again the means to be employed to keep the horse true.

371.— The troopers are permitted to make only a turn or two *at the gallop* to each hand, and always required to pass *to the trot* in order to change hand.

When the horses have become quiet, and the troopers begin to manage them well, the distance between them is gradually diminished to 4 feet.

The rear rank is carried through the same exercise, and then both ranks at the same time.

### **Exercise at the gallop on the circle.**

372.— When the troopers have been sufficiently exercised at the gallop upon straight lines, the instructor cause them to make a few turns on the circle, following the principles prescribed, [Nos. 326](#) and [327](#).

This exercise is commenced on very large circles; the diameter is diminished as the troopers become more skilful.

373.— To terminate the lesson, and return to the quarters, conform to what is prescribed, [No. 330](#).

## **FOURTH LESSON.**

### **FIRST PART.**

374.— The same number of troopers compose the squad as for the third lesson; their dress is also the same; they have their arms.

The instructor is mounted. He is assisted by two assistant-instructors.

These two assistant-instructors, also mounted, are armed like the troopers, in order to execute the manual of arms, as given in detail by the instructor.

**Exercise of the 3d lesson, with the sabre only.**

375.— The first days of the fourth lesson are employed in repeating all the movements of the third, the troopers being armed with the sabre only. The troopers are then furnished with all the arms. They are required to mount in executing the entire detail, prescribed, [No. 268](#). Before commencing the manual of arms, a few movements *at the walk* and *the trot* are executed, in order to calm the horses; during the remainder of the lesson, the exercise at a halt is interrupted by movements at the different gaits. The instructor requires them to be executed with the greatest regularity, so that the troopers, in learning to manage their arms, perfect themselves at the same time in conducting their horses.

**Manual of arms, at a halt.**

(Dragoons, Chasseurs, and Hussars.)

376.— The troopers of the front rank are formed by the commands **FRONT** and **HALT**, as prescribed, [No. 330](#).

The rear rank is then formed on the left of the front, by a similar movement. Each assistant-instructor places himself 6 paces in front of the centre of his rank, and facing it.

To put the carbine in the boot, the instructor commands:

***Unslung—CARBINE.***

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is **CARBINE**, seize the arm at the small of the stock with the right hand, elevate it, seize it with the left hand at the lower band; turn the left wrist in carrying it towards the head of the horse, pass the butt to the left, between the reins and the body, the

guard to the left, the muzzle inclined to the right; disengage the swivel from the rings with the right hand, repass the butt to the right, between the reins and the body; seize the arm at the small of the stock with the right hand, letting go with the left hand, and place the butt upon the thigh, the muzzle elevated.

2. Lower the piece with the right hand, place the muzzle in the boot, pass the gun-strap twice around the small of the stock, buckle it with the right hand, at the same time supporting the butt with the left, and adjust the reins.

377.— To disengage the carbine from the boot and sling it, the instructor commands:

*Sling—CARBINE.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is CARBINE, unbuckle the gun-strap with the right hand, supporting the butt with the left hand; seize the piece at the small of the stock with the right hand, the nails under, disengage it from the boot, elevate it, seize it with the left hand at the lower band; turn the left wrist in carrying it towards the head of the horse; pass the butt to the left between the reins and the body, the guard to the left, the muzzle inclined to the right; take the swivel with the right hand, engage it in the rings; repass the butt to the right, between the reins and the body, seize the arm at the small of the stock with the right hand, letting go with the left, and place the butt upon the thigh, the muzzle elevated.

2. Lower the muzzle of the carbine, cast the butt to the rear, and adjust the reins.

If the carbine is not to be used again, the instructor requires the trooper to pass the swivel strap around the small of the stock, the buckle on the outside.

### DRAW—SABRE.

*2 times.*

378.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is DRAW, incline slightly the head to the left, carry the right hand above the reins, engage the wrist in the sword-knot; seize the gripe, disengage the blade 6 inches from the scabbard, and turn the head to the front.

2. At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, draw quickly the sabre, raising the arm to its full length; hold the sabre in this position an instant, then carry it to the right shoulder, the back of the blade supported against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist upon the top of the thigh, the little finger on the outside of the gripe.

### *Present*—SABRE.

*1 time.*

379.— At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, carry the sabre forward, the thumb opposite to and 8 inches from the neck, the blade perpendicular, the edge to the left, the thumb along the right side of the gripe, the little finger joined to the other three.

### *Carry*—SABRE.

*1 time.*

380.— At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, replace the sabre, the back of the blade supported against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist upon the upper part of the thigh, the little finger outside of the gripe.

## RETURN—SABRE.

*2 times.*

381.— 1. At the first part of the command, which is RETURN, execute the movement of *present-sabre*.

2. At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, carry the wrist opposite to, and 6 inches from the left shoulder, lower the blade in passing it near the left arm, the point to the rear; incline the head slightly to the left, and fix the eyes upon the mouth of the scabbard; return the blade, disengage the wrist from the sword-knot, turn the head to the front, and adjust the rein.

(Lancers).

382.— The instructor commands:

*Carry*—LANCES.

As prescribed [No. 147](#).

383. *Rest*—LANCES.

As prescribed, [No. 146](#).

384.— The lancers are exercised, like all other troopers, at the manual of the sabre.

**To load the carbine.**

(Dragoons, Chasseurs, and Hussars).

385.— The instructor commands:

*Advance*—CARBINE.

*1 time.*

At the last part of the command, which is CARBINE, seize the carbine at the small of the stock with the right

hand, elevate it and place the butt upon the thigh, the muzzle elevated, and the upper band opposite to the right shoulder.

386.— The instructor commands: *Load in ten times*

1. LOAD.

At this command, place the carbine in the left hand, which seizes it below the lower band, the thumb along the stock, under the swivel-bar, the muzzle a little elevated and directed to the left; half-cock, remove the old cap if there be one, and carry the hand to the cap-box.

- |                              |                                       |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 2. PRIME.                    | } As prescribed, Nos. 56, 57, and 58. |
| 3. <i>Handle</i> —CARTRIDGE. |                                       |
| 4. <i>Tear</i> —CARTRIDGE.   |                                       |
| 5. <i>Cast</i> —ABOUT.       |                                       |

At the last part of the command, which is ABOUT, turn the left wrist, advancing it towards the head of the horse; pass the butt to the left, between the reins and the body, in front of the holsters, the swivel-bar towards the body, the muzzle inclined to the right; seize the barrel of the piece 1 inch from the muzzle, with the two last fingers of the right hand, always holding the cartridge with the thumb and two first fingers

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 6. Charge—CARTRIDGE. | } As prescribed, Nos. 60, 61, 62, and 63. |
| 7. Draw—RAMROD.      |   |
| 8. Ram—CARTRIDGE.    |   |
| 9. Return—RAMROD.    |   |
| 10. Advance—CARBINE. |   |

At the last part of the command, which is CARBINE, turn again the left wrist, moving it towards the head of the horse; pass the butt to the right, between the rein and the body, seize the piece at the small of the stock with the right hand, letting go with the left, and come to the *advance-carbine*. \*

---

\* To load Hall's carbine, the instructor commands:

*Advance*—CARBINE.

1 *time*.

The instructor commands: *Load in 5 times*.

1. LOAD.

At this command, seize the carbine with the left hand at the lower band, pass the butt to the left, between the reins and the body, the barrel to the right, the muzzle inclined towards the head of the horse on the right, the small of the stock against the thigh; spring open the chamber with the right hand, and carry the hand to the cartridge-box and open it.

2. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.

As in 2d time of loading on foot.

3. *Charge*—CARTRIDGE.

As in 3d time of loading on foot.

4. PRIME.

1 *time*.

Fix the cap and let down the cock.



5. *Advance*—CARBINE.1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

Turn again the butt to the right, between the rein and the body, seize the piece at the small of the stock with the right hand, and come to the *advance-carbine*.

---

387.— The instructor commands:

*Drop*—CARBINE.1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is CARBINE, lower the muzzle of the carbine, and cast the butt to the rear.

**To load the pistol.**

(Cuirassiers, Dragoons, Chasseurs, and Hussars).

388.— The instructor commands:

*Draw*—PISTOL.1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is PISTOL, pass the right hand under the reins, draw the pistol from its holster, elevate it, the guard to the front, the wrist at the height of, and 6 inches from the right shoulder, the first finger extended on the guard.

389.— The instructor commands: *Load in 10 times*.

## 1. LOAD.

At this command place the pistol in the left hand, the guard slightly turned out, the little finger touching the

feather spring, the thumb upon the barrel, the muzzle slightly elevated and directed to the left, the right thumb against the pan-steel above the flint, the fingers closed.

## 2. *Open*—PAN.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is PAN, open the pan by pushing forcibly against the steel with the right thumb, and resisting with the left hand; carry the right hand to the cartridge-box and open it.

## 3. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.

As prescribed for the carbine.

## 4. *Tear*—CARTRIDGE.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is CARTRIDGE, tear the cartridge to the powder, holding it near the opening, between the thumb and the two first fingers; then bring it down and place it vertically against the pan, the palm of the hand towards the body.

## 5. PRIME.

1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

1. At the command PRIME, lower the head, cast the eye upon the pan, fill it with powder, pinch the cartridge near the opening with the thumb and two first fingers; raise the head, and place the right hand behind the pan-steel, the two last fingers resting against it.

2. Shut the pan with the two last fingers, resisting with the left hand, the two first fingers and thumb still holding

the cartridge; seize the small of the stock with the two last fingers and the palm of the hand.

### 6. *Cast*—ABOUT.

At the last part of the command, which is ABOUT, turn the left wrist, pass the butt to the left between the reins and the body, the lock to the front, the barrel inclined to the right; seize it with the two last fingers of the right hand, at 1 inch from the muzzle. Always holding the cartridge with the thumb and two first fingers.

- |                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 7. Charge—CARTRIDGE. | } As prescribed for<br>the carbine. |
| 8. Draw—RAMROD.      |                                     |
| 9. Ram—CARTRIDGE.    |                                     |

At the last part of the command, which is CARTRIDGE, ram twice, draw out the ramrod, take it by the middle, return it in forcing it down with the hand; repass the butt between the reins and the body, and seize the pistol with the right hand at the small of the stock.

### 10. *Raise*—PISTOL.

At the last part of the command, which is PISTOL, the pistol with the right hand, letting go with the left, the guard to the front, the wrist at the height of, and 6 inches from the right shoulder, the first finger extended under the guard.

390.— The instructor commands:

*Return*—PISTOL.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is **PISTOL**, lower the muzzle of the pistol and return it to the holster, passing it under the reins.

391.— When the troopers understand the method of loading the carbine and pistol by the separate commands, they are required to execute *the load at will*; for this purpose, after having come to the *advance carbine*, or draw *pistol*, the instructor commands: *Load at will*.

### LOAD.

At this command, the troopers load, without regard to each other, taking care to stop after loading at the position *advance carbine*, or *raise pistol*, and to wait for the command of the instructor to return the arm.

### To fire the carbine.

392.— The instructor commands:

#### *Advance*—CARBINE.

As prescribed, [No. 385](#).

### READY.

1 *time*.

At this command, let fall the carbine in the left hand, the muzzle elevated and directed to the left; place the thumb on the head of the cock, the first finger upon the guard, the others behind it; cock the carbine with the right thumb, and return to the *advance carbine*.

### AIM.

1 *time*.

393.— At this command, carry the butt to the shoulder with the right hand, moving the left hand towards the head of the horse; support the carbine with the thumb and first finger of this hand at the lower band, the others closed in order to hold the reins without slackening them; place the first finger of the right hand upon the trigger, and aim at the height of a man's waist.

**FIRE.**

*1 time.*

394.— At the command **FIRE**, press the first finger against the trigger, and fire without deranging the position of the carbine; return then to the position of the first time in loading, **No. 386**, the thumb of the right hand upon the cock, the first finger upon the trigger.

*Advance*—**CARBINE.**

*1 time.*

395.— At the last part of the command, which is **CARBINE**, come to the position of *advance carbine*.

*Drop*—**CARBINE.**

As prescribed, **No. 387**.

**To fire the pistol.**

396.— The instructor commands:

*Draw*—**PISTOL.**

As prescribed, **No. 388**.

**READY.**

*1 time.*

At this command, place the pistol in the hand, the muzzle elevated and directed to the left, cock and *raise pistol*.

AIM.

1 *time*.

397.— At the command AIM, lower the pistol, the arm half extended; place the first finger upon the trigger, the guard a little inclined to the right, the muzzle directed to the height of a man's waist.

FIRE.

1 *time*.

398.— At the command FIRE, press the first finger upon the trigger, and fire without deranging the position of the pistol; return then to the position of the first time in loading, [No. 389](#), the right thumb upon the cock, the first finger upon the trigger.

*Raise*—PISTOL.

1 *time*.

399.— At the last part of the command, which is PISTOL, half cock the pistol, shut the pan, and return to the position of *raise pistol*.

*Return*—PISTOL.

As prescribed, [No. 390](#).

400.— If, after having fired the carbine, or pistol, the instructor wishes the squad to reload, he commands:

LOAD.

At this command, execute the load at will, and take the position of *advance carbine*, or *raise pistol*; be in readiness

either to cock the arm or replace it at the command of the instructor.

### **Inspection of arms.**

(Dragoons, Chasseurs, and Hussars).

401.— The instructor commands:

*Inspection—(of) CARBINE.*

*1 time, 5 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is CARBINE, take the position of *advance carbine*.

2. Place the carbine in the left hand, pass it to the left, as prescribed at the fifth time in loading, draw the ramrod, as prescribed at the seventh time in loading, let it slide into the barrel, and carry the right hand to the side.

3. With the right hand raise the ramrod half its length, the arm half extended, let it fall again into the barrel, and carry the right hand to the side.

4. Return the ramrod, and take the position of *advance carbine*.

5. Drop the carbine. \*

---

\* With Hall's carbine the inspector commands:

*Inspection—(of) CARBINE.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. Spring open the chamber with the thumb of the right hand; seize the small of the stock with the right hand, and place the butt upon the right thigh, the barrel to the right, the muzzle inclined to the front.

2. Drop the carbine and shut the chamber with the thumb of the right hand.

---

(Lancers).

402.— The instructor commands:

*Inspection—(of) LANCES.*

*1 time, 4 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is LANCES, carry the lance.

2. Charge lance, as prescribed, [No. 148](#).

3. Turn the wrist, the nails downward, in order to show the other side of the blade.

4. Take the position of rest lance, prescribed, [No. 146](#).

(Cuirassiers, Dragoons, Chasseurs, Hussars, and Lancers).

403.— The instructor commands:

*Inspection—(of) PISTOL.*

*1 time, 5 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is PISTOL, draw pistol.

2. Place the pistol in the left hand, which hold. it perpendicularly at the small of the stock, the lock to the front; draw the ramrod, put it in the barrel, and replace the right hand at the side.

3. With the right hand raise the ramrod half its length, let it fall again into the barrel, and carry the right hand to the side.



4. Draw the ramrod from the barrel, return it, forcing it down with the palm of the right hand; and take the position of *raise pistol*.

5. Return pistol.

404.— The instructor commands:

*Inspection—(of) SABRE.*

*1 time, 7 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, execute the first time of *draw sabre*.

2. Execute the second time of *draw sabre*.

3. Present the sabre.

4. Turn in the wrist, in order to show the other side of the blade.

5. Carry the sabre to the shoulder,

6. Execute the first time of *return sabre*.

7. Execute the second time of *return sabre*.

405.— When the troopers execute correctly the inspection of arms, they are exercised at it without detail, at the command:

*Inspection—(of) ARMS.*

At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, the trooper (*dragoons, chasseurs, and hussars*), take the position of *advance carbine*, passes the carbine to the left, and draws the ramrod. When the instructor arrives opposite, the trooper raises the ramrod, lets it fall again into the barrel, and as soon as the instructor is at the distance of two troopers from him, he returns the ramrod, takes the position of *advance carbine*, drops the carbine, *draws the*

*pistol*, passes it into the left hand, and puts the ramrod in the barrel. \* When the instructor arrives opposite, he raises the ramrod, lets it fall into the barrel, and as he is passed by two troopers, he returns the ramrod, takes the position of *raise pistol*, returns it to the holster, and draws the sabre. When the instructor arrives opposite, the trooper presents the sabre, shows the other side of the blade, and as soon as he is passed by two troopers, he carries the sabre, returns it, covers the holsters, and adjusts the reins.

(Lancers). At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, the lancer carries the lance, then comes to the position of *charge lance*. When the instructor arrives opposite, he turns the wrist in order to show the other side of the blade. As soon as the instructor has passed him by two troopers, he carries and rests the lance, takes the position of *draw pistol*, and performs the remainder of the movement as prescribed above.

(Cuirassiers). At the last part of the command, which is ARMS, the cuirassier executes what is prescribed at the inspection of the pistol and the sabre.

---

\* (With Hall's carbine, at the word ARMS, execute the 1st motion of *inspection of carbine*; after the inspector has passed by two troopers, execute the 2d motion of inspection of carbine).

---

406.— While the troopers are formed in one rank, the instructor causes them to leave the rank indiscriminately, at a simple notice from him. This exercise is repeated as

often as he thinks necessary, to habituate the horses to leaving the ranks without difficulty.

The trooper designated gathers his horse, and urges him forward with mildness, observing not to startle him.

### **Sabre and lance exercise, at a halt.**

407.— The troopers marching at a walk in two columns, the instructor causes them to take the distance of two paces one from the other, and when the two columns are upon the long sides, he commands: 1. *Squad to the right* (or *to the left*); 2. MARCH; 3. HALT. He causes them then to execute at a halt the sabre exercise, as taught on foot.

For the lance exercise, the lancers, before turning to the right, or to the left, should take the distance of 4 paces.

[408.—] For the exercise at a halt, the instructor employs only the time necessary to make the troopers comprehend the details; the 2d part of the lesson being employed to execute these movements when marching. (This observation does not apply to the *inspection of arms*, which is always executed at a halt).

## **SECOND PART.**

409.— The troopers, besides the arms, have on the helmet, or schakos, and the cuirassiers the cuirass; the horses are fully equipped.

### **Exercise of the 3d lesson with all the arms.**

410.— The instructor commences this second part, by causing the troopers, having all the arms, to execute the movements of the third lesson at the different gaits.

He observes that the weight and motion of the arms do not cause them to lose the regularity of their position.

When the troopers have acquired the habit of exercising with the sabre on, and the carbine slung, they are taught to make use of their arms in marching.

### **Manual of arms, in marching.**

411.— The troopers are required to *draw sabre*, and to *return sabre*, while marching in column *at a walk*.

The instructor observes that neither the seat, nor the position of the bridle-hand is deranged. He also requires the troopers to keep the legs near, in order to prevent the horses from slackening the gait. When the troopers have the sabre drawn, the instructor observes that they do not throw back the right shoulder.

As the troopers become more skilful, they are required to *draw sabre*, in marching first *at the trot*, and then *at the gallop*. They also take the position of the first motion of *in tierce point*, and *front cut*, in marching at the different gaits.

The troopers are taught to take the position of the sabre for the *charge*, as front rank and as rear rank. For this purpose the instructor commands:

*As front rank*—RAISE SABRE.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, take the position of *in tierce point*.

The instructor then causes the sabre to be carried, and commands:

*As rear rank*—RAISE SABRE.

## 1 time.

At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, take the position of the first motion of *front cut*.

These movements are executed successively at the different gaits.

The sabres are returned in marching *at a walk*; for this purpose the troopers are directed to support the back of the blade against the left arm, until the point has entered the scabbard.

The troopers are exercised, sabres drawn, in turning to the right, and to the left at the trot, and at the gallop, and to the right-about, and left-about, at the trot only.

412.— The troopers marching in column *at a walk*, the instructor causes them to execute the *load at will* of the carbine and pistol. The instructor observes that they execute all the times, and at the same time conduct their horses with regularity.

**Sabre and lance exercise at all gaits.**

413.— The troopers execute progressively, at the different gaits, the exercise of the sabre and the lance, taking care to preserve between each other the distance fixed in No. 407.

**To leap the ditch and the bar.**

414.— For this exercise, the width of the ditch should be from 3 to 5 feet, and the height of the bar from 1 to 3 feet.

The width and height of each are increased as the troopers and horses become more habituated to leaping.

The instructor forms the squad in one rank, 30 paces in rear of the obstacle.

At the warning of the instructor, each trooper moves off *at a walk*, directs his march towards the obstacle, and at a third of the way commences *the trot*.

### **To leap the ditch.**

415.— On arriving near the ditch, give the hand and close the legs, to force the horse to make the leap. The moment he reaches the ground, raise slightly the hand in order to sustain him.

### **To leap the bar.**

416.— On arriving near the bar, rein up the horse slightly, and close the legs. At the moment of making the leap, give the hand, and elevate it slightly as soon as he reaches the ground on the other side.

The trooper, in leaping, should cling to the horse with the thighs and calves of the legs, taking care to lean a little forward as the horse is in the act of springing, and to seat himself well by leaning to the rear at the moment the horse reaches the ground.

417.— Each trooper, after having made the leap, continues to move *at the trot*, and takes his place in the rank which is formed 30 paces beyond the obstacle, taking care to pass *to the walk* just before halting.

During the first days of this exercise, the troopers leap without arms; the instructor causes them to take the snaffle in the right hand.

When the troopers have leaped without arms, they repeat the same exercise with arms, and finally with the sabre drawn.

The horses employed in the *school of the trooper*, should be trained and accustomed to leaping. If, however, a horse refuses to leap, the instructor aids the trooper with the whip, as prescribed, Title 1st, Article 8.

### Individual charge.

418.— (Pl. 65.) To exercise the troopers at the charge, they are conducted to the extremity of a ground, which presents a course of sufficient extent without obstacle. There they are formed in one rank, as prescribed No. 376, and required to draw the sabre.

A Corporal is placed 80 paces in front of the right of the troopers; an assistant-instructor 80 paces in front of this Corporal; another Corporal 60 paces farther; finally, a third Corporal 20 paces farther marks the extremity of the course, and serves as the point of direction for the trooper of the right. The second assistant-instructor remains at the point of departure, to see that the troopers move off one after another, and repeat to them what they are required to do. The instructor goes to the point where the troopers are to reform after having charged, and faces the squad.

To execute well the charge, the troopers should be careful to march straight forward, not to change the gait before arriving at the points indicated, and to observe particularly at each increase or diminution of the gait, the prescribed gradation.

Each trooper marches 20 paces, and takes *the trot*.

On arriving at the first Corporal, he passes *to the gallop*.

When he reaches the assistant-instructor, the latter commands:

### CHARGE.

At this command, quicken the gallop, keeping the horse at the same time under proper control; bear upon the stirrups, and take the position of *as front rank*—RAISE SABRE. (Lancer), CHARGE LANCE.

Abreast of the second Corporal, the trooper retakes *the trot* and *carries the sabre*. (Lancer), *carry the lance*.

At 10 paces from the third Corporal, he takes *the walk*, and halts abreast of him.

All the other troopers execute successively the same movement, the assistant-instructor causing each one to set off when the trooper who precedes him has halted. Each trooper takes for his point of direction the place he is to occupy in the rank, and places himself on the left of the troopers already formed.

419.— The first charge being completed, the instructor breaks the squad *by file to the right*, and reforms it *facing to the rear*, by the commands FRONT and HALT, so that the left trooper will find himself in the direction of the Corporals, who mark the points for the changes of gait.

The troopers then charge in the opposite direction, after having placed in like manner the assistant-instructors and Corporals.

At the command CHARGE, the troopers now take the position *as rear rank*—RAISE SABRE. (Lancer: the lance carried and disengaged from the boot).



420.— The charge should be executed only twice the same day. It usually terminates the exercise; after executing it the squad marches *at a walk* a sufficient time to enable the horses to become calm before entering the stables.

### Target practice.

421.— For the target practice on horseback, the target should be 8 feet high and 3 feet broad, the proportions of a man mounted. At 5 feet of its height, it is marked with a black band 3 inches wide. This band is struck when the pieces are properly aimed.

The troopers are formed in one rank, 300 paces from, and opposite the target.

A stake is planted in the direction from the squad to the target, to indicate the distance from which the troopers are to fire.

The carbine is first fired at 50 paces, and the pistol at 10. As the troopers become more habituated to the target practice, the stake is progressively removed from the target, until at the distance of 100 paces for the carbine, and 30 for the pistol.

After the carbines are loaded, the instructor gives the following instructions:

Whenever a trooper *fires with the carbine*, he halts, facing the object at which he is to fire, and places his horse in such a direction that the piece is directed between the shoulder and the left ear.

To give troopers the habit of placing themselves promptly to fire upon objects placed in front, and upon their left or

right, they are required to execute the movements hereinafter detailed.

1. The trooper designated leaves the rank, takes the position of *advance-carbine*, and marches straight to the stake. Having reached it, he halts, cocks his carbine, fires, moves forward, and after taking a few steps, turns-about; he returns, loading his piece at the same time, passes by the rear, and places himself on the left of the rank.

2. The trooper designated leaves the rank, takes the position of *advance-carbine*, turns to the left, then to the right, and marches straight forward until he arrives abreast of the stake. There he turns to the right and directs himself upon the stake; when he is near it, he turns to the left, halts, cocks his carbine, aims, and fires; he then turns to the right, and in loading his piece places himself on the left of the rank, passing by the rear.

3. The trooper designated leaves the rank, takes the position of *advance-carbine*, turns to the right, then to the left, and marches straight forward until he arrives abreast of the stake. There he turns to the left, and directs himself upon the stake; when he is near it he turns to the right, halts, cocks his piece, aims, and fires; he then turns to the left, and in loading his piece places himself on the left of the rank, passing by the rear.

The troopers having executed these movements correctly *at the walk*, are exercised in them *at the trot* and *at the gallop*.

After the troopers have been exercised in firing the pistol at a halt, the instructor gives them the following instructions.

To fire the pistol in marching, the troopers should not halt, neither change the direction nor gait.

To fire to the front, the trooper designated leaves the rank, *draws the pistol*, and cocks it. Having arrived abreast of the point from which he is to fire, he aims, fires, marches on a few steps, turns-about, and places himself on the left of the rank, at the same time loading his pistol.

To fire to the right or to the left, the trooper executes the 3d or 2d movement indicated for the carbine, except that he does not halt, neither faces the target, but fires without changing his direction.

To fire to the rear, the trooper designated leaves the ranks, *draws the pistol*, cocks it, and marches towards the target so as to leave it a little on his right; having arrived at his proper distance, he turn-about, and when he finds himself between the target and the rank, he aims, fires to the rear at the target, and returns, in Loading his pistol, placing himself on the left of the rank.

These movements being executed correctly *at the walk*, are repeated *at the trot* and *at the gallop*.

## SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON, MOUNTED.

422.— The troopers being sufficiently instructed to manage their horses and use their arms, are permitted to the *school of the platoon*, the object of which is to teach them to exercise properly together, and execute all the movements of the platoon in the squadron, whether in column, or in line.

Each movement, after having been correctly executed by the right, is repeated by the left.

When the movements are all executed *at the walk*, the instructor causes them to be repeated *at the trot*, requiring always the same simultaneous action and the same precision. This gradation is also followed for the exercise *at the gallop*; but the horses are not kept a long time at this gait.

The platoon is composed of 24 or 32 men, (12 or 16 files), including the Corporals, placed in the squadron in line, (Title 1st, Art. 1st); a non-commissioned officer is placed as file-closer; another non-commissioned officer is charged with aiding the instructor; he is termed assistant-instructor.

When the platoon is broken in order to march in column, the assistant-instructor, at the preparatory command, places himself at one pace in front of the first files. In all the formations and marches in line, he places himself at one pace in front of the centre of the platoon, the post of the chief of the platoon; the instructor moves wherever his presence is most required.

For the *school of the platoon*, the troopers are in undress and under arms, helmets, or schakos, the cuirassiers the

cuirass; the carbine is always slung; the horses are saddled without schabraque.

---

## ARTICLE FIRST.

423.— The platoon is formed in two ranks, at open order, the troopers and file-closer at the head of their horses, the assistant-instructor mounted, facing the platoon, at 10 paces from and opposite the centre; the instructor commands:

1. ATTENTION.
2. *Right*—DRESS.
3. FRONT.

He then commands:

*In each rank*—COUNT (BY) FOURS.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 174](#), commencing by the right.

The troopers then mount by the *times*, and without explanation.

At the command *form*—RANKS, the assistant-instructor moves forward, turns to the right-about, and places himself at the centre of the platoon, the croup of his horse one pace from the head of the horses of the front rank. The file-closer follows the rear rank.

424.— The first time the platoon is conducted upon the ground, the instructor causes it to break, prescribed, [No. 316](#), and to re-form, as prescribed, [No. 330](#).

### **General principles of alignment.**

425.— The troopers, to align themselves, should regulate their shoulders upon those of the men on the side of the alignment, and fix the eyes upon the line of the eyes, so as to perceive the breast of the second trooper of their rank on the side of the alignment: for this purpose, they should turn the head, remaining square upon their horses, feel lightly the boot of the man on the side of the alignment, and keep the horses straight in the ranks, that all may have a parallel direction.

The troopers of the rear rank, independently of the alignment, should be exactly behind their file-leaders, and in the same direction, taking care to preserve the distance of 2 feet from head to croup.

### **Successive alignment of files in the platoon.**

426.— The two files of the right or of the left are moved forward 10 paces, and aligned parallel to the platoon by the commands 1. *Two files from right (or left) forward*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right (or left)—DRESS*; 5. FRONT. The instructor then commands:

1. *By file right (or left)—DRESS.*
2. FRONT.

(Pl. 66, *fig. A*.) At the last part of the first command, which is DRESS, each file moves forward successively and steadily, the troopers turning the head to the right, and taking the last steps slowly, in order to arrive abreast of the files already formed without passing beyond the alignment, observing then to halt, give the hand, relax the legs, and keep head to the right until the command FRONT.

Each file executes the same movement when the preceding one has arrived on the base of alignment, so that only one file may align itself at the same time.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command **FRONT** when the last file is aligned.

427.— (Pl. 66, *fig. B.*) When the troopers execute correctly these alignments, this instruction is repeated in giving the two files of the right an oblique direction. For this purpose, the two files having marched forward 4 paces, as has been prescribed, execute a *half-turn to the right*, or *to the left*, and march 6 paces in this new direction.

The platoon being unmasked, the remainder of the movement is executed by the commands and following the principles prescribed, No. 426; each file, as it arrives nearly opposite the place it is to occupy, executes a *half-turn to the right*, or *to the left*, so that having left the platoon by one straight line, it arrives upon the new alignment by another.

428.— The two files of the right, or of the left, are made to rein-back 4 paces, and align themselves parallel to the platoon and opposite the place they occupied in it, by the commands: 1. *Two files from right (or left) backwards*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **HALT**; 4. *Right (or left)—DRESS*; 5. **FRONT**. The instructor then commands:

1. *By file right (or left) backward—DRESS*.
2. **FRONT**.

(Pl. 66, *fig. C.*) At the last part of the first command, which is **DRESS**, each file reins back successively, keeping

perfectly straight, the troopers turning the head to the right, and passing a little to the rear of the files already formed, in order to come up abreast of them by a movement to the front, which renders the alignment more easy.

The troopers of the front rank rein-back slowly, those of the rear rank regulate themselves upon their file-leaders, preserving always their proper distance.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The alignment to the rear gives the means of repairing a fault by returning to the alignment when it has been passed over; but it should be avoided as much as possible.

429.— The alignment is then executed by twos (or by fours). For this purpose, the two or four files of the right move forward as has been prescribed, and the instructor commands:

1. *By twos (or by fours) right (or left)*—DRESS.
2. **FRONT.**

At the last part of the first command, which is **DRESS**, the files align themselves successively by twos (or by fours), following the principles prescribed for the alignment by file, being particular to set out and arrive upon the alignment together.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

430.— The instructor observes that the troopers align themselves on the breast of the second man towards the side of the alignment, and not upon the extremity of the rank (which would prevent their remaining square in their seats); that they are neither too much opened nor closed; and, finally, that those of the rear rank are exactly behind their file-leaders. The troopers are also required to align



themselves promptly, that the horses may not be kept a long time *gathered*.

431.— When a platoon is not aligned, it arises from the fact, generally, that the horses are not straight in the ranks.

When a platoon dresses to the right, if the left wing is in rear, it is presumed that most of the horses are turned to the left; it is necessary to observe if this is the case, and to command the troopers to carry the hand slightly to the right, at the same time closing the right leg, which brings the horse upon the alignment.

If, after this movement, some of the troopers are still too much in rear to perceive the line of the rank, they move forward after squaring their horses.

When a platoon dresses to the right, if the left wing is in advance, it is presumed that the horses are turned to the right: the troopers are then required to carry the hand to the left, closing at the same time the left leg, which causes the horse to step-back to his proper place.

If, after this movement, some troopers are still in advance, they rein directly back until they can perceive only the line of the rank.

In dressing to the left, the same faults are corrected by inverse means.

432.— During the alignment, the instructor places himself in front of the troopers, to be assured that they execute the movement steadily, and do not turn the head more than is prescribed; that they do not open the knee in order to feel the boot ; that they prevent their horses from crowding the troopers already formed; that they take the last steps slowly; that they align themselves without losing time as

they arrive; and that they give the hand and replace the legs immediately after being aligned.

For this exercise alone, the assistant-instructor is placed perpendicularly to the flank of the platoon, facing to the left if the alignment is to the right; and facing to the right if the alignment is to the left. He observes that the troopers halt on the same line, and rectifies the alignment in a low voice. At the command **FRONT**, he resumes his place before the platoon.

433.— The instructor insists upon all these principles; but the alignments will be occasionally interrupted by marches in column, in order to calm the horses.

### **Alignment of the platoon.**

434.— The platoon being in line, the instructor places the Corporal of the flank on which he wishes to align it in such a position that no trooper will be forced to rein-back, and commands:

1. *Right (or left)*—**DRESS**.
2. **FRONT**.

At the last part of the first command, which is **DRESS**, all the troopers align themselves promptly, but with steadiness.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

435.— In all the alignments, the Corporal of the opposite flank aligns himself promptly on the one towards the side of the alignment, without respect to the individual alignment of the troopers.

**To open and close the ranks.**

436.— To open the ranks, the instructor commands:

1. *Rear rank open order.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right*—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

(Pl. 66, *fig. D.*) At the command MARCH, the front rank remains immoveable, the rear rank reins-back 6 paces, each trooper preserving the direction of his file-leader. The file-closer reins-back until he is 6 paces from the rear rank. The assistant-instructor moves forward 6 paces, and faces the platoon by a *turn-about to the left*.

At the command *right*—DRESS, the rear rank dresses to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

437.— To close the rank, the instructor commands:

1. *Rear rank close order.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right*—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

(Pl. 66, *fig. E.*) At the command MARCH, the rear rank closes upon the front to the distance of 2 feet, each trooper taking care to preserve the direction of his file-leader. The assistant-instructor resumes his place at the centre of the platoon by a *turn-about to the right*, and the file-closer takes his proper distance from the rear rank.

At the command *right*—DRESS, the platoon is aligned to the right.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

**To rein-back the platoon.**

438.— The platoon being halted, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon backwards.*
2. *Guide right* (or *left*).
3. **MARCH.**

At the command **MARCH**, all the troopers rein-back at once, following the principles prescribed, [Nos. 290](#) and [362](#), regulating their movements by those of the guide.

When the platoon has reined-back some steps, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. **HALT.**
3. *Right* (or *left*)—**DRESS.**
4. **FRONT.**

**To break the platoon by file.**

439.— The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

1. *By file.*
2. **MARCH.**

([Pl. 67, fig. A.](#)) At the command *by file*, the troopers of the first file *gather* their horses, and the others successively, as soon as the file on the right is in motion.

At the command **MARCH**, the first file of the right moves straight to the front ; it is followed by the other files; each file moves off when the haunches of the rear rank

horse of the file which has broken, arrive at the head of the horses of the front rank ; each file marches 6 paces straight to the front, makes a *quarter-turn to the right*, and marches in the new direction until it reaches its place in the column, when it makes a *quarter-turn to the left*.

440.— The instructor observes that the troopers gather their horses and break successively, only at the moment prescribed; that the first file moves straight to the front; that the other files never march less than six paces before obliquing, and do not make more than a *quarter-turn to the right* or *to the left*, in order to rejoin the column.

441.— To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left by file*. 2. MARCH.

### **Direct march in column by file.**

442.— The troopers should keep their horses straight, and march at a free and equal gait; they should keep their eyes to the front, and continue in the direction of the column, so as to perceive only the trooper who marches before them, to march at the same gait with him, preserving always the distance of two feet from head to croup, that his own horse may not tread upon the heels of the horse in front. This distance should be recovered gradually when lost.

The greater the depth of the column, the more attention should the instructor pay to the equality of the gaits, and the preservation of the distances.

**Change of direction.**

443.— The column changes direction to the right or to the left, as prescribed, [Nos. 321](#) and [322](#).

**To halt, and to commence the march in column.**

444.— The column marching, to halt it the instructor commands:

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

At the command HALT, the troopers stop together in the direction of their file-leaders and at their distances, taking care to prevent their horses from stepping back.

445.— To move off the instructor commands:

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers move off steadily together.

446.— The column being at a halt, if the instructor wishes it to commence the move *at a trot*, he conforms to what is prescribed, [No. 337](#). In this case, the assistant-instructor moves off promptly *at the trot*, that the troopers in his rear may take this gait at once, without marching first *at a walk*.

To halt the column marching *at the trot*, conform to what is prescribed, [No. 338](#).

**Individual oblique march.**

447.— The column marching by file, the instructor commands:

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *quarter-turn to the left*, and moves forward in his new direction, all following parallel lines, and regulating themselves towards the right, in order to keep on the same line, and to preserve their distances on that side.

To return to the primitive direction, the instructor commands:

**FORWARD.**

At this command, the troopers return to the original direction, by a *quarter-turn to the right*, in advancing, and move forward in the direction of their file-leaders.

**The platoon marching in column by file, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right, into line.**

448.— The column marching right in front, to form it to the front into line, the instructor commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

(Pl. 68, *fig. A*.) At the command MARCH, the first file continues to march straight forward. The others oblique immediately to the left, march in this new direction, and each file makes a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the place he is to occupy in the platoon.

When the first file has marched 20 paces, the instructor commands HALT. At this command it halts square to the front; the other files come up and form successively on the left of the first, and dress to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right-DRESS*, immediately after HALT, and commands FRONT when the last file is aligned.

449.— The column marching left in front, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left-DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

450.— The column marching right in front, to form it into line upon its left flank, the instructor commands:

1. *Left into line*.
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right-DRESS*.
5. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the first file turns to the left and moves straight forward; the other files continue to march on, and at 2 paces before arriving opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, they turn successively to the left.



When the first file has marched 20 paces, the instructor commands **HALT**. At this command halts; the other files come up and form successively on the left of the first, and dress to the right.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*-**DRESS** immediately after **HALT**, and commands **FRONT** when the last file is aligned.

He observes that the troopers turn exactly upon the point indicated, and before arriving at it do not incline to the side of the formation.

451.— The column marching left in front, to form in line on the right flank, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Right into left*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **HALT**; 4. *Left*-**DRESS**; 5. **FRONT**.

452.— The column marching right in front, to form in line upon the prolongation and in advance of the right flank, the instructor commands:

1. *On right into line.*
2. **MARCH**.
3. **HALT**.
4. *Right*-**DRESS**.
5. **FRONT**.

At the command **MARCH**, the first file turns to the right and moves straight forward; the other files continue to march on, and each turns successively to the right, at 1 pace beyond the point where the one preceding turned.

When the first file has marched 20 paces, the instructor commands **HALT**. At this command it halts; the other files come up and form successively on the left of the first, and dress to the right.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*-**DRESS** immediately after **HALT**, and commands **FRONT** when the last file is aligned.

453.— The column marching left in front, to form in line upon the prolongation and in advance of the left flank, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *On left into line*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **HALT**; 4. *Left*-**DRESS**; 5. **FRONT**.

### **To break the platoon by twos or by fours.**

454.— The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

1. *By twos (or by fours)*.
2. **MARCH**.
3. *Guide left*.

(Pl. 67, *fig. B. and C.*) At the command **MARCH**, the first two or four files of the right move straight to the front; they are followed by the other files, who move off when the haunches of the horses of the rear rank are on a line with the heads of the horses of the front rank. These files march straight forward 8 paces, execute a *quarter-turn to the right* by trooper, and march in this direction until they meet the column, when they take their places in it by making a *quarter-turn to the left*.

The command *guide left*, is given immediately after that of MARCH, that the trooper on the left of the front rank of twos or fours, who becomes guide of the column, may take at once a point of direction.

After breaking by twos, Nos. *two* and *four* being guides keep their eyes to the front. After reaching the column, Nos. *one* and *three* dress upon them.

After breaking by fours, Nos. *four* become guides of each rank.

455.— To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed following the same principles but by inverse means at the commands: 1. *By the left by twos* (or *by fours*); 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

### **Direct march in column by twos or by fours.**

456.— The principles of the direct march in column by file, are applicable to the column by twos or by fours.

The trooper on the left of the first rank of twos (or fours) is guide of the column; he keeps his eyes to the front, moves straight forward, and marches so that the troopers of his rank may be at 1 pace from the croup of the sub-instructor's horse. The trooper on the left of each of the other ranks, who is guide of his rank, preserves the head direct, and keeps at the distance of 2 feet from his file-leader, and in the same direction; the other troopers of each rank look occasionally towards the guide, in order to align themselves and regulate upon him their rate of march. They feel lightly the boot towards that side, and yield to all pressure coming from it. When the march is by fours, they resist all pressure coming from the opposite direction.

When the platoon marches left in front, the guide is to the right, and in other respects the troopers conform to the same principles.

### **Change of direction.**

457.— The column marching by twos or by fours, right or left in front, the instructor commands:

*Head of column to the left (or to the right).*

At this command the assistant-instructor commands:

1. *Left*—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

(Pl. 68, *fig. D. and E.*) At the first part of the first command, which is *left*, the left trooper, who is pivot, prepares to turn at the same gait, the trooper of the opposite side to lengthen his.

At the last part of the command, which is **TURN**, the first rank of twos or fours turns to the left. The pivot turns at the same gait, describing an *arc of a circle of five paces*. The trooper on the opposite side turns in lengthening the gait; the other troopers turn the head towards the marching rank, to regulate their rate of march, feeling at the same time lightly the boot on the side of the pivot.

At the command **FORWARD**, the troopers who had increased the gait resume the precise pace at which they were before moving, and the head of the column marches straight forward in the new direction.

Each rank executes the same movement, on arriving upon the ground where the first has turned.

The assistant-instructor should give the command *left* in sufficient time to command **TURN**, when he is at three

paces from the point indicated for the change of direction; he executes his movement in lengthening slightly the gait without leaving the centre of the front rank, regulating himself upon the marching flank, so as to give the command FORWARD at the instant the front rank, having executed a quarter of a wheel, is in a direction perpendicular to the former one.

458.— When the changes of direction are to be executed at the angles of a limited ground, and the column is marching by fours, the assistant-instructor commands: 1. *Left* (or *right*)—TURN; 2. FORWARD, without waiting for the command *Head of column to the left* (or *to the right*).

459.— The column marching by twos or by fours, the instructor halts it, as prescribed, [No. 444](#).

To commence the march, the instructor commands:

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

### **Individual oblique march.**

460.— The column marching by twos or by fours, the instructor commands:

1. *Left* (or *right*) *oblique.*
2. MARCH.

([Pl. 69, fig. A. and B.](#)) At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *quarter-turn to the left*.

The trooper on the left of the first rank, who is guide of the column, moves straight forward in the new direction,

and parallel to the assistant-instructor. The trooper on the left of each of the other ranks, who is guide of his rank, moves forward also in the new direction, observing the guide of the column so as to keep on the same line and in a parallel direction with him.

The other troopers move forward, looking occasionally to the left so as to align themselves upon their guide. Each one places the left knee behind the right knee of the man on the left, and the head of his horse opposite the lower part of the neck of the horse on his left. The troopers march thus, in each rank, during the oblique march.

To return to the primitive direction, conform to what is prescribed, [No. 447](#).

If the troopers become disunited during the oblique march, they should rejoin the guide of their rank, in gaining more ground to the front than to the side, so as not to lose their alignment nor retard those who march behind them. If the guide of any rank ceases to be on the line of the guide of the column, he lengthens or shortens the pace, without changing the direction in order to recover his place.

461.— To rectify the distances, the degree of obliquity, and to be assured that the guides, as well as the other troopers, are in the same direction, the instructor halts the column at the commands: 1. *Column*; 2. HALT. The column is put again in motion in the oblique direction at the commands: 1. *Column forward*; 2. MARCH.

**The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right, into line.**

462.— The platoon marching in column right in front, to form line to the front, the instructor commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

(Pl. 68, *fig. B. and C.*) At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files continue to march forward; the other ranks of twos (or fours) oblique to the left, march in this direction, and make a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon.

When the first files have marched 20 paces, the instructor commands HALT. At this command they halt square to the front; the other files come up and form successively on their left, and dress to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right—DRESS* immediately after that of HALT, and commands FRONT when the last rank of twos or fours is aligned.

463.— The column marching left in front, the movement is executed following the same principles but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

464.— The column marching right in front, to form line upon its left flank, the instructor commands:

1. *Left into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right*-DRESS.
5. FRONT.

(Pl. 70, *fig. A. and B.*) At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files turn to the left and move straight forward; the other ranks of twos (or fours) continue to march on, and at 3 paces before arriving opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, turn successively to the left.

When the first files have marched 20 paces, the instructor commands HALT. At this command the first files halt; the others come up and form successively on their left, and dress to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*-DRESS, immediately alter that of HALT, and commands FRONT when the two (or four) last files are aligned.

465.— The column marching left in front, to form line upon its right flank, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Right into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left*-DRESS; 5. FRONT.

466.— The column marching right in front, to form line upon the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, the instructor commands:



1. *On right into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right*-DRESS.
5. FRONT.

(Pl. 71, *fig. A. and B.*) At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files turn to the right and move straight forward; the other ranks; of twos (or fours) continue to march on, and each turns successively to the right, at 3 paces beyond the point where the preceding rank has turned.

When the first files have marched 20 paces, the instructor commands: HALT. At this command the first files halt square upon the line; the other files come up and form successively on their left, and dress to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*-DRESS, immediately after that of HALT, and commands FRONT when the two (or four) last files are aligned.

467.— The column marching left in front, to form line upon the prolongation and in advance of its left flank, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *On left into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left*-DRESS; 5. FRONT.

468.— The foregoing explanations have been given for movements by twos or by fours, in order to avoid repetition; but they are executed by fours only after obtaining the necessary precision in the exercise by twos. When these

movements have been executed with regularity *at the walk*, they are repeated *at the trot* and *at the gallop*.

**To form the platoon to the left in one rank.**

469.— The platoon being formed in two ranks, the instructor commands:

1. *Left into single rank.*
2. MARCH.
3. FRONT.
4. HALT.
5. *Right—DRESS.*
6. FRONT.

(Pl. 71, *fig. C*.) At the command MARCH, the front rank moves forward 6 paces, dressing by the right; the trooper on the left of the rear rank turns to the left and moves forward; he is followed by all the other troopers of that rank, who execute successively the same movement.

At the command FRONT, the trooper on the left of the rear rank turns to the right, and the other troopers successively, when they have arrived nearly opposite the place they are to occupy in the rank.

At the command HALT, the trooper on the left halts, and successively the others, on arriving abreast of him.

At the command *Right—DRESS*, all the troopers of the rear rank dress to the right.

At the 6th command, which is FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the 3d command, which is FRONT, the moment that one-third of the rear rank in column have

passed the front rank; he commands right—DRESS, when the trooper on the right of the rear rank has fronted.

### **Manual of arms.**

470.— The platoon being in one rank, the troopers execute at a halt the manual of arms, as prescribed [No. 376](#) and following.

#### **To form the platoon to the right in two ranks.**

471.— The platoon being in one rank, the instructor designates the trooper who is to be on the left of the front rank, also the one to be on the right of the rear rank, and commands:

1. *Right into two ranks.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

([Pl. 71, fig. D.](#)) At the command MARCH, the front rank moves forward 6 paces, dressing by the right; the trooper on the right of the rear rank *turns to the right* as soon as the front rank has passed, and moves forward obliquing to the right; when he is nearly in rear of the trooper on the right of the front rank, he fronts by *turning to the left*. All the other troopers execute successively the same movement, placing themselves exactly behind their file-leaders and at their proper distances.

At the command *right—DRESS*, all the troopers align themselves to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*-DRESS, when the trooper on the right of the rear rank has turned to the front.

472.— The exercise being finished, the troopers are ordered to dismount and file off.

At the command PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, the assistant-instructor moves 12 paces to the front, and faces the platoon by a turn-about to the left; at the same command the file-closer reins back 4 paces, and dismounts with the platoon.

The instructor and assistant-instructor remain mounted, until the last horse in the platoon has filed off.

---

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### **To form twos and fours at the same gait.**

473.— The platoon marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos the instructor commands:

1. *Form twos.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 72, *fig. A*.) At the command MARCH, the first file continues to march on, and halts when it has marched 10 paces; the second file obliques to the left, and comes up abreast of the first; on arriving there, it halts and dresses to the right. All the other files continue to march straight forward, Nos. 2 and 4 executing their movement in the same manner, but successively, and when Nos. 1 and 3,

upon which they should form, have nearly arrived at their proper distance, and are about to halt.

474.— The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours the instructor commands:

1. *Form fours.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 72, *fig. B.*) At the command MARCH, the two first files continue to march on, and halt when they have marched 10 paces; the two following files oblique to the left, and come up abreast of the two first; on arriving there, they halt and dress to the right. All the other files continue to march straight forward, Nos. 3 and 4 executing their movement in the same manner, but successively, and when Nos. 1 and 2, upon which they should form, have nearly arrived at their proper distance, and are about to halt.

475.— When the column is *at a trot*, the formation of twos and fours at the same gait is executed following the same principles. The first, or two first files, pass *to the walk* at the command MARCH; the others continue march *at the trot*, until they have arrived abreast of those on which they should form; then they pass *to the walk*.

When the column is *at a gallop*, the movement is executed following the same principles. The first, or two first files, pass *to the trot* at the command MARCH; the others continue to march *at the gallop*, until they have executed their formation; then they pass *to the trot*.

When twos or fours are formed *at the trot* or *at the gallop*, the guide is announced as soon as the first files have

doubled. In executing the same movements *at a walk*, as the head of the column halts, the guide is not announced.

The column marching left in front, these movements are executed following the same principles and by inverse means.

**To break by twos and by file at the same gait.**

476.— The platoon marching in column by fours, right in front, to break by twos the instructor commands:

1. *By twos.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

(Pl. 72, *fig. C*.) At the command *by twos*, all the troopers prepare to halt, except Nos. 1 and 2 of the leading files.

At the command MARCH, Nos. 1 and 2 of the leading files continue to march at the same gait; all the others halt. Files 3 and 4 of the leading rank oblique to the right the moment they are passed by the croup of the horses of the rear rank o Nos. 1 and 2, and place themselves in column behind them.

Each rank of fours executes successively the same movement, files 1 and 2 breaking as soon as files 3 and 4 of the rank which precedes them have commenced obliquing, in order to enter the column.

Files 1 and 2, which break to the front, regulate their gait so as to preserve their distances; and files 3 and 4 keep their horses straight, so as not to constrain the movements of files 1 and 2.

477.— The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file the instructor commands:

1. *By file.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 72, *fig. D.*) At the command *by file*, all the troopers prepare to halt, except the right file of the leading rank of twos.

At the command MARCH, the right file of the leading rank of twos continues to march at the same gait, all the others halt. The left file of this same rank obliques to the right the moment it is passed by the croup of the rear-rank horse of No. 1, and places itself in column behind the first file.

Each rank of twos executes successively the same movement, files 1 and 3 breaking as soon as files 2 and 4 who precede them have commenced obliquing in order to enter the column.

Files 1 and 3, which break to the front, regulate their gait so as to have their distances. File 2 and 4 keep their horses straight, so as not to constrain the movements of files 1 and 3.

478.— When the column is *at the trot*, to break by twos or by file is executed on the same principles; the right files of the leading rank continue *at the trot*; all the others take *the walk* at the command MARCH, and resumes *the trot*, in order to enter the column; when the column is *at the gallop*, the files which are to break take *the trot* at the command MARCH, and afterwards resume *the gallop* on entering the column.

The instructor observes that the files which break halt, change gait, and put themselves again in motion, with steadiness; that they keep their horses straight, so as not to retard the movements of those which only march forward, and that they retake successively their distances, their directions, and their original gait.

479.— The column marching left in front, the movement is executed, following the same principles but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By twos (or by file) from the left*; 2. MARCH. If the column marches by twos, the guide is indicated to the right, immediately after the command MARCH.

**To form twos and fours in doubling the gait.**

480.— The platoon marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos the instructor commands:

1. *Form twos—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command *form twos—trot*, all the troopers prepare to take *the trot*, except the leading file.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers take *the trot*, except the leading file; the second file obliquely to the left, and comes up abreast of the first; on arriving there it takes *the walk*; all the other files continue to march forward *at the trot*. Files 4 and 2 execute their movement in the same manner, but successively, when 3 and 1, upon whom they are to form, have nearly arrived at their distance, and are about to pass *to the walk*.



481.— The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours the instructor commands:

1. *Form fours—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command *Form fours—trot*, all the troopers prepare to take *the trot*, except the two leading files.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers take *the trot*, except the two leading files; the two following files oblique to the left, and come up abreast of the two first; on arriving there they returns *the walk*; all the other files continue to march forward *at the trot*. Files 3 and 4 execute their movement in the same manner, but successively, when files 1 and 2, upon whom they are to form, have nearly arrived at their distance, and are about to pass *to the walk*.

482.— When the column is *at the trot*, the movement is executed on the same principles. At the command MARCH all the troopers pass *to the gallop*, except the files at the head of the column, and resume *the trot* when their formation is executed.

When the column is *at the gallop*, the movement to form twos or fours is always executed at the same gait, as prescribed, [No. 475](#).

483.— The column marching left in front, the movement is executed, following the same principles but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Form twos (or fours)—trot*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

484.— The instructor observes that the first file to oblique does so immediately after the command **MARCH**; that the gait is doubled with moderation; that the formation extends itself successively from the head to the rear of the column, the files who march straight forward keeping their horses well in hand to prevent their following those which oblique; he observes also that the files which oblique do so a little before arriving at their distances, particularly in marching by fours; and that they never pass beyond the alignment of those on whom they are to form.

**To break by twos and by file in doubling the gait.**

485.— The platoon marching in column by fours; the instructor commands:

1. *By twos—trot.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Guide left.*

At the command *by twos—trot*, files 1 and 2 of the leading rank of fours prepare to *trot*.

At the command **MARCH**, they commence *the trot*; all the other files continue to march *at the walk*; files 3 and 4 take the trot successively and oblique to the right, in order to place themselves in column behind files 1 and 2.

The movement being terminated, the instructor orders *the walk*.

486.— The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file the instructor commands:

1. *By file—trot.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command *by file—trot*, the right file of the leading rank of twos prepares *to trot*.

At the command MARCH, it commences *the trot*; all the other files continue to march *at the walk*; files 2 and 4 assume *the trot* successively and oblique to the right, in order to place themselves behind files 1 and 3 in the column.

487.— When the column is *at the trot*, to break in doubling the gait, the instructor commands: 1. *By twos* (or *by file*); 2. MARCH; which is executed on the same principles.

When the column is *at the gallop*, the movement to break by twos or by file is executed at the same gait, as prescribed, No. 478.

In these movements, the instructor observes that the head of the column changes gait with moderation, and that the troopers who follow do not permit the horses to move off before the moment prescribed.

488.— The column marching left in front, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By twos* (or *by file*) *from the left—trot*; 2. MARCH. If the column is to march by twos, the guide is indicated to the right, immediately after the command MARCH.

489.— As it is important for the precision and regularity of these movements that the troopers should not forget their numbers, the instructor should assure himself of it from time to time.

**Sabre and lance exercise.**

490.— The instructor causes the sabre and lance exercise to be executed at a halt; for this purpose he opens the ranks and commands:

1. *By the left* (or *by the right*)—*open files*.
2. MARCH.
3. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the right trooper of each rank moves forward 6 paces; the one on the left of each rank turns *to the left*, and moves forward; he is followed by all the other troopers of his rank, who execute the same movement as soon as they have the necessary space to put themselves in file at their proper distances. The second trooper from the right of each rank, after having marched three paces, turns and dresses to the right; each of the other troopers look occasionally to the rear, and perform successively the same movement when at three paces from the one who follows him, and dresses upon those already formed; the troopers of the rear rank place themselves exactly behind their file-leaders.

After the command MARCH, the instructor moves to the right of the front rank, and when the second trooper from the right has turned to the front, he commands: *Right*—DRESS. After having rectified the alignment and the distances in the two ranks, he commands: FRONT.

491.— When the instructor wishes to form the platoon, he commands:

1. *To the right (or to the left)—close files.*
2. MARCH

At the command MARCH, the right trooper of each rank moves forward 6 paces; all the other troopers execute a turn to the right and move forward.

Each trooper, on arriving within 2 paces of the place he is to occupy in line, turns to the left, and places himself on the left of the troopers already formed, and dresses to the right.

The instructor closes the ranks as soon as they are formed.

### **To leave the platoon by file.**

492.— The instructor causes the files to leave the platoon, in conforming to what is prescribed, [No. 406](#); he observes that the trooper of the rear rank follows exactly his file-leader.

493. The exercise being terminated, the troopers dismount and file off as prescribed, [No. 472](#).

---

## **ARTICLE THIRD.**

### **Direct march of the platoon in line.**

494.— The principles of the direct march give the troopers the means,

1st. Of preserving the alignment in marching without being disunited;

2d. Of not closing too much, and of recovering the required distances when they have closed;

3d. Of not opening, and of closing upon each other again when they have opened;

4th. Of not throwing the guide out of his direction, and of permitting him to return to it if he has been forced out.

495.— The most important point in the *direct march* being to keep the horses straight in the ranks, it is indispensable that the troopers should preserve the head direct.

To keep themselves aligned, the troopers should feel lightly the boot of the men on the side of the guide, and march at an equal gait.

The troopers should yield to all pressure coming from the side of the guide, and resist that coming from the opposite side.

The guide should always march at a free and steady gait, and change it with steadiness in order to avoid irregularity in the ranks.

If the troopers are in front or in rear of the alignment, too near to or too far from the man on the side of the guide, they move from or approach him gradually, and in gaining ground to the front.

When the guide feels himself thrown out of his direction, he extends his arm to the front to indicate that there is too much pressure towards him. Then the troopers carry the hand towards the opposite side, give a glance to the guide, and straighten their horses as soon as the guide is relieved.

496.— The Corporal of the flank opposite to the guide, is not required to preserve the head direct. He aligns himself upon the guide and the general front of the platoon. The

guide is commanded alternately to the right and to the left, that the troopers may have the habit of dressing equally towards either direction.

When the platoon is halted, the alignment is ordered towards the side of the guide.

When the instructor wishes to exercise the platoon at the direct march, it is conducted to the extremity of a ground of sufficient extent to admit of its marching sometime without changing the direction.

497.— The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

1. *Open files to the left (or to the right).*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers, except the right file, passage to the left, as prescribed. No. 342; the second trooper straightens his horse and halts as soon as he has gained an interval of 1 pace between himself and the trooper of the right.

Each of the other troopers executes the same movement, regulating the interval by the trooper on his right.

The troopers of the rear rank follow their file-leaders, and keep at their proper distances.

The instructor orders the alignment the moment the second trooper from the right has attained his interval.

The troopers being aligned, the instructor indicates to the guide of the right, or of the left, a fixed point in a direction perpendicular to the front of the platoon; he

instructs him to take an intermediate point, never to lose sight of these two points, in order to keep himself always in the proper direction, and to select a more distant point as he approaches the one nearest to him.

To give a point of direction, the instructor places himself exactly behind the right file, or the left file, and indicates to the trooper of the front rank an object on the ground which is immovable and can be distinctly seen, such as a house, a steeple, a mill, a tree; the trooper of the rear rank keeps himself always in file and at his proper distance, so that the front rank man will conceal from him the point of direction indicated.

498.— To march the platoon forward, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers move straight forward, at the same gait with the men on the side of the guide.

As the troopers are not boot to boot, they should give a glance from time to time towards the guide.

During the march the instructor is sometimes at the side of the guide, to assure himself that the troopers march on the same line; and sometimes behind the guide, to observe that he follows the direction indicated.

499.— To halt the platoon, the instructor commands:



1. *Platoon.*
2. **HALT.**
3. *Right (or left)–DRESS.*
4. **FRONT.**

At the command **HALT**, the troopers stop.

At the command *right–DRESS*, they align themselves.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

500.— The troopers having been sufficiently exercised in marching with open files, the instructor halts the platoon, and commands:

1. *Close files to the right (or to the left).*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Right (or left)–DRESS.*
4. **FRONT.**

At the command **MARCH**, all the troopers except the right file passage to the right, as prescribed, [No. 342](#), and resume their places boot to boot.

501.— After having dressed the platoon, it is marched with files closed by the command prescribed, [No. 498](#).

The troopers march straight forward, feeling lightly the boot towards the side of the guide.

502.— When the troopers begin to manage their horses properly *at the walk*, they are required to open and close files, marching at the same gait, taking care not to repeat these movements too often, but to make them march sometime after having opened the files, before closing them, and after having closed the files, before opening them; for this purpose the instructor commands:

1. *Open files to the left (or to the right).*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers except the right file make a *quarter-turn to the left*, at the same time advancing and preserving their alignment; when they are at one pace from the man on the right, they straighten their horses and move forward.

503.— To close files, the instructor commands:

1. *Close files to the right (or to the left).*
2. MARCH.

This movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means. Each trooper should close the leg in sufficient time to prevent his horse from pressing against the one on which he closes.

The files are always opened towards the side opposite to the guide, and closed upon him.

504.— These movements having been executed to the right and to the left in marching *at the walk*, they are repeated *at the trot*, in passing frequently *from the walk to the trot* and *from the trot to the walk*.

The platoon is then exercised in commencing *the trot* from a halt, and in halting while marching at this gait.

505.— After the troopers have been exercised sufficiently in the direct march, to confirm them in the principles the instructor makes use of the following means, which consist in causing faults to be committed that the troopers may learn how to correct them.

The platoon being on the march, the instructor directs the guide to augment or slacken his gait by degrees, and

from time to time without command. He gives notice to the troopers that they must employ the means prescribed to replace themselves upon the alignment.

The instructor next instructs the guide to take a direction which carries him a little out, repeating to the troopers that they should gain ground to the side only in advancing.

When the troopers learn to reclose with steadiness, the instructor directs the guide to take a direction that will cause crowding in the ranks; then the troopers yield to the pressure and gain insensibly ground towards the opposite direction.

The instructor reminds them, that to repair irregularities too rapidly would create new ones.

When the troopers have acquired in the execution of these movements *at the walk* the necessary skill to avoid confusion, they are repeated *at the trot*.

506.— To habituate the files on the flanks to regulate themselves one upon the other, and to observe the general alignment without having regard to the individual alignment, the instructor causes them to move 20 paces to the front, and after having correctly aligned them, he gives to one a point of direction, directing the file on the opposite side to preserve exactly his interval, and to march well aligned; the instructor makes known the point of direction to the trooper on the side of the guide, and directs him to march in such a direction as to be able to come up abreast of the guide, when the platoon returns to its place between the flank-files. After the platoon has marched some time with the flank-files thus detached, the instructor halts them and moves the platoon forward to its place between them, having directed these files not to move.

When the platoon arrives abreast of the flank-files, the instructor halts it and observes that the troopers re-enter their places together with calmness, and without pressing towards the guide.

507.— To exercise the troopers in the direct march *at the gallop*, the progression established for the exercise *at the walk* and *at the trot* is followed, except that the ranks are neither opened nor closed, nor are faults committed to be again repaired. It is essential that the rear rank should preserve exactly its distance.

When marching at a gallop, the platoon should habitually pass *to the trot* and *the walk* before being halted; but when the troopers are masters of their horses, it may be halted sometimes without changing the gait.

### Counter-march.

508.— The platoon having arrived at the extremity of the ground, in order to change the direction the instructor commands:

1. *Counter-march—by the right flank.*
2. *By file to the right.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 73, fig. A.) At the command *counter-march—by the right flank*, the assistant-instructor places himself facing to the rear at 6 paces from the rear-rank, and in such a position that the trooper who is to be placed on his left may find himself in the direction of the left file of the platoon. The file-closer places himself on the right of the platoon, facing to the right, the croup of his horse 1 pace from, and

on the line of haunches of the horses of the rear-rank, in order to mark the wheeling point.

At the command **MARCH**, the trooper on the right of each rank turns to the right, the rear-rank man joining in his movement the front-rank man; they then wheel together to the right, the latter lengthening a little his gait; they pass before the file-closer, very near the croup of the horses of the rear rank, and are followed by the other troopers, who execute successively the same movement, taking care to pass over the same ground.

When the first file is within two paces of the assistant-instructor, who indicates the point on which it is to form, the instructor commands:

1. **FRONT.**
2. **HALT.**
3. *Right*-**DRESS.**
4. **FRONT.**

At the commands **FRONT** and **HALT**, the first file turns to the left and halts, the trooper of the rear-rank taking care to slacken the pace and place himself exactly behind his file-leader. All the other files execute successively the same movement.

At the last command, which is **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*-**DRESS** immediately after that of **HALT**, and commands **FRONT** when the last file is aligned.

The assistant-instructor and file-closer return to their places.

509.— The counter-march is executed by the left, on the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Counter-march—by the left flank*; 2. *By file to the left*; 3. MARCH. And afterwards: 1. FRONT; 2. HALT; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

510.— The instructor observes that the troopers execute with steadiness their turns to the right or to the left, and that they place themselves on a line parallel to the one originally occupied by the platoon.

The counter-march should generally be executed *at the trot*. For this purpose, after the second command, the instructor indicates the gait.

### Wheelings.

511.— There are two kinds of wheels: the wheel on a fixed pivot, and the wheel on a moveable pivot.

The wheel is always on a fixed pivot, except when the command is right (or left)—TURN.

The troopers should execute this movement without disuniting, and without ceasing to observe the alignment.

In every kind of wheel the conductor of the marching flank should measure with his eye the arc of the circle he is to pass over, so that it may not be necessary for the files either to open or close. He turns his head occasionally towards the pivot; if he perceives that the troopers are too much crowded, or too open, he increases or diminishes gradually the extent of his circle, in gaining more ground to the front than to the side.

Each trooper of the front rank should describe his circle in the ratio of the distance at which he may be from the pivot. As these different arcs are all passed over in the

same time, it is necessary that each trooper should slacken his pace in proportion to the distance from the marching flank.

During the wheel, the troopers should turn the head slightly towards the marching flank, to regulate the rapidity of their march and to keep themselves aligned; they should also feel lightly the boot on the side of the pivot, in order to remain closed to that side. They should nevertheless yield to pressure coming from the pivot, and resist that from the opposite direction. The horses are slightly turned towards the pivot, in order to keep them upon the circular line they have to pass over.

When the troopers have opened, they should approach the pivot insensibly, diminishing their circle by degrees, in gaining more ground to the front than to the side. In this case, they give alternately a glance to the pivot and to the marching flank, taking care not to force the pivot.

When the troopers have closed too much, they should endeavor to correct the fault gradually, in increasing their circle by degrees, and gaining more ground to the front than to the side. For this purpose, they give alternately a glance to the marching flank and to the pivot, taking care to feel lightly the boot towards the side of the pivot.

In every kind of wheel, the troopers should cease wheeling and retake the direct march at the command FORWARD, at whatever point of the wheel they may be; it is necessary to observe, also, that the flanks which become pivots, or marching flanks, do not slacken or augment the pace before the command of execution.

**To wheel on a fixed pivot.**

512.— The object of the wheel on a fixed pivot is, when the platoon forms a part of the squadron, to pass from the order of battle to the order of column, and from the order of column to the order of battle.

The trooper who forms the pivot of the wheel turns upon his own ground, without advancing or reining-back, and without passing to the right or to the left, so that the centre of gravity of his horse remains always on the same point. Thus, in wheeling to the right, the shoulders of the pivot horse describe an arc of circle in passing from left to right, while the haunches describe another in passing from right to left.

The trooper at the pivot should turn his head slightly towards the marching flank, that he may continue aligned on the conductor of that flank.

When the platoon is marching, the pivot halts, and the marching flank executes its movement at the same gait as before the wheel.

If the instructor indicates a new gait, in order to wheel, the marching flank wheels at this gait; all the other troopers, who regulate the rapidity of their march in accordance with their distance from the marching flank, take freely the new gait at the command FORWARD.

When the platoon is halted after a wheel on a fixed pivot, the alignment is always ordered towards the side of the marching flank; but as the pivot should never move from its place, the marching flank should come up abreast of it.

When the platoon is marched forward after a wheel on a fixed pivot, the guide is ordered on the side of the marching flank, immediately after the command FORWARD,



unless the movement of the platoon in the squadron requires the contrary.

513.— The wheelings are executed at first in single rank; for this purpose, the front rank is marched forward, and halted when arrived at a distance from the rear rank equal to double its front; the file-closer remains at his place; the assistant-instructor places himself behind the front rank; each of them observes the rank behind which he is placed.

The ranks being aligned, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon in circle right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 73, *fig. B.*) At the command MARCH, the troopers put themselves in motion, turning the head towards the marching flank. The non-commissioned officer who conducts this flank marches *at a walk*, measuring with the eye the extent of the circle he is to pass over, that neither opening nor closing may be caused in the rank, and that the troopers may keep aligned. The pivot man turn upon his own ground, regulating himself upon the marching flank.

The instructor directs the troopers to avoid as far as practicable all pressure in the ranks, which would cause confusion on extended fronts and at rapid gaits.

514.— When the platoon has executed several wheels, to halt it, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. HALT.
3. *Left (or right)—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command **HALT**, the troopers straighten their horses and halt with steadiness.

At the command *left* (or *right*)—**DRESS**, they align themselves towards the side indicated.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

515.— The two ranks are then marched forward, preserving between them the same distance, and made to recommence the wheel. When the instructor wishes the platoon to take the direct march, he commands:

1. **FORWARD.**
2. *Guide left* (or *right*).

At the first command, which is **FORWARD**, the pivot resumes the gait at which it was previously marching.

All the other troopers straighten their horses, and the two flanks move forward at the same gait, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

At the command *guide left* (or *right*), the troopers regulate their movement towards the side indicated.

516.— When the troopers have executed several wheels to the right and to the left, interrupted occasionally by direct marches, and when the horses become calm, the instructor causes them to pass *to the trot*; after several wheels *at the trot*, they resume *the walk*.

517.— If the platoon is wheeling to the right, and the instructor wishes it to change the wheel to the left without halting, he commands:

1. *Platoon in circle left wheel.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the command MARCH, the left flank halts, and becomes the pivot. The right flank assuming the gait at which the left flank was marching, moves forward and describes a circle proportionate to the extent of the front. All the other troopers straighten their horses, and guide them so as to pass over new circles in an inverse sense.

When the troopers begin to wheel regularly, the instructor requires the conductors of the marching flanks to regulate the gait so as to arrive together in line and in column.

518.— The troopers being sufficiently exercised at the wheels in single rank *at the walk* and *the trot*, the ranks are closed and the wheels executed by platoon, in following the same gradation.

The instructor commands:

1. *Platoon in circle right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 73, *fig. C.*) At the command MARCH, the troopers of the front rank execute this movement, as prescribed, No. 513. The troopers of the rear rank turn the head and carry the hand towards the marching flank, so that each one may be out of the direction of his file-leader by two troopers. For this purpose, the moment the wheel commences, each rear rank man executes a *quarter-turn to the left*, sustaining the haunches of his horse with the right leg, when the wheel is to the right, (or a *quarter-turn to the right*, in sustaining the haunches of his horse with the left leg when the wheel is to the left), keeping during the wheel in the direction of his new file-leader, and remaining at the distance of 2 feet from the front rank. The two rear rank

men on the marching flank, who are without file-leaders, should describe their circle without being farther outside of the front rank than is necessary, and be able to resume their places behind their file-leaders easily. During the wheel, they should regulate their gait so that the rear rank, which aligns itself upon them, may be at its proper distance.

519.— To stop the wheel, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. **HALT.**
3. *Left* (or *right*)—DRESS.
4. **FRONT.**

At the command *platoon*, the rear rank men straighten their horses and return to the direction of their file-leaders.

At the command **HALT**, all the troopers stop. At the command *left* (or *right*)—DRESS, they align themselves towards the side indicated.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The platoon is then marched to the front, and made to repeat the same movement.

520.— When the instructor wishes the platoon to resume the direct march, he commands:

1. **FORWARD.**
2. *Guide left* (or *right*).

At the first command, which is **FORWARD**, the rear rank men replace themselves behind their file-leaders, and march straight forward.

521.— The platoon wheeling to the right, to wheel to the opposite side without halting, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon in circle left wheel.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 73, fig. C.) At the command *platoon in circle left wheel*, the rear rank men return to the direction of their file-leaders.

At the command MARCH, the front rank men conform to what is prescribed, No. 517; the rear rank men carry the hand towards the marching flank, as prescribed, No. 518.

The instructor gives the command MARCH, the moment the rear rank men have taken up the direction of their file-leaders.

522.— To give the troopers the habit of correcting faults, the pivot man is directed to bear against the rank, so that the other troopers feeling the pressure from that direction, may learn to gain ground towards the marching flank. The pivot is then directed to gain ground in the opposite direction, which would require the other troopers to approach him gradually.

When the troopers have acquired in the execution of these movements, *at the walk*, the intelligence and skill necessary to avoid confusion, they are repeated *at the trot*.

523.— The platoon being halted, to place it in a direction perpendicular to the original front, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Left (or right)—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

Which is executed on the same principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot.

The instructor gives the command **HALT**, when the marching flank has nearly terminated its wheel.

524.— The platoon being halted, to face it to the rear, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon right-about* (or *left-about*) *wheel*.
2. **MARCH**.
3. **HALT**.
4. *Left* (or *right*)—**DRESS**.
5. **FRONT**.

Which is executed following the principles prescribed, [No. 523](#), the platoon passing over a half circle.

The instructor gives the command **HALT**, when the marching flank has nearly completed the half circle, and the platoon is on a line parallel to the original front.

525.— The platoon being halted, to place it towards its right in a direction oblique to the original front, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon right-half* (or *left-half*) *wheel*.
2. **MARCH**.
3. **HALT**.
4. *Left* (or *right*)—**DRESS**.
5. **FRONT**.

Which is executed on the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot.

The instructor gives the command **HALT**, when the marching flank has nearly completed its half-wheel to the right or to the left.

526.— Before dressing the platoon, the trooper on the marching flank is made to come up abreast of the pivot man, so that the other troopers will not have to rein-back in order to align themselves.

527.— The platoon being on the march, the same movements are executed at the commands: 1. *Platoon right (or left) wheel, right-about (or left-about) wheel, right-half (or left-half) wheel*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **FORWARD**; 4. *Guide right (or left)*.

At the command **MARCH**, the wheeling flank wheels at the gait at which the platoon was marching; the pivot flank halts.

At the third command, which is **FORWARD** the pivot resumes its original pace, and the two flanks move forward at the same gait.

These movements being properly executed from a halt and *at the walk*, are repeated *at the trot*.

### **To wheel on a moveable pivot.**

528.— The wheel on a moveable pivot is employed in the successive changes of direction in column.

In this wheel, the object of the moveable pivot is to leave by degrees the ground on which the movement commences, by advancing in the new direction.

The conductor of the marching flank should increase his gait and describe his arc of circle so as to cause the files neither to open nor close. The pivot describes *an arc of five*

*paces* in slackening the gait. In each rank, the trooper from the centre to the marching flank increase the gait progressively, so that the centre man preserves the gait at which the platoon was marching. The troopers from the centre to the pivot slacken the gait progressively. At the end of the wheel on a moveable pivot, the portion of the rank which had augmented its gait should slacken it, and that which had slackened its gait should augment it. All the troopers straighten their horses; the marching flank and the pivot resume the gait at which they originally marched.

529.— The platoon being on the march, and supposed to be the head of the column, to cause it to change direction, the instructor commands:

*Head of column to the left (or to the right).*

At this command, the assistant-instructor commands:

1. *Left (or right)*—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

(Pl. 73, *fig. D*.) At the first part of the first command, which is *left (or right)*, the pivot prepares to slacken, and the marching flank to augment the gait.

At the second part of the same command, which is TURN, the platoon turns to the left or to the right, the pivot slackening its gait, in describing *an arc of five paces*; the marching flank augments its gait, and regulates itself by the pivot during the whole of the wheel.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, all the troopers straighten their horses, the pivot and marching flank moving forward in the gait at which the platoon was originally marching.



The troopers not having been exercised to wheel *at the gallop* on a fixed pivot, they are made to wheel on a moveable pivot only in marching *at the walk*, that the marching flank which should increase its gait will have to take only *the trot*.

530.— To exercise the troopers in wheeling *at the gallop* on a fixed pivot, the progression established for the exercise *at the walk* and *at the trot* is followed, except that intentional faults are not committed in order to be corrected, and that the platoon is always halted before changing the direction of the wheel.

The instructor changes the gait frequently, and avoids galloping too long to the same hand.

The platoon is exercised also to wheel *at the trot* and *at the gallop*, in setting out from a halt, and to halt while wheeling at these gaits.

### **Individual oblique march.**

531.— The platoon marching in line, to cause it to gain ground towards one of its flanks, without changing the front, the instructor commands:

1. *Right (or left) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 74, *fig. A*.) At the command MARCH, the troopers execute all at the same time a *quarter-turn to the right*, so that the head of each horse may be opposite the extremity of the neck of the horse on his right, and that the right knee of each trooper may be in rear of the left knee of the trooper on his right. This first movement being executed, the

troopers move forward in the new direction, regulating themselves upon the guide.

When the platoon has obliques sufficiently, the instructor commands:

### FORWARD.

At this command, the troopers straighten their horses, and move forward regulating themselves upon the guide.

In the oblique march, the guide is always on the obliquing side, without being indicated; and after the command FORWARD, the guide returns, without indication, to the side on which it was originally.

When the troopers are not closed they should increase progressively the gait, in order to approach the side towards which they march; they should insensibly slacken the gait if they are too much closed, or more advanced than the flank towards which they oblique. All these movements are executed in gaining more ground to the front than to the side.

532.— The platoon marching *at the walk*, to execute the oblique *at the trot*, the instructor commands: 1. *Right* (or *left*) *oblique—trot*; 2. MARCH.

When the platoon has obliques sufficiently, the instructor commands: FORWARD.

The guide observes particularly to commence *the trot* without precipitation.

The same course is observed if the platoon in marching *at the trot*, and the object is to oblique *at the gallop*.

**The platoon marching in line, to break it by fours or by twos at the same gait.**

533.— The instructor commands:

1. *By fours* (or *by twos*).
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left*.

At the command MARCH, the four (or two) first files of the right continue to march forward at the same gait; the other files halt and break successively by fours (or by twos), as prescribed, No. 454.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by file the movement is executed on the same principles, the first file only continuing to march forward.

534.— The platoon marching *at the trot*, it is broken on the same principles, the first files continuing to march at the same gait, all the other files assume *the walk* at the command MARCH, and resume *the trot* as they break from the platoon.

The same course is observed when the platoon marches *at the gallop*; the first files continue to march at that gait, the others assume *the trot* at the command MARCH, and resume *the gallop* as they commence to oblique.

535.— To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By fours* (or *by twos*) *from the left*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

**The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it at the same gait.**

536.— The platoon marching in column, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *Form platoon.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

The movement is executed as prescribed for *front into line*, No. 462.

537.— The platoon marching in column *at the trot*, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *Form platoon.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files pass to the walk; the other files continue to march at the same gait, oblique immediately to the left, march straight forward in this direction, make a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, and pass to the walk on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

At the command *guide right*, they dress towards the right.

538.— When the column is *at the gallop*, the platoon is formed on the same principles. The two (or four) first files take *the trot*, at the command MARCH; the other files continue to march *at the gallop*, and take *the trot* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

When the column is marching by file, the platoon is formed on the same principles.

539.— The column marching left in front, the platoon is formed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Form platoon*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

**The platoon marching in line, to break it by fours or by twos, in doubling the gait.**

540.— The instructor commands:

1. *By fours (or by twos)—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, the four (or two) first files of the right take *the trot*; the others continue to march *at the walk*, and take successively the trot when they oblique to the right, in order to enter the column.

541.— The platoon marching *at the trot*, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours (or by twos)—gallop.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 540.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by file, the movement is executed on the same principles.

When the platoon marches *at the gallop*, it is always broken without doubling the gait.

542.— To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at

the commands: 1. *By fours* (or *by twos*) *from the left—trot* (or *gallop*); 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

**The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it in doubling the gait.**

543.— The platoon marching in column, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *Form platoon—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files continue to march forward at the same gait; the other files take *the trot*, oblique immediately to the left, march in this direction, make a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, and pass *to the walk* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

At the command *guide right*, they dress towards the right.

544.— The platoon marching in column *at the trot*, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *Form platoon—gallop.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

Which is executed as prescribed, Nr. 543.

When the column is *at the gallop*, the platoon is always formed at the same gait.

When the column is marching by file, the platoon is formed on the same principles.

545.— The column marching left in front, the platoon is formed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Form platoon—trot* (or *gallop*); 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

**Movements by fours, the platoon being in column or in line.**

546.— The platoon being in column, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours—left* (or *right*) *wheel*.
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 74, *fig. B*.) At the command MARCH, each rank of fours executes its wheel to the left, according to the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot; Nos. 4 turn upon themselves, sustaining with the left leg the haunches of their horses, in order not to constrain the movement of the rank immediately behind them; all the troopers regulate themselves towards the marching flanks.

The movement being nearly completed, the instructor commands:

1. HALT.
2. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
3. FRONT.

At the command HALT, the troopers straighten their horses and halt with steadiness.

In this movement, the front and rear-rank execute, separately, a wheel on a fixed pivot. Each rank of fours belonging to the rear-rank, is placed at the side of the rank of

fours, composed of its file leaders. When the movement is terminated, the platoon is in one rank.

547.— The platoon being in one rank, it is put again in column by the commands prescribed, [No. 546](#); then the troopers of the rear-rank are placed in front of their file-leaders. In executing again two *wheels to the left by fours*, the platoon is put in its natural order.

In the first *wheel to the left by fours*, the leading rank of fours should execute its movement slowly, in order to give the others time to execute theirs; but in the second *wheel to the left by fours*, the last rank of fours, which becomes head of the column, should execute its movement in lengthening a little the gait, so as not to retard the rear of the column.

548.— The platoon being in column, and having executed a *wheel to the left by fours*, as prescribed, [No. 546](#), which puts it in a single rank, to face it in the opposite direction, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours left-about (or right-about) wheel.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each rank of fours *wheels to the left-about* on the principles prescribed for the *wheel to the left by fours*.

To halt after having wheeled about, the instructor commands:

1. HALT.
2. *Right (or left)–DRESS.*
3. FRONT.



To put the platoon again in column in the natural order, the instructor causes to be executed a *wheel to the left by fours*.

549.— When the column is marching, the movement is executed as prescribed, No. 546, observing that, at the command MARCH, the pivots halt immediately and turn upon themselves, supporting with the left leg the haunches of their horses.

The movement being nearly terminated, the instructor commands:

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide right (or left)*.

At the first command, which is FORWARD, the pivots and all the other troopers, conforming to the principles of the direct march, regulate themselves towards the guide.

550.— The platoon marching in column, and having made one wheel to the left by fours, which puts it in single rank, the instructor causes to be executed a *wheel to the left-about* (or *to the right-about*) by fours; the movement being nearly terminated, he commands:

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide right (or left)*.

To put the platoon again in column in the natural order, the instructor causes to be executed a *wheel to the left (or to the right)* by fours, and indicates the guide to the left.

551.— The platoon marching in column by fours, right in front, to cause it to march to the rear, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours left-about (or right-about) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right (or left).*

Which is executed on the principles prescribed, [No. 548](#), observing that the ranks of fours should finish the movement at the same time; that they should commence the last half of the wheel gently, regulating themselves upon the last rank of fours, which becoming the head of the column, lengthens the gait so as not to retard the others. After this movement, the troopers of the rear rank are placed in front of their file-leaders.

To put the column again in the natural order, the instructor causes to be executed a *wheel to the right-about (or to the left-about)* by fours.

552.— The platoon being in line, to cause it to gain ground toward its right or toward its left, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left (or right).*

The platoon having *wheeled to the right by fours*, the troopers are formed upon a front of eight. Each rank of fours having executed the movement separately, the four troopers of the rear rank find themselves on the right of the four troopers of the front rank. \*

It is the reverse if the movement is executed by the left.

\* When it is necessary to break a platoon by fours, and there is not sufficient space in front, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *By fours.*
4. MARCH.
5. *Guide left (or right).*

At the second command, the platoon wheels to the right by fours. At the fourth command, the first set of fours on the right of the front rank moves forward; when the croups of their horses are opposite the men of the set of fours of the rear rank on their right, this set turn their horse's heads to the left, and by an oblique march cover their front-rank men: and so on successively. The sets of fours of the front rank take care not to leave more space between them, and the set of fours of the front rank which precedes them, than is sufficient to admit the set of fours from the rear rank.

This movement to the left is executed by inverse means.

---

553.— The platoon having *wheeled to the right (or to the left) by fours*, and being upon the front of eight, to change the direction, the instructor commands:

*Head of column to the left (or to the right).*

At this command the assistant-instructor commands:

1. *left (or right)*—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 457](#), each rank of eight wheeling upon the same ground with the first as they reach it.

554.— To put the platoon again in line, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours left (or right) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

555.— The platoon having *wheeled to the right* (or *to the left*) *by fours*, and being formed upon a front of eight, to march to the rear in this order, the instructor causes to be executed a *wheel to the right-about* or *left-about*, as prescribed, [No. 550](#).

556.— The platoon being in line, to cause it to march to the rear, the instructor commands:

1. *By fours left-about* (or *right-about*) *wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right* (or *left*).

([Pl. 74, fig. C.](#)) After this movement, the rear rank is before the front rank, and the ranks of fours are inverted throughout the platoon.

In the march to the rear, the platoon conforms to principles of the direct march. The instructor requires the same precision as when they march in the natural order.

The platoon is faced to the front by the same movement.

557.— Before commencing the movements by *fours*, the instructor assures himself that the troopers know their numbers, and that those of the rear rank are at their proper distance. He observes that the pivots do not slacken the gait at the preparatory command; that they halt and turn without reining back, at the command MARCH; that they gain ground to neither side, and sustain the haunches of their horses, regulating themselves upon the marching flanks; finally, that the men on the marching flanks turn their horses slightly toward the pivots, and that they commence and close the movement gently.

558.— In the flank movements, the assistant-instructor places himself on the side of the guide, abreast of the leading rank of eight. The file-closer *turns to the right* (or *to the left*,) and marches at his place when the platoon is in line.

In the wheels to the right or left-about, the platoon being in line, the assistant-instructor and file-closer wheel about separately, and are placed, the assistant-instructor behind the centre of the platoon, and the file-closer in front of the centre of the rear rank become the front.

559.— The movement by *fours* should be executed *to the right* and *to the left* alternately, and at all the gaits, except *the gallop*.

When the column is marching right in front, it wheels by *fours to the left-about*; and when left in front, it wheels by *fours to the right-about*.

560.— The platoon marching in line with open ranks, and the files 1 pace apart, the troopers are made to execute the manual of arms.

561.— The platoon marching in column by file, the troopers having the distance of 3 paces, the instructor causes the exercise of the sabre to be executed; for that of the lance they take the distance of 5 paces.

The exercise being terminated, the troopers are ordered to dismount and file off.

---

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

### Running at the heads.

562.— (Pl. 75.) To perfect the troopers in conducting their horses and in the use of their arms, the are exercised at the running at the heads.

For this purpose, four heads made of canvas and stuffed with hay, are placed upon wooden posts 5 feet 6 inches high, and ranged upon the two long sides of the riding ground. They should be numbered 1, 2, 3, and 4, and all placed at one pace from the track except No. 2, which is at two paces, and at which the trooper fires his pistol.

The first head is placed opposite the left of each rank.

The second, at an equal distance from the first and the third; the third at the middle of the long side.

The fourth is placed opposite the right of each rank.

In order to calm the horses, the instructor causes the troopers to make several turns upon the track, to both hands, *at the walk* and *at the trot*.

The troopers are then formed at the extremities of the ground by the movement **FRONT**, so that the two ranks

face each other, the back towards the short sides and at 6 paces from the track. The pistols are then loaded.

Only two troopers execute the course at the same time. The instructor designates the one upon whom the other is to regulate himself.

563.— At a notice from the instructor, the trooper on the left of each rank places himself upon the track in front of the corner of the riding ground, and in rear of the left of his rank. Both troopers *draw*—PISTOL, cock it, and take the position of *raise*—PISTOL, holding themselves ready to commence the march, (*fig. A, a.*)

At the command MARCH, the two troopers move off *at a walk*; on arriving abreast of head No. 3, they take *the trot*, (*fig. B, b.*), and at the first corner they take *the gallop*, (*fig. C, c.*). They pass behind the opposite rank, continue to follow the track, observing to keep their horses steady; pass behind their own rank, and when they come near head No. 2 [*fig. D, d.*], they lower the pistol, the arm half extended, aim and fire, taking care to keep their horses well in hand; they then return the pistol, draw the sabre, carry it to the shoulder, and take the position of GUARD. The two troopers pass again behind the rank opposite to their own, and continue to march upon the track, taking the position of the first motion of *front*—CUT, as prescribed, No. 124.

Having arrived at head No. 1, (*fig. E, e.*), which is on the left of the rank opposite to their own, they cut it vertically; they then take the position of the first motion of *right*—CUT, No. 126 (*fig. F, f.*)

Having arrived at head No. 3, they cut it horizontally (*fig. G, g.*), and then take the position of the first motion of *in quarte*—POINT, No. 118 (*fig. H, h.*).

Having arrived at head No. 4, they give point, take it off, and elevate the sabre to the full extent of the arm, the blade and the wrist perpendicular to the right shoulder.

They pass for the second time behind their own rank. At the middle of the long side, they take *the trot* and then *the walk*; on arriving abreast of the opposite rank, they leave the track, take the shortest route (*fig. J, j.*) to the right of their own rank, passing by the rear, and return the sabre.

As soon as the two troopers have taken *the trot*, they are replaced by the next trooper on the left of each rank; and so on throughout the two ranks, until the course is executed.

564.— The instructor reminds the troopers that the essential point is to conduct their horses well, and that they should not in any case derange the position of the body or of the bridle-hand. It is prohibited to put balls in the pistols, as the blank cartridge is sufficient to blow off the head.

565.— This exercise is then recommended, the troopers exercising *to the left hand*; the first trooper on the right of each rank places himself upon the track, and conforms to what has been prescribed for the exercise *to the right hand*.

To fire the pistol, heads No. 2 change sides and are placed between Nos. 3 and 4, and at two paces from the track on arriving at head No. 4, which is on the right of the opposite rank, the troopers take the position of the first motion of *left*—CUT, No. 125, and cut it vertically. On arriving at head No. 3, they retake the position of the first motion of *left*—CUT, and cut it horizontally. On arriving at



head No. 1, they take the position of the first motion of *left-POINT*, No. 119, and give point.

566.— Lancers execute the same course in pointing all the heads, which are placed for this purpose on the alignment of head No. 2.

567.— That the running at the heads may be better understood, the instructor causes it to be executed *at the walk*, halting the troopers after the execution of each movement. When the troopers have performed it several times, first *at the walk* and then *at the trot*, it is executed *at the gallop*.

### **To leap the ditch and the bar.**

568.— The instructor causes the troopers to leap the ditch and the bar by twos and by fours, and then by platoon, observing the principles prescribed, Nos. 414, and following, the troopers taking care to avoid being constrained, as much as possible.

When a platoon formed in two ranks is to leap the ditch or the bar, the rear rank halts at the commands: 1. *Rear rank*, 2 **HALT**, given by the chief of the platoon, when it arrives at 10 paces from the ditch. The rear rank moves without command after the front rank has leapt.

### **To charge by platoon.**

569.— The charge will be practiced by file, by twos, fours, and sections, before the charge by platoon.

The troopers being instructed in the individual charge, No. 418, to charge by platoon the instructor orders the sabre to be drawn. The platoon is commanded by the assis-

tant-instructor, that the instructor may be able to move wherever he can best observe the faults.

The opposite line is marked out 200 paces to the front, by two troopers, the distance of the front of the platoon apart, and facing each other.

To commence the move, the assistant-instructor commands:

1. *Platoon forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. MARCH.

When the platoon has marched 20 paces, the assistant-instructor commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At 60 paces farther, he commands:

1. *Gallop.*
2. MARCH

At 80 paces farther, he commands: CHARGE.

At this command, the troopers of both ranks take the position of *raise*—SABRE. (Lancers, front rank, *charge*—LANCES, rear rank, *carry*—LANCES, disengaged from the boot). They give hand and lengthen the gallop, without losing control of their horses or disuniting.

When the platoon arrives at 20 paces from the troopers who trace the new line, the assistant-instructor commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoon.*
3. **HALT.**
4. *Right* (or *left*)—**DRESS.**
5. **FRONT.**

At the command *attention*, the troopers carry the sabre to the shoulder. (Lancer, carry the lance).

At the command *platoon*, they take *the trot*. At the command **HALT**, they stop.

At the command *right*—**DRESS**, they align themselves to the right.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

570.— The troopers should be exercised at the charge with the greatest care, without being required to repeat it too often.

The instructor requires *the gallop* to be kept up; he sees that the troopers preserve ease in the ranks; that they hold a light hand, so that the horses not being constrained in their movements may not become too restive. He observes that the troopers carry the upper part of the body a little forward in order to aid the impulsion, remaining at the same time well seated, which gives them a facility in conducting their horses and using the sabre; finally, that the rear rank keeps at its proper distance. It is better, however, that the rear rank should have too much than too little room.

The instructor explains to the troopers, that it is in keeping their horses in hand, in causing them to feel from time to time the effect of the bit, in moving parallel to the flank files, and remaining always abreast of them, that the shock of the charge becomes the greatest. Finally, the instructor

directs the troopers not to change the gait before the command, and to lengthen the gallop only at the command CHARGE.

### **Rallying.**

571.— To exercise the troopers in rallying, the platoon is formed at the extremity of the ground, the sabres are drawn, and the signal *to disperse, No. 10.* is sounded; at this signal, the troopers disperse and charge as foragers; the instructor and the flank files remain in place, to mark out the rallying point. When the troopers have marched 150 or 200 paces, the instructor orders *the rally, No. 6.* to be sounded.

At this signal, the troopers *wheel to the left-about*, rejoin the platoon by the shortest line, and resume their places in the ranks.

The rallying should be executed rapidly but without noise, the troopers entering the ranks always by the rear.

As soon as two-thirds of the troopers have joined, the instructor commands the platoon to move forward. The first time, the platoon is rallied *at the trot*, and then at *the gallop*. This movement is repeated without retaining the flank files; in this case, the troopers rally behind the instructor.

### **Skirmishing.**

572.— The platoon being supposed to form a part of the squadron, it is dispersed as skirmishers, in order to cover the front and the flanks of the squadron.

The platoon being in line at the extremity of the ground, the instructor causes the schabraques to be raised, the holsters uncovered, and the arms loaded; he marches the

platoon forward, and when he wishes to disperse the troopers as skirmishers, he commands:

1. *Six files from right—as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

(Pl. 76.) At the first command, the file-closer places himself in front of the six files of the left, of whom he takes command.

These six files are destined to support the skirmishers and to relieve them.

At the command MARCH, the file-closer commands HALT to the six files of the left, and causes them to draw the sabre.

At the same command, the six files of the right continue to march forward; after going 10 paces, they disperse as skirmishers, extending themselves so as to cover the supposed front of a squadron, in passing beyond each of its flanks. The right trooper obliques to the right, the left trooper to the left. The troopers of the rear rank come up as soon as possible, abreast of the front rank, each one placing himself on the left of his file-leader, and as soon as they are in line, all take the position of *advance*—CARBINE, or *raise*—PISTOL. They continue to march until the signal *halt*, No. 2.

The instructor causes the *halt* to be sounded when the skirmishers are at 100 or 150 paces from the reserve.

The troopers keep at 5 paces apart, regulating themselves towards the guide during the whole time they act as skirmishers.

The assistant-instructor places himself in rear of the skirmishers, in order to superintend their movements.

573.— The chief of the platoon, followed by his Trumpeter, places himself half way between the skirmishers and the reserve; he moves along the line wherever he thinks his presence most necessary. The reserve and the skirmishers execute their movements at the signals of the Trumpeter who follows the officer.

If the chief of the platoon wishes the skirmishers to move forward, he causes the *forward, No. 1*, to be sounded; each skirmisher moves forward, regulating his movements by those of the guide and preserving his interval; the reserve follows them, keeping at its proper distance.

To move the skirmishers towards the right, *to the right, No. 4*, is sounded; each trooper turns to the right and marches in the direction of those who precede him, taking care to preserve his distance ; the reserve also turns to the right.

To face the skirmishers again to the front, *to the left, No. 3*, is sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve turn to the left.

To move the skirmishers towards the left, *to the left, No. 3*, is sounded ; each skirmisher turns to the left and marches in the direction of those who precede him, taking care to preserve his distance. The reserve also turns to the left

To face the skirmishers again to the front, *to the right, No. 4*, is sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve turn to the right.

If, after having turned to the right, the instructor wishes the skirmishers to move towards the opposite side, he orders the *about, No. 5*, to be sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve *turn to the left-about*, and move forward.

If, after having turned to the left, the instructor wishes the skirmishers to move towards the opposite side, he causes the *about, No. 5*, to be sounded: the skirmishers and the reserve *turn to the right-about*, and move forward.

During the flank movements, if the troopers are to continue firing, they leave the column and face the enemy for that purpose. As soon as they have fired, they resume their places in the column in doubling the gait.

(Pl. 77.) The skirmishers are marching to the front or at a halt; if the instructor wishes the line to move to the rear, the chief of the platoon orders the *retreat* to be sounded. At this signal, the troopers of the front rank move forward 5 paces, fire, then *turn to the left-about*, in order to move to the rear, and retire loading their pieces. When they have marched 50 paces, or more if necessary, the chief of platoon causes the *about, No. 5*, to be sounded. At this signal, the troopers, who were retiring, face to the front by turning *to the right-about*. The troopers who are in the first line fire and turn *to the left-about*, retire in loading their pieces, pass in the intervals of the line which is in rear, move 50 paces farther, and face to the front at the signal the *about, No. 5*.

The troopers of the line which is in rear, move 5 paces to the front the moment the troopers who retire pass into their intervals; they then commence firing by the flank indicated.

The alternate movement of the two lines, continues as long as the skirmishers move to the rear. When the instruc-

tor wishes the retreat to cease, the chief of platoon orders *forward*, No. 1, to be sounded. The skirmishers who are in rear move up, in doubling the gait, abreast of those the most advanced, and all march forward until the signal to *halt*, No. 2, is sounded.

If the instructor wishes the whole line of skirmishers to retire at once, he orders the *about*, No. 5, to be sounded.

The reserve retires and faces to the front, regulating its movement by that of the skirmishers, so as to remain always at 60 paces from the 2d line. It executes its rear movement at the moment the retreating line passes into the intervals of the line which moves forward.

574.— The rallying of skirmishers is always made on the point occupied by the officer.

To rally the skirmishers, the officer places himself habitually in front of the reserve, and causes the *rally*, No. 6, to be sounded. At this signal the skirmishers *turn-about*, rally on the reserve by the shortest route, and draw the sabre.

If the officer is not with the reserve when the *rally*, No. 6, is sounded, the skirmishers rally upon him, and the reserve comes up and joins them. The troopers are thus exercised to rally upon any point whatever of the line.

575.— If a defile is presented in advance of the front of the line, and orders are given to pass it, the troopers who are opposite first enter it; they are followed at some distance by the other troopers, who *turn by trooper to the left and to the right*, in order to put themselves in file.

As soon as the first have passed the defile, they move 50 or 60 paces to the front; the others come up abreast of them



in obliquing, those of the right to the right, and those of the left to the left. The reserve enters the defile when the first skirmishers have reconnoitered it.

If the skirmishers are to pass a defile placed in rear, they commence by approaching it; when the reserve is at a suitable distance it passes rapidly, and posts itself 50 or 60 paces from, and on the side of the passage.

The two troopers who are on the flank, *turn-about to the left*, move to the rear so as to arrive together at the entrance of the defile, which they pass immediately. They are followed closely by the other troopers, who execute successively the same movement; the centre troopers, who cover the defile, enter it the last.

At the going out of the defile, the two troopers who are in front turn, one to the left and the other to the right; and when all the troopers have passed the defile, they stop at the signal to *halt*, No. 2, and face to the front.

The instructor sometimes rallies the skirmishers immediately after having passed the defile, either to the front or to the rear.

576.— These movements are at first executed *at the walk*, then *at the trot*, and finally, *at the gallop*. When the troopers have learned to perform these movements well, they are exercised at them in executing the manual of arms, and in firing; and finally, with the overcoats rolled and carried over the shoulder. When the troopers are *at the gallop*, and the instructor wishes them to pass *to the trot*, he orders the *trot*, No. 7, to be sounded; when they are *at the trot*, and he wishes them to pass *to the walk*, he orders the *halt*, No. 2, and then the *forward*, No. 1, to be sounded.

577.— To commence or to cease firing, the signal is sounded [No. 9 and No. 24]. All the troopers do not fire at once, but one after another, commencing on the side of the guide. They afterwards continue firing without waiting for, or being governed by each other. Each rear-rank man has an understanding with his file-leader that, as far as practicable, the piece of one may be always charged while the other is loading; the troopers of the same file should give a mutual support to each other.

When the platoon skirmishes without gaining ground to the front, the skirmishers should nevertheless keep in motion always; each trooper of the front tank, after having fired, moves some steps to the rear, at the same time loading his piece; and as soon as he returns to the line, the rear-rank man of the same file fires, and moves in his turn to the rear.

In the charge as foragers, the men of the rear-rank approach within one or two paces of their file-leaders, to be able to Support each other mutually.

As soon as the skirmishers charge, the reserve moves forward to support them.

The skirmishers retire by *turning-about to the left*, and face again to the front by *turning-about to the right*. When they have reformed in platoon, they return the pistol to the holster, or drop the carbine, and draw the sabre. (*Lancers* carry the lance.)

578.— To relieve skirmishers, the instructor commands to the reserve:

1. *Six files from left—as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, the reserve disperses and moves up upon the line of old skirmishers. The right trooper of the front-rank passes on the right of the right skirmisher of the front rank; the right trooper of the rear-rank on the right of the right skirmisher of the rear-rank, and so on throughout, each one passing to the right of the one he relieves, and 5 paces beyond him. The old skirmishers *turn-about*, and rally *at a gallop* on the officer, who during the movement is placed at the point where the six files now become the reserve should reform.

The non-commissioned officer who commanded the six files of the left, now takes command of the six files of the right.

If there are two non-commissioned officers with the platoon, each one follows the portion of the platoon to which he is attached.

DRAGOONS.—The dragoons having been sufficiently exercised in all the movements of skirmishing, will be taught to dismount and form with celerity to fight on foot.

At the commencement, all the movements of this instruction will be decomposed, in order to make them better understood.

The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

*1 time, 4 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is ON FOOT, prepare to dismount as prescribed, No. 292.

2. Execute what is prescribed, to dismount, No. 292; Nos. 4, of each rank, will remain mounted.

3. Return to the ranks as prescribed, No. 292, face to the right, pass the reins with the right hand over the head of the horse, seize the extremity of the reins with the left hand, seize them again with the right hand, 6 inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails upward; face to the front, and hook up the sabre without letting go the reins.

4. Face-about to the right, seizing the reins with the left hand, 6 inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails downward, slip the right hand to the extremity of the reins; Nos. 3, of each rank, give the reins to Nos. 4, who remain mounted; Non. 2 and 1 engage the end of the reins with both hands, in the head-stall of the bridle of the horse which is on the left, passing them under the nose-band and the cheek-piece of the bridle, and tying them in a slip-knot, so that each horse may be about one foot from the one to which he is tied; face again to the front by the right, unsling the carbine, and come to a carry.

The instructor commands:

*Dragoons*—INTO LINE.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is INTO LINE, move twelve paces to the front, turning the back upon the platoon of horses; half the rear-rank pass to the right by the right-flank, the other half to the left by the left-flank, and place themselves behind their file-leaders.

Nos. 4, who remain on horse-back, have charge of the dismounted horses; they take the end of the reins of the first dismounted horse in the left hand, holding them near the bit with the right hand, the nails downward; an assistant-instructor, or file-closer of the platoon, remains with the dismounted horses to direct them.

The dragoons having been sufficiently exercised at the different movements of this instruction, will be required to execute them rapidly without stopping at the several motions, and at the single command, *prepare to fight on foot*, given by the instructor.

The two ranks being formed, the platoon will be conducted where it is to fight on foot, and will be there exercised in what has been prescribed, [Nos. 211, 215, 239](#).

The dismounted horses will also be exercised in changing position, by marching by rank and by fours.

When the instructor wishes the dragoons to remount, he will rally them if they are dispersed as skirmishers, as prescribed, [No. 239](#).

The platoon being rallied and formed, the instructor commands:

*Dragoons about—FACE.*

He conducts the platoon rear-rank in front; having come within 12 paces of the horses, he commands:

*Dragoons—MOUNT.*

At this command, the dragoons return to their horses rapidly, without alarming them; they sling carbine, mount, and draw the sabre.

The command, *dragoons*—MOUNT, at the commencement, will be executed in 4 motions and from a halt, that the troopers may better understand it. For this purpose, the platoon being rallied and marching with the rear-rank in front, is halted 12 paces from the horses; the instructor then commands:

*Dragoons*—MOUNT.

1 time, 4 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is MOUNT, sling the carbine.

2. Rejoin the horses, the rear-rank men passing to the left and right, as prescribed in dismounting; untie the horses, pass the reins over the neck, unhook the sabre, and take the position of the trooper before mounting, prescribed, [No. 267](#).

3. Execute the two times of *prepare to mount*, as prescribed, [No. 268](#).

4. Execute the two times of *mount*, as prescribed, [No. 268](#); adjust the reins, return to the ranks, and draw the sabre.

The platoon being formed, the instructor will exercise it again in what has been prescribed, [Nos. 569](#), and following.

## SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON, MOUNTED.

579.— The object of the *school of the squadron* is to instruct the platoons to execute together what they have been taught separate, and to prepare the squadron to perform what it will be required to do when a part of the regiment.

The squadron is composed as prescribed, [Title 1st, Article 1st](#).

The dress of the troopers, and the horse-equipage, are the same as prescribed for the *school of the platoon*.

The *school of the squadron* being the base of the *evolutions of the regiment*, the Captain commanding observes that the chiefs of platoons execute with regularity what required of them, and that they give the commands at the proper time and in the proper tone. He requires the particular guides, the file-closers, and the non-commissioned officers on the flanks, to act with calmness and without hesitation in the different movements.

The Captain commanding causes the officers to alternate in the command of the platoons, that they may become familiar with all the positions in the squadron.

He observes the same course with the non-commissioned officers, and gives them sometimes the command of a platoon, to enable them to replace an officer should it become necessary.

To make the formations in line better understood, they are executed at first from a halt. In this case each platoon performs its movements separately and successively, at the command of its chief, on receiving notice from the Captain commanding.

Each movement, after having been correctly executed by the right, is repeated by the left.

When the squadron has acquired calmness and confidence, and one Article is well understood, this Article is repeated with sabres drawn, and alternately at all the gaits except the *wheels to the right, to the left, to the right-about, and to the left-about by fours, the counter-march, the wheels on a moveable pivot by squadron, the individual oblique marches when marching by squadron*, which are executed only *at the walk and at the trot*.

The troopers are made *to mount* and *to dismount* by the times, but without explanation.

The squadron is exercised at the manual of arms once a week; this is done in open ranks; the second Captain superintends the rear-rank.

The Captain commanding requires the distances between the platoons to be observed exactly in all the movements; he sees that the troopers are not constrained, and that the rear-rank men are not only in the direction of their file-leaders, but that there is always two feet between the head of their horses and the croup of those of the front-rank.

The second Captain is charged with the alignment of the rear-rank and the rank of file-closers; he resumes his place in line at the command **FRONT**.

The Captain commanding moves wherever his presence is most required; the troopers are required to observe absolute silence, and all rectifications are done by signs, or in a low voice.



## ARTICLE FIRST.

580.— The squadron being formed in two ranks opened, the non-commissioned officers and troopers at the head of their horses, the chiefs of platoon mounted, at 10 paces from, and facing the centre of their platoons, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right—DRESS*
3. *FRONT.*

He then commands:

*In each platoon—and in each rank—COUNT (by) fours.*

At this command, the troopers count off in the four platoons at once, commencing on the right of each rank.

The Captain commanding then gives the command to mount.

At the command *form—RANKS*, the chiefs of platoon move forward, face to the front by *turning to the right-about*, and place themselves before the centre of their platoons, the croup of their horses one pace from the head of the horses of the front-rank. The file-closers follow the rear-rank.

**Successive alignment of platoons in the  
squadron.**

581.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding places the two non-commissioned officers, principal guides of the right and left, upon a line parallel to the front of the squadron, at 30 paces from the particular

guides, and facing each other as if they were placed on intermediate points.

On receiving notice from the Captain commanding, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the platoon moves forward; at one pace from the point which marks the new alignment, the chief of the platoon commands: 1. HALT. 2. *Right-DRESS*.

At the command HALT, the chief of the platoon and the particular guide of the right, continue to march on and establish themselves immediately, the latter bringing the head of his horse against the boot of the principal guide of the right.

The first platoon being correctly aligned, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By platoon-right-DRESS*.
2. FRONT.

(Pl. 78, fig. A.) At the first command, the chief of the second platoon commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. MARCH. Having arrived abreast of the file-closers of the platoon which forms the base of the alignment, he commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Right-DRESS*, and at the same time moves forward on the line of the chief of that platoon.

At the command HALT, the platoon stops. At the command *Right-DRESS*, all the troopers move forward together upon the alignment.

Each chief of platoon executes successively the same movement, commanding **MARCH** when the one who precedes him has commanded **HALT**.

The particular guide of the left, at the command **HALT**, from the chief of the fourth platoon, brings up the head of his horse against the boot of the principal guide of the left.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: **FRONT**.

582.— This alignment being correctly executed, it is repeated giving the new base of alignment a direction oblique to the front of the squadron. For this purpose, the chief of the first platoon, on receiving notice from the Captain commanding, moves his platoon 24 paces forward, causes it to execute a half-wheel to the right at the commands: 1. *Right half*—**WHEEL**; 2. **FORWARD**; and after marching it 6 paces in the new direction, he halts, and aligns it.

The first platoon being correctly aligned, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By platoon—right*—**DRESS**.
2. **FRONT**.

(Pl. 78, *fig. B*.) At the first command, the movement is executed successively; each chief of platoon moves straight forward, and commands: 1. *Right half*—**WHEEL**; 2. **FORWARD**, so that his platoon may execute its wheel on a fixed pivot at the moment the right arrives opposite the left of the platoon which precedes it.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: **FRONT**.

583.— The Captain commanding observes that the officers align themselves promptly, on a line parallel to the base of the alignment, that they do not suffer too much time to elapse between the commands **HALT** and *right-DRESS*, so as not to retard the successive alignments; he also observes that the non-commissioned officers pay attention to the general and not individual alignment. As soon as the latter are correctly aligned, he commands: **FRONT**.

### **Alignment of the squadron.**

584.— The Captain commanding, after having placed the right particular guide, so that no trooper will be compelled to rein-back, commands:

1. *Right-DRESS*.
2. **FRONT**.

At the command *right-DRESS*, all the troopers align themselves steadily but promptly to the right.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: **FRONT**.

585.— The Captain commanding causes these different alignments to be executed by the left, following the same principles but by inverse means.

### **To open and close the ranks.**

586.— To open the ranks, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Rear rank open order*.
2. **MARCH**.
3. *Right-DRESS*.
4. **FRONT**.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 436](#). The troopers of the rear rank rein-back 6 paces; and the chiefs of platoon, at the command MARCH, move forward 6 paces, and face the centre of their platoons by *turning to the left-about*.

587.— To close the ranks, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Rear rank close order.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 437](#). The chiefs of platoon move forward at the command MARCH, face to the front by a *turn to the right-about*, and place themselves opposite the centre of their platoons.

### **To break the squadron by fours.**

588.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon places himself in front of the four files of the right, the right particular guide places himself on his right.

At the command MARCH, the four first files march straight forward, and are followed by all the other files, who break successively, as prescribed, [No. 454](#).

The chiefs of the other platoons break with the four first files of their platoons, keeping abreast of them and at one pace from the flank of the column on the side of the guide, each rank of fours preserving between them the distance of 2 feet.

It is important that the files, after having marched 6 paces to the front, should not endeavor to enter the column too soon. The Captain commanding does not announce the guide until the four first files have broken.

589.— On arriving upon the drill ground, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

### **Direct march in column by fours.**

590.— When the column is halted, the Captain commanding assures himself that the officers, the file-closers, and the particular guide, are placed as prescribed ([Title 1, Article 2](#)); then he commands:

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

591.— The object of this march in column being to calm the horses, and make them uniform and steady in the different gaits, the troopers will endeavor to keep their horses as quiet as possible; but the Captain commanding requires them to conform to all the principles of the direct march; he observes that the ranks of fours are exactly aligned; that the files march in the same direction; that the

troopers being boot to boot, conduct their horses without employing more force than necessary, and preserve the proper position of the body and bridle-hand

592.— The column having marched by fours, quarter of an hour at least, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers take *the trot*, always taking care not to fret their horses, and to calm them should they become restive.

When the column has marched about 1000 paces *at the trot*, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Walk.*
2. MARCH.

Having marched some time *at the walk*, they resume *the trot*, and after marching again about 1000 paces, they pass *to the walk*.

To change the gait, the Captain commanding selects a moment when the horses are perfectly calm, and march uniformly; all the troopers assume at the same time, and with steadiness, the gait indicated.

### **Change of direction.**

593.— The column marching in column by fours, right in front, to change the direction, the Captain commanding commands:

*Head of column to the left (or to the right).*

Which is executed as prescribed, **No. 457**, the chief of the first platoon conforming to what is indicated for the assistant-instructor.

### **Individual oblique march.**

594.— The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, to cause it to execute the individual oblique march, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, **No. 460**.

### **The squadron marching in column by fours, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right into line.**

595.— The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

(**Pl. 79.**) At the command MARCH, the four first files continue to march straight forward; when they have marched 30 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands: **HALT.**

At this command, the four first files halt square to the front, the particular guide of the right returns to the right of the squadron. All the other files come up successively, and without the commands of the chiefs of platoon, form to



the left and upon the alignment of the first, as prescribed, [No. 462](#).

The Captain commanding, who moves to the right flank after the command **MARCH**, commands the alignment when the chief of the first platoon command **HALT**.

The second Captain moves also to the right flank, after the command **MARCH**, in order to rectify the alignment of the rear rank and of the file-closers.

As soon as the chiefs of platoon arrive upon the line, they place themselves at the centre of their platoons and align themselves.

The particular guide of the left returns to the left of the squadron, when the four last files arrive upon the line.

The Captain commanding commands **FRONT** when the four last files are aligned.

596.— The column marching right in front, to form it in line on its left flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Left into line.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. **FRONT.**

At the command **MARCH**, the four leading files turn to the left and march straight forward; when they have marched 30 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands: **HALT**.

At this command, the four leading files halt, and the particular guide places himself on the right of the squadron. All the other files come up successively, and without the command of the chiefs of platoon, form to the left and on the

alignment of the first, as prescribed, [No. 464](#), observing to keep in the same direction, before turning to the left, so as not to approach the new line until the proper time.

The commanding and second Captains, the chiefs of platoon, and the particular guide of the left, conform exactly to what is prescribed for the *front into line*.

597.— The column marching right in front, to form line upon the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *On right into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the four leading files turn to the right, and march straight forward; when they have marched 30 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands: HALT.

At this command, the four leading files halt, and the right particular guide takes his place on the right of the squadron. All the other files continue to march forward, and come up successively without the commands of the chiefs of platoon, forming to the left and upon the alignment of the first, as prescribed, [No. 466](#), observing to keep themselves square in the same direction before turning to the right, so as not to approach the new line before the proper time.

The commanding and second Captains, the chiefs of platoon, and the left particular guide, conform exactly to what is prescribed for the *front into line*.

598.— The squadron is broken by the left, at the commands: 1. *By fours from the left*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; and is exercised at the march in column, the changes of direction, and the individual oblique marches. It is also exercised at the different formations, which are executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front (right or on left) into line*; 2. MARCH, 3. *Left*—DRESS; 4. FRONT.

599.— In all these formations, greater regularity is required in the execution as the troopers become more habituated to them, and the horses become more calm.

The first instruction is repeated several successive days; and when the principles of the direct march in column by fours, the changes of direction, the obliques, and the different formations in line are firmly impressed, all these movements are executed *at the trot*, and *at the gallop*.

### **To regulate the rapidity of the gaits.**

600.— When the marches and formations, prescribed above, have given sufficient uniformity and precision to the gait, the Captain commanding will regulate their rapidity. For this purpose he measures off two distances, each about 1000 paces, and causes them to be passed over successively at all the gaits, to assure himself that, *at the walk*, from 100 to 110 paces is passed over per minute, *at the trot*, from 200 to 220 per minute, and *at the gallop*, about 300 paces per minute.

When the rapidity of the gaits has been properly determined, the squadron is required to pass successively *from the walk to the trot*, and *from the trot to the gallop*, and if

the column becomes disunited *at the gallop*, it resumes *the trot*, and then *the walk*.

When the squadron has acquired precision and regularity in the formation at the different gaits, the Captain commanding exercises the squadron in breaking by fours from a halt, *at the trot*, and *at the gallop*.

In very even ground, the distances above indicated may be passed over in a shorter time, but the rapidity of the gaits should be increased only under extraordinary circumstances.

**To form the squadron in one rank, and to form it in two ranks.**

601.— To form the squadron in one rank, and to reform it in two ranks, the Captain commanding conforms to what is prescribed, [Nos. 469](#) and [471](#).

The formation of the squadron in one rank is employed only for *inspections*; in this case, the officers pass to the right of the squadron, and after them, the non-commissioned officers, troopers, and Trumpeters, according to their rank.

602.— The squadron being formed in two ranks closed, the Captain commanding causes it to dismount and file off, as prescribed, [No. 472](#). The commanding and second Captains and the chiefs of platoon remain mounted in order to superintend the movement. The chiefs of platoon dismount successively, when the last files of their platoon have filed off; the commanding and second Captains, when the movement is terminated.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

**The squadron being in line, to form it in column with distance.**

603.— The Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right-wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

(Pl. 80, *fig. A.*) At the first command, the left file of each platoon prepares to step off promptly, and the pivot to turn upon its own ground.

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel to the right, following the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot, the marching flanks taking care to step off and wheel together.

At the command HALT, the marching flanks and all the troopers halt at the same instant, those of the rear-rank resuming their places behind their file-leaders.

The Captain commanding commands HALT, when the platoons have nearly completed the wheels.

The chiefs of platoon, without leaving the centre of their platoons, observe that the movement is correctly executed; after the wheels, if any guide finds himself not in the direction of the one preceding him, he should not endeavor to correct his position until after the march is commenced.

During the movement, the particular guide of the left passes as file-closer behind the second file from the left of the fourth platoon.

The Captain commanding assures himself that each officer and non-commissioned officer preserves the place assigned to him in this order of column, ([Title 1st, Article 2d](#)).

### **To march in column with distance.**

604.— The object of the column with distance is, in moving a squadron from one position to another, to make it practicable to form line in every sense.

In this order of column, the guides should preserve between them a distance equal to the front of their platoons, and regulate their gait upon that of the preceding guide.

The preservation of the distances being the most essential point of the march in column, every thing else should yield to it; but the guides must endeavor to avoid changing the gait as much as possible, without the command; and if it happens that their distance is increased or diminished, the fault in repaired gradually and with steadiness.

The chiefs of platoon are responsible for the preservation of the distance, which should be half the front of the platoon, measured from the croup of the horse of the rear-rank of one platoon, to the head of the horses of the front-rank of the next platoon.

The unevenness of the ground may make it sometimes impossible to preserve the direction of the guide; it is then sufficient to require the guide of each platoon to pass by the same points as the guide of the preceding platoon.

The leading platoon of a column should always commence the march moderately, in order to give the column time, from head to foot, to take a uniform and regular movement.

605.— The squadron being in open column, right in front, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, all the platoons put themselves in motion at the same time.

Before the column commences the march, the Captain commanding gives the guide of the first platoon a point of direction; this non-commissioned officer selects intermediate points, so as to be sure of marching straight. The fixed object given to the guide of the first platoon, is also pointed out to the guide of the second. These two non-commissioned officers preserve, during the march, the direction which has been given to them.

The guides of the third and fourth platoons keep exactly in the same direction.

### **Changes of direction by successive wheels.**

606.— In the open column, the changes of direction are executed by successive *wheels on a moveable pivot*, so that the march of the column may not be retarded. *The arc of circle described by the pivots, should be of 5 paces.*

The column being in march, to change the direction, the Captain commanding commands:

*Head of column to the left or half-left, (or to the right or half-right).*

(Pl. 80, *fig. B.*) At this command, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Left*—TURN; 2. FORWARD; which

is executed on the principles of the wheel upon a moveable pivot.

Each chief of platoon gives the same commands successively, so that his platoon may turn upon the same ground.

In this change of direction while marching, the principal guide of the right, at the command *head of column to the left*, moves rapidly to the side of the pivot, and places himself so that the head of his horse will mark the centre point of the arc described by the pivot.

All the platoons commence their wheel at  $2\frac{1}{2}$  paces before arriving abreast of the head of the horse of the principal guide of the right, so as to prevent the column from being thrown out. This non-commissioned officer resumes his place when the last platoon has completed its wheel.

Immediately after having changed the direction of the column, the Captain commanding gives a new point of direction to the guide of the first platoon.

The exact preservation of distances, after the changes of direction, depends upon the equality of the increase given to the gait by the marching flanks; it is then important that the leading platoon should turn neither too rapidly nor too slowly, and that each platoon should regulate the rapidity of its wheel upon that of the one which precedes it.

When the change of direction is executed from the side opposite to the guide, the pivot becomes the guide during the wheel.

### **Individual oblique march.**

607.— The squadron marching in column, with distance, right in front, to cause it to gain ground towards one of its



flanks, without changing the front of the column, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Left* (or *right*) *oblique*.
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 81.) Which is executed at the same time, in each platoon, as prescribed, No. 531.

The guides of the three last platoons pay attention to march on the same line, to preserve the distances, and to keep in a direction exactly parallel to that of the guide of the first platoon.

To resume the primitive direction, the Captain commanding commands:

#### FORWARD.

Which is executed at the same time, in each platoon, as prescribed, No. 531.

608.— When the oblique march is executed towards the side opposite to the guide, the file-closers preserve their places, notwithstanding the change of guide.

#### **Change of gait, being in column with distance.**

609.— The column is made to pass from the *walk* to the *trot*, and from the *trot* to the *walk*, and when the platoons execute these changes of gait with uniformity and steadiness, the column is made to commence the march at a *trot* and to halt while marching at the *trot*.

The Captain commanding observes that the platoons halt, step off, and change the gait at the same instant.

He directs the head of the column sometimes to increase or diminish the gait slightly, without command, to judge of

the attention of the guides, and to habituate them to conforming the movements of the guides who precede them.

**To break by fours, by twos, and by file; to form twos, fours, and platoons at the same gait.**

610.— The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to break by fours at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this officer, and the particular guide of the right, place themselves as prescribed, [No. 588](#).

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon breaks by fours, as prescribed, [No. 533](#), and the chiefs of the three last platoons command: HALT.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command *by fours*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, the moment the four last files of the preceding platoon commence their oblique movement in order to enter the column.

611.— The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, to break by twos, at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By twos.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

The chiefs of platoon conform to what is prescribed in order to break by fours, and give the commands: **HALT**, and then 1. *By twos*; 2. MARCH, so as to cause no confusion in the column.

612.— The squadron marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By file.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 611](#), in order to break by twos, the particular guide of the right placing himself behind the chief of the first platoon.

613.— The squadron marching in column with distance, at the *trot*, right in front, to break by fours, at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this officer, and the particular guide of the right, place themselves as prescribed, [No. 588](#), and the chiefs of the three last platoons command: *Walk*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by all the chiefs of platoon, the first platoon breaks by fours, as prescribed, [No. 534](#), and the three last platoons take the *walk*.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command *by fours—trot*, in sufficient time to command **MARCH**, when the four last files of the preceding platoon commence their oblique movement in order to enter the column.

The same principles are applicable to breaking by twos and by file.

614.— When the column is at the gallop, these movements are executed on the principles just prescribed, the whole column except the four first files passing to the *trot*, and resuming successively the *gallop* as the files break in order to enter the column.

615.— The squadron marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form twos.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the commands *form twos* and **MARCH**, successively repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon executes its movement as prescribed, [No. 473](#); the particular guide of the right moves to the right of the chief of the first platoon, who commands **HALT**, after having marched 10 paces.

The three other platoons continue to march by file, and execute successively their formation at the commands of their chiefs, who do not command **MARCH**, until the first files of their platoons arrive at their proper distance.

616.— The squadron marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours, at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form fours.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 615](#), in order to form twos.

617.— The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, to form platoon at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form platoons.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Form platoon.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, the particular guide of the right places himself on the right of this platoon, which forms as prescribed, [No. 536](#); the chief of the platoon commands HALT, after having marched 20 paces.

The other platoons continue to march in column by fours, and form successively at the commands: 1. *Form platoon*; 2. MARCH, given by their chiefs in sufficient time to command HALT when the four first files of their platoon arrive at 6 paces from the platoon which precedes.

618.— When the column is at the *trot*, the same principles are conformed to, except that instead of halting, the two or four first files of the first platoon pass to the *walk*, at the command MARCH given by their chief. The other platoons continue to march at the *trot*, and execute their movement at the same gait, the two or four first files of each platoon passing also to the *walk*, at the command

MARCH given by their chiefs, when they arrive at their proper distance.

When the column is at the *gallop*, to form twos, fours, &c., the same principles are observed, the two or four first files of each platoon passing to the *trot* at the command MARCH given by their chief.

619.— When these formations are executed at the *trot*, and at the *gallop*, the guide is announced by the Captain commanding as soon as the first files have doubled, or the first platoon is formed; in the last case only, each chief of platoon repeats the command of the guide as soon as his platoon is formed.

620.— In these formations at the *walk*, the guide is not announced, as the head of the column halts.

**To break by fours, by twos, and by file; to form twos, fours, and platoons, in doubling the gait.**

621.— The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to break by fours, in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this officer, and the particular guide of the right, place themselves as prescribed, [No. 588](#).

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon breaks by fours, as prescribed, [No. 540](#).

The other platoons continue to march at the *walk*; their chiefs command successively *by fours—trot*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, the moment the four last files of the preceding platoon commence their oblique movement in order to enter the column.

These principles are applicable to breaking by twos and by file.

622.— When the column is at the *trot*, to break at the *gallop*, the same principles are observed, at the commands: 1. *By fours—gallop*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

When the column is at the *gallop*, these movements are always executed at the same gait, as prescribed, [No. 614](#).

623.— The squadron marching in column by file, to form twos, in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form twos—trot*.
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left*.

At the commands *form twos—trot* and MARCH, successively repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon executes its movement as prescribed, [No. 480](#), and the particular guide of the right moves to the right of the chief of the first platoon.

At the first command, the chiefs of the three last platoons command: *trot*. At the command MARCH, repeated by them, the three last platoons take the *trot*.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command: *Form twos*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, the moment the first file of

their platoons is nearly at its proper distance; the first file then passes to the *walk*.

624.— The squadron marching in column by twos, to form fours, in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form fours—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 623](#), in order to form twos.

625.— The squadron marching in column by fours, to form platoon, in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form platoons—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Form platoon—trot.*

The chiefs of the three last platoons command *trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the first platoon forms as prescribed, [No. 543](#), and the particular guide of the right places himself on the right of this platoon.

The three last platoons take the *trot*, and form successively at the command *form platoon*, given by their chiefs in sufficient time to command MARCH. when the four first files arrive at their proper distance from the platoon which precedes them; then these four first files take the *walk*.



The Captain commanding commands *guide left* when the first platoon is formed, and gives a point of direction.

Each chief of platoon repeats successively the command of the guide as soon as his platoon is formed.

626.— When the column is at the *trot*, these formations are executed at the *gallop*, following the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Form twos (or fours, or platoons)—gallop*; 2. MARCH.

When the column is at the *gallop*, these movements are executed as prescribed, No. 618, the head of the column passing to the *trot* at the command MARCH.

627.— The foregoing movements are employed in passing defiles; the Captain commanding placing himself always at the head of his squadron in order to direct the movements of it according to the localities. If it happens that the chiefs of the last platoons do not hear the command, they conform immediately to the movements of the platoons which precede them.

**The squadron marching in column with distance, to face it in the opposite direction, and to face it again to the front.**

628.— The squadron marching in open column, right in front, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons left-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 82, fig. A.) At the first command, the trooper on the left of each platoon, who becomes the pivot, prepares to halt, without however slackening his pace.

At the command MARCH, the pivots halt, and the marching flanks wheel at the gait in which the column was marching, regulating themselves upon the outer flank of the platoon at the head of the column, so as to complete the first half of the movement at the same instant.

The marching flanks are then governed by the platoon, which becomes the head of the column after the movement is completed.

The movement being nearly finished, the Captain commanding commands:

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide right.*

During this movement, the particular guide of the left places himself on the left of the fourth platoon; the particular guide of the right takes his place as file-closer in rear of the second file from the right of the first platoon, and the other file-closers pass to the side opposite to the guide.

629.— To cause the squadron to resume its primitive direction, the Captain commanding commands: 1. *Platoons right-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*; which is executed as prescribed, No. 628, but by inverse means.

630.— The wheel-about is usually commanded towards the side of the guide; it may, however, be towards the other side when it becomes necessary.

### **To halt the column.**

631.— The column being on the march, to halt it, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Column.*
2. **HALT.**

At the first command, all the platoons prepare to halt.

At the command **HALT**, all the platoons halt at the same time.

After the command **HALT**, there should be no movement in the platoons, the distances and directions should be corrected only in marching.

The Captain commanding places himself behind the guide of the second platoon, to see if the guides of the first and second platoon have marched upon the point indicated; he also observes if the prescribed distances have been preserved. If they have not been, and if the guides have not marched upon the point indicated, the column is put again in march, in order to correct their distances and direction.

### **To form line on the left.**

632.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line on its left flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Left into line wheel.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. **HALT.**
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. **FRONT.**

(Pl. 82, *fig. B.*) At the first command, the particular guide of the right moves upon the prolongation of the direction of the guides of the column, at the distance of the

front of a platoon, facing the side towards which the line will be formed.

At the command **MARCH**, the squadron wheels into line, the trooper on the left wing of each platoon serving as pivot, and turning upon his own ground.

The Captain commanding commands **HALT**, the moment the marching flanks have nearly completed their movement, and then *right*-**DRESS**.

At this command, all the platoons align themselves.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands **FRONT**.

During the wheel, the particular guide of the left resumes his place in line.

633.— The Captain commanding, alter having commanded *left into line wheel*, assures himself before commanding **MARCH**, that the particular guide of the right is exactly upon the direction of the guides of the column.

Immediately after commanding **HALT**, he moves rapidly to the right flank of the squadron, to observe that the pivots execute their movements properly, and that the officers and troopers align themselves correctly.

The particular guide, who moves upon the prolongation of the guides of the column, should take rather too much ground than not enough. The conductor of the marching flank of the leading platoon, should align himself upon this guide, without endeavoring to approach him.

634.— To form the squadron in column with distance, left in front, the Captain commanding commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **HALT**; which is executed as prescribed, [No. 603](#), but by inverse means.

To march in column with distance, left in front, the Captain commanding commands: 1. *Column forward*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; which is executed as prescribed when the column has the right in front.

The changes of direction by successive wheels, and the individual oblique march, when the column has the left in front, are executed on the same principles as when the right is in front; except, that in the changes of direction, it is the principal guide of the left who marks the point of the wheel, placing himself as has been prescribed for the principal guide of the right when the right is in front.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, it is made *to break by fours, by twos, and by file, to form twos, fours, and platoons*, at the same gait, or in doubling the gait, following the principles prescribed when the right is in front, but by inverse means.

To break by fours, twos, &c., the Captain commanding commands: 1. *By fours (or twos, or file)* from the left; 2. MARCH.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to face it in the opposite direction, the same principles are followed as when the right is in front, but by inverse means.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to halt it, conform to the principles prescribed when the right is in front.

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form it in line on the right, the Captain commanding commands: 1. *Right into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT; which is executed as prescribed, No. 632, but by inverse means.

**To break by the right to march to the left.**

635.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons break by the right—march to the left.*
2. MARCH.

(Pl. 83, *fig. A*.) At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide left*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon marches 10 paces to the front, turns to the left, and moves forward at the command: 1. *Left—TURN*; 2. FORWARD.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide left*; when the chief of the platoon on their right commands MARCH; and they command MARCH, when the chief of that platoon, after having turned to the left, commands: FORWARD.

**To form line to the right by inversion.**

636.— The squadron marching in open column, right in front, to form it in line upon its right flank by inversion, the Captain commanding changes the guide; for this purpose, he commands:

*Guide right.*

The second Captain passes by the rear of the column, to the side opposite to the guides; the Captain commanding passes by the head of the column to the side of the new guides, rectifies their direction, then halts the column, and commands:

1. *By inversion right into line wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Left*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 632](#), but by inverse means.

During the movement, the particular guide of the left places himself on the right of the fourth platoon, and the particular guide of the right, who moves on the prolongation of the new guides of the column, remains on the left of the first platoon.

637.— To put the squadron again in column, right in front, the Captain commanding commands: 1.  *platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT (or FORWARD); 4. *Guide left*.

The Captain commanding passes to the side of the guides, the second Captain passes to the opposite side.

The squadron may also be put in line in natural order, by wheeling the platoons *to the left* (or *to the right*) *about*. The second Captain follows the marching flank of the platoon behind which he is placed.

638.— The squadron being in line, it is broken by the left to march to the right, on the principles prescribed, [No. 635](#), but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons break by the left—to march to the right*; 2. MARCH.

639.— The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, it is formed in line on its left flank by inversion, (after having changed the guide and halted the col-

umn), on the principles prescribed, [No. 636](#), but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By inversion left into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right-DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

640.— To put the squadron again in column, left in front, the Captain commanding commands: 1. *Platoons right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT (or FORWARD); 4. *Guide right*.

The squadron may also be put in natural order, by wheeling the platoons *to the right* (or *left*) *about*.

**To break to the rear by the right to march to the left.**

641.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons break by the right to the rear—to march to the left*.
2. MARCH.

([Pl. 83, fig. B.](#)) At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Platoon right-about wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon executes its wheel to the *right-about*; when nearly terminated, its chief commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and after marching 10 paces straight forward, he commands: 1. *Right-TURN*; 2. FORWARD.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, commands: *Platoon right-about wheel*, when the chief of the platoon on their right commands



MARCH, and they command MARCH, when that platoon has passed over three-fourths of its first wheel.

**To form on right into line.**

642.— The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line on the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *On right into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*
4. FRONT.

(Pl. 84.) At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Right*.

At the command MARCH, he commands: TURN; the platoon turns to the right and moves forward at the command FORWARD; when it has marched 30 paces, its chief commands: HALT, and then *Right—DRESS*.

The other platoons continue to march forward, without approaching the line; as soon as each one arrives abreast of the fourth file from the left of the platoon which should be on its right, its chief commands: 1. *Right—TURN*; 2. FORWARD; this platoon then directs itself towards the place it is to occupy in line, and on arriving abreast of the file-closers, its chief commands: HALT, and then *Right—DRESS*.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: FRONT.

**To form on left into line by inversion.**

643.— The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line upon the prolongation and in advance of its left flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By inversion on left into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*
4. FRONT.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Left*.

At the command MARCH, he commands TURN; the platoon turns to the left, and moves forward at the command FORWARD; when it has marched 30 paces, its chief commands: HALT, and then *Left—DRESS*.

The other platoons continue to march forward, without approaching the line; as each platoon arrives abreast of the fourth file from the right of the platoon which should be on its left, its chief commands: 1. *Left—TURN*; 2. FORWARD; this platoon directs itself towards the place it is to occupy in line, and on arriving abreast of the file-closers, its chief commands: HALT, and then *Left—DRESS*.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: FRONT.

644.— The squadron being in line, it is broken by the left to the rear to march to the right, on the principles prescribed, [No. 641](#), but by inverse means, at the com-

mands: 1. *Platoons break by the left to the rear to march to the right*; 2. MARCH.

645.— The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to form it in line on the prolongation and in advance of its left flank, follow the principles prescribed, No. 642, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *On left into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*; 4. FRONT.

646.— The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to form it in line upon the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, conform to the principles prescribed, No. 643, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By inversion on right into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; 4. FRONT.

### **To break by platoons to the front.**

647.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By platoons to the front.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

(Pl. 85.) At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Platoon forward*, and the chiefs of the three other platoons: *Platoon right half-wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the first platoon moves forward; its chief repeats the indication of the guide.

Each of the other chiefs of platoon, when their *half-wheel* to the right is executed, commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*, and then marches straight forward. When the

left of his platoon arrives in the direction of the platoon which precedes, he commands: 1. *Left half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD, in order to enter the column.

The Captain commanding does not announce the guide until the first platoon has broken to the front; and he gives the guide a point of direction.

### **To form front into line.**

648.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line upon the head of the column, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*
4. FRONT.

(Pl. 86.) At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Platoon forward*, and the chiefs of the three other platoons command: *Platoon left half-wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the first platoon moves forward; its chief repeats the indication of the guide, and when it has marched 30 paces, he commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Right—DRESS*.

Each of the other chiefs of platoon, when the *left half-wheel* is executed, commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*, and marches straight forward. When the right of his platoon arrives opposite the left of the platoon which precedes, he commands: 1. *Right half-wheel*; 2. FORWARD; and when he arrives abreast of the file-closer: 1. HALT; 2. *Right—DRESS*.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: **FRONT**.

649.— This formation is executed in the same manner, when the column is on the march; in this case, the chief of the first platoon, continuing to march on, does not command *platoon forward*, nor **MARCH**, but repeats the indication of the guide.

650.— The squadron being in line, it is broken by the left by platoons to march to the front, on the principles prescribed, [No. 647](#), but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by platoons to front*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. *Guide right*.

651.— The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, it is formed in line on the head of column, following the principles prescribed, [No. 648](#), but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. *Guide left*; 4. **FRONT**.

This formation is executed, when the column is marching, as prescribed, [No. 649](#).

**To break by platoons to the right, and to move forward after the wheel.**

652.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right wheel*.
2. **MARCH**.
3. **FORWARD**.
4. *Guide left*.

At the first command, the left file of each platoon prepares to step off promptly, and the pivot to turn upon itself.

At the command **MARCH**, each platoon executes its wheel to the right following the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot.

At the third command, the platoons march straight forward.

The Captain commanding commands **FORWARD**, when the wheels are nearly completed, and gives a point of direction to the guide of the column; he observes that the marching flanks step off at the same instant, wheel and arrive together in column, and that the pivots commence the march together at the command **FORWARD**.

### **To form line to the front by inversion.**

653.— The squadron being in open column, right in front, to form line by inversion upon the head of the column, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By inversion front into line.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Guide left.*
4. **FRONT.**

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Platoon forward*; and the three other chiefs of platoon command: *Platoon right half-wheel*.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by these officers, the movement is executed as prescribed, [No. 648](#), but by inverse means.

This formation is executed in the same manner, when the column is marching; in this case, the chief of the first

platoon does not command *platoon forward*, nor MARCH, but repeats the indication of the guide.

654.— The squadron being in line, it is broken by platoons to the left, in order to move forward after the wheel, following the principles prescribed, No. 652, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

655.— The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form line by inversion upon the head of the column, follow the principles prescribed, No. 653, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By inversion front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; 4. FRONT.

This formation is executed in the same manner, when the column is marching; in this case, the chief of the first platoon does not command *platoon forward*, nor MARCH, but repeats the indication of the guide.

**To break by platoons to the right, head of column to the left or half left.**

656.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right-wheel—head of column to the left or half left*.
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left*.

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel *to the right*.

At the third command, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. Left-TURN; 2. FORWARD; the other platoons move on and turn successively at the command of their chiefs, on the ground upon which the first had turned.

The Captain commanding commands, FORWARD, when the wheels are nearly completed, and gives a point of direction.

**To form line faced to the rear, on the rear of the column.**

657.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form line faced to the rear, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons left-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Front into line.*
4. MARCH.
5. *Guide left.*
6. FRONT.

(Pl. 87.) At the second command, each platoon executes its wheel *to the left-about*.

At the fourth command, the chief of the fourth platoon, which becomes the head of the column, when its wheel is nearly completed, commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and when it has marched 30 paces, 1. HALT; 2. *Left-DRESS*.

The chiefs of the other platoons, on completing three-fourths of their wheel, command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and direct themselves towards the place they are to occupy in line, conforming in other respects to what is



prescribed for *front into line*, when the column has its *left in front*, No. 651.

The Captain commanding commands, *front into line*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, and *guide left*, when the platoons have completed three-fourths of their wheel.

**To form line faced to the rear, by inversion,  
on the rear of the column.**

658.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, and obstacles are presented upon its left flank, to form line faced to the rear, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *By inversion front into line.*
4. MARCH.
5. *Guide right.*
6. FRONT.

At the second command, each platoon executes its wheel *to the right-about*.

At the fourth command, the chief of the fourth platoon, which becomes the head of the column, when its wheel is nearly completed, commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; and when it has marched 30 paces, 1. HALT; 2. *Right—DRESS*.

The chiefs of the other platoons, at three-fourths of the wheel, command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; and direct themselves towards the place they are to occupy in line,

conforming, in other respects, to what is prescribed for *by inversion front into line*, when the *left is in front*.

659.— The squadron being in line, to break it by platoons to the left, head of column to the right, (or half right), follow the principles prescribed, [No. 656](#), but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel—head of column to the right* (or *half right*); 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

660.— The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form line faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, [No. 657](#), but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons right-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Front into line*; 4. MARCH; 5. *Guide right*; 6. FRONT.

661.— The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, and obstacles are presented on its right flank, to form line faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, [No. 658](#), but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *By inversion front into line*; 4. MARCH; 5. *Guide left*; 6. FRONT.

**To break by platoons to the right, head of column to the right, or half right.**

662.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right wheel—head of column to the right* (or *half right*.)
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left*.

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel to the right.

At the third command, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Right*—TURN 2. FORWARD. The other platoons move on, and turn successively at the command of their chief, on the same ground.

The Captain commanding commands, FORWARD, when the wheels are nearly completed.

**To form line faced to the rear on the head of the column.**

663.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form line upon the head of the column faced to the rear, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By inversion front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

(Pl. 88.) Which is executed as prescribed for *by inversion front into line, right in front*, No. 653, but without rectifying the alignment.

The squadron being formed, the Captain commanding immediately commands:

1. *Platoons left-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

**To form line faced to the rear, by inversion,  
on the head of the column.**

664.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, and obstacles are presented on its right flank, to form line upon the head of the column, faced to the rear, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

Which is executed as prescribed for *front into line, right in front*, No. 648, but without rectifying the alignment.

The squadron being formed, the Captain commanding immediately commands:

1. *Platoons right-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Left—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

665.— The squadron being in line, to break it by platoons to the left, head of column to the left or half left, follow the principles prescribed, No. 662, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel—head of column to the left* (or *half left*); 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right.*

666.— The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form line upon the head of the column, faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, No. 663, but by

inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By inversion front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; and the squadron being formed, 1. *Platoons right-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

667.— The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, and obstacles are presented upon its left flank, to form in line upon the head of the column faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, No. 664, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*; and the squadron being formed, 1. *Platoons left-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

All these formations faced to the rear, are executed in the same manner, when the column is marching.

### **Movements by fours, the squadron being in column with distance.**

668.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to cause it to gain ground towards its left flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours left wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

(Pl. 89, fig. A.) At the command MARCH, the wheels are executed in each rank by fours, as prescribed, No. 552.

If, instead of moving forward, after having wheeled to the left by fours, the Captain commanding wishes to halt the column, he commands: HALT.

To take a direction parallel to the first, and return to column with distance, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours right wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

Which is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means.

If, instead of halting, the Captain commanding wishes the column, to march forward, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left.*

669.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, it is caused to gain ground towards its right flank, by the commands: 1. *By fours right wheel;* 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left;* and to resume the primitive direction, at the commands: 1. *By fours, left wheel;* 2. MARCH; 3. HALT (or FORWARD); 4. *Guide left.*

670.— The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to cause it to march to the rear, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours left-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

(Pl. 89, *fig. B.*) At the command MARCH, the movement is executed, in each rank by fours, as prescribed, No. 556.

If, instead of moving forward after the *wheel to the left-about by fours*, the Captain commanding wishes to halt the column, he commands: **HALT**.

To return to the primitive direction, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours right-about wheel.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. **HALT.**

Which is executed as just prescribed, but by inverse means.

671.— If the Captain commanding wishes the column to march forward, he commands: 1. **FORWARD**; 2. *Guide left*.

In all the movements *to the left*, and *to the right by fours*, the chiefs of platoon move up abreast of the first rank of their platoons, on the side of the guide.

The commanding and second Captains, the file-closers, and the particular guides of the right and left, preserve their places after the *wheel to the left or right by fours* is completed, facing in the new direction.

In the wheels *to the left* or *right-about by fours*, the chiefs of platoon march behind the centre of their platoons, and the file-closers in front. The particular guide of the right is on the left of his platoon, and the particular guide of the left in front of his.

During the march by flank, the Captain commanding observes that all the ranks march on the same line, regulate their movements towards the side of the guide, and preserve a direction parallel to that of the first platoon; that

the troopers keep exactly at the distance of two feet from, and follow those who precede them; he observes that the chiefs of the three last platoons preserve their proper intervals on the side of the guide, so that it may not be necessary to correct distances when the squadron returns to the order in column.

The movements by fours are executed in the same manner, when the column is marching.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, all these movements are executed on the same principles.

---

## ARTICLE THIRD.

### **Direct march of the squadron in line.**

672.— The principles of the direct march, prescribed, [No. 494](#), and following, are applicable to the squadron.

The troopers, to keep aligned, should feel lightly the boot of the men on the side of the guide; this principle is borne constantly in mind, as it is the only means of being at ease in the ranks, and preserving the individual alignment. With respect to the general alignment, the non-commissioned officers and flank files endeavor to remain aligned between each other; consequently they will not be required to keep the eyes to the front, but from time to time will give a glance towards the guide, in order to keep on the same line, avoiding to carry the bridle hand in that direction, that there may be no crowding in the ranks.



673.— It has already been stated, that the guide of a troop should never put himself in motion suddenly; the guide of the squadron should then commence the gait indicated, slowly. He should also pass gradually from a slow gait to a quick gait, and from a quick to a slow gait; this principle is applicable also to the troopers, who should correct their positions with respect to the alignment by degrees, in quickening or slackening the pace.

The direction given to the guide having a great influence upon the regularity of the march, it is necessary that the fixed point should be always chosen in a direction exactly perpendicular to the front of the squadron; if the localities do not permit the particular guide to take intermediate points sufficiently prominent, they are supplied by the file-closers, who are placed facing the guide, at 60 paces apart; they replace themselves on the prolongation of the same direction, as the squadron reaches them.

674.— The Captain commanding, after having announced the guide, moves to the rear, and gives him a fixed point of direction upon which the squadron is to march, and indicates it also to the non-commissioned officer who replaces particular guide in the front rank, the latter serving as an intermediate point for the former. The fixed point is also made known to the second Captain.

The Captain commanding, if he thinks proper, may charge the second Captain with giving the direction.

The point of direction being given, the Captain commanding moves to the centre of his squadron, and faces it, to assure himself that the troopers step off together at the command of execution. He afterwards moves wherever he thinks his presence is most required.

675.— The officers should remain constantly aligned upon the particular guide placed on their line, keep at one pace from the centre of their platoons, and march straight forward; for it is upon their alignment that that of the squadron depends.

676.— The particular guide who marches abreast of the officers, should march always at an even gait, so as not to oblige the opposite flank to increase or diminish its pace.

This guide, as he advances, should take new intermediate points, to be able to direct himself upon the given points without deviating.

677.— The file-closer who replaces the particular guide, marches so that the latter may conceal from him the given point of direction. He should keep the head of his horse constantly at one pace from the croup of the horse of the guide, and inform the guide if he departs from the given point, as he is more especially charged with the direction of the march.

678.— During the march, the second Captain should superintend the guide charged with the direction, and for this purpose he marches at 10 or 15 paces in rear of this guide.

If, after commencing the march, he perceives that the troopers carry the bridle hand to the left, it is a proof almost certain, that the point of direction is to the left of the perpendicular line; if, on the contrary, the troopers are obliged to open to the right, it is an evidence that the point of direction is to the right of the perpendicular line; the second Captain then gives a point of direction more to the right or more to the left.

The second Captain observes that the rear-rank men are exactly at their proper distance, and that the file-closers march well aligned.

679.— The regularity of the march in line depending much upon the attention which the flank files pay to their alignment, these files should be at first exercised separately.

680.— [Pl. 90.] The squadron being in line, and correctly aligned, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Flank files forward.*
2. *Guide right.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the particular guide of the right moves up abreast of the chiefs of platoon; he is immediately replaced by the file-closer of the first platoon.

At the command MARCH, the chiefs of platoon, the flank files, (right and left file of each platoon), and the particular guides, move straight forward, the flank files preserving between each other the necessary interval, in order to receive the troopers of their platoons, and when they have marched 30 paces, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Flank files.*
2. HALT.

At the command HALT, the chiefs of platoon, the flank files, and the particular guides, halt.

The Captain commanding, after being assured that the flank files have marched in a direction perpendicular, and upon a line parallel to the front of the squadron, commands:

1. *Squadron forward.*
2. *Guide right.*
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the flank files and the squadron move forward.

681.— The flank files and the squadron having marched correctly in the given direction, to halt them, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Squadron.*
2. HALT.

At the command HALT, the squadron and the flank files halt.

682.— To cause the platoons to re-enter their places, the Captain commanding, after giving notice to the flank files to stand fast, commands:

1. *Squadron forward.*
2. MARCH.

And when at one pace from the flank files he commands:

1. *Squadron.*
2. HALT.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the second command, the troopers halt.

At the third command, the particular guide and the file-closer who replaces him in the front rank of the squadron resume their places in the line; the troopers return to their intervals together, and dress to the right.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: **FRONT.**

683.— This exercise having been executed several times at the *walk*, is repeated at the *trot*.

684.— When the flank files have become habituated to regulate their movements upon each other, the entire squadron is marched in line, first at the *walk*, and progressively at the *trot* and *gallop*.

685.— [Pl. 91, *fig. A.*] The squadron being in line, to move forward, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Squadron forward.*
2. *Guide right.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, the particular guide and file-closer of the first platoon conform to what is prescribed, [No. 680.](#)

At the command **MARCH**, the squadron moves forward.

686.— To halt the squadron, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Squadron.*
2. **HALT.**
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. **FRONT.**

At the second command, the squadron halts.

At the third command, the squadron aligns itself as prescribed, [No. 584](#).

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: **FRONT**.

687.— The squadron marching at the *walk*, before passing to the *trot*, the Captain commanding assures himself that the point of direction is good, and that the squadron marches with uniformity and steadiness.

When the squadron marches steadily at the *trot*, it passes to the *gallop*.

The Captain commanding observes that the troopers keep their horses quiet, and do not quicken the gait more than necessary, a common fault in the march at the *gallop*. For this purpose, the chiefs of platoon, the guide and the flank files pay attention to keep their horses at an even and moderate *gallop*.

In the marches at the *trot*, and particularly at the *gallop*, it is necessary to slacken the pace as soon as any disorder is discovered.

To march at the *gallop*, the squadron commences at the *walk*, then passes to the *trot*; the same progression is observed in order to halt when marching at the *gallop*; the squadron is then exercised in moving off from a halt at the *trot* and at the *gallop*, and in halting when marching at these gaits.

The squadron is exercised in marching with *the guide on the left*, as with *the guide on the right*.

**Counter-march.**

688.— The squadron being in line, to face it in the opposite direction, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Counter-march by the right flank.*
2. *By file to the right.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 91, *fig. B.*) At the second command, the chiefs of platoon turn *to the right*, the chief of the first platoon placing himself in front of his first file; the file-closers turn *to the left*, and pass to the left of the squadron, those of the second division abreast of the front rank, the second Captain on their left, those of the first division abreast of the rear rank.

The particular guide of the right places himself promptly behind the particular guide of the left, facing to the rear, the croup of his horse at six paces from the rear rank.

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed as prescribed, [No. 508](#).

When the first file is at two paces from the particular guide who indicates the place where it is to form, the Captain commanding commands:

1. FRONT.
2. HALT.
3. *Right-DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

The file-closers follow the movement, and resume their places as they arrive at them.

After having commanded **MARCH**, the Captain commanding moves rapidly to the flank by which the movement is executed, in order to direct the head of the column, and to reform the squadron to the rear upon a line parallel to the one it at first occupied.

At the commands **HALT** and *Right*-**DRESS**, the second Captain *turns-about* and places himself abreast of the rear rank to align it.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: **FRONT**. At this command, the chiefs of platoon face to the front, by a turn to the left.

The counter-march should be executed generally at the trot. For this purpose, after the second command, the Captain commanding indicates the gait.

689.— This movement is executed by the left flank, following the same principles but by inverse means, at the commands 1. *Counter-march by the left flank*; 2. *By file to the left*; 3. **MARCH**; and 1. **FRONT**; 2. **HALT**; 3. *Left*-**DRESS**; 4. **FRONT**.

### **Wheelings.**

690.— The principles prescribed for the platoon, **Nos. 511** and following, are applicable to the squadron wheeling on a fixed or a moveable pivot. The execution of it becomes more difficult as the front is extended; it requires on the part of officers and troopers, a particular and constant attention.

691.— During the wheel, the chiefs of platoon keep at the centre of their platoons, and correctly aligned upon each other, keeping their horses upon the arc of circle more or less great, in proportion to their distance from the pivot.



The chief of the platoon on which the wheel is made, regulates himself upon the chief of the platoon on the marching flank, observing to move progressively, as the latter advances in the new direction.

The chief of the platoon on the marching flank, describes his circle so as neither to move from, nor approach the other chiefs of platoon.

The files on the flanks of platoons dress upon each other, all observing the progression of the marching flank, and keeping upon the arcs they should describe.

692.— The particular guide placed on the side of the pivot is the actual pivot, although he is not counted in the rank.

In every kind of wheel, the marching flank of a squadron should measure with accuracy its arc of circle; if it is too great, the files are made to open and disunite, and the wheel becomes longer; if it is too small, the files are crowded, there is confusion, and the pivot is forced.

### **To wheel on a fixed pivot.**

693.— The squadron is exercised in wheeling on a fixed pivot, first at the *walk*, then at the *trot*; also at the *gallop*, when the troopers are confirmed in all the principles.

The squadron being halted and correctly aligned, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Squadron in circle right wheel.*
2. MARCH.

[Pl. 92.] Which is executed on the principles prescribed, No. 518.

694.— To halt the squadron during the wheel, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Squadron.*
2. HALT.
3. *Left—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the first command, the troopers of the rear rank straighten their horses, and resume their places behind their file-leaders.

At the second command, all the troopers halt.

At the third command, the squadron dresses to the left.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: FRONT.

695.— If, instead of halting, the Captain commanding wishes to resume the direct march, he commands:

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the troopers of the rear rank straighten their horses, and place themselves behind their file-leaders, and the whole squadron moves forward at the gait in which it was marching before the wheel.

696.— The squadron is halted, if the slightest confusion arises during the wheel; the Captain commanding explains the origin of the fault, and the means of repairing it.

When the troopers begin to understand these movements, the whole circle is passed over several times without halting.

If the Captain commanding wishes to halt the squadron during the wheel, it is necessary, particularly in the quick gaits, to command *squadron* in sufficient time to enable the troopers to prepare to halt, and **HALT** when the marching flank is in the act of arriving upon the new direction, so that the pivot may not be required to move.

697.— The squadron wheeling steadily at the *walk*, to pass to the *trot*, the Captain commanding chooses a moment in which the horses are perfectly calm. After one or two turns, the squadron is made to resume the *walk*. The squadron wheeling well at the *trot*, is exercised to wheel at the *gallop*, upon the same principles. After one or two turns, it passes to the *trot*, then to the *walk*.

698.— The troopers being habituated to these movements, are exercised in changing the side of the wheel, without halting. These changes of wheel to both hands are executed at the *walk* and at the *trot*, but never at the *gallop*.

The squadron wheeling to the right, at the *walk*, or at the *trot*, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Squadron in circle left wheel.*
2. **MARCH.**

Which is executed as prescribed, **No. 521.**

699.— The wheels at the *gallop*, and the changes of wheel without halting require much attention on the part of the troopers and non-commissioned officers; the correct execution of these movements depends upon their measuring properly the arc to be passed over and regulating the rapidity of the gait.

The squadron is afterwards exercised to wheel at the *trot* and at the *gallop*, in commencing from a halt, and to halt while wheeling at these gaits.

700.— The squadron being halted, the Captain commanding commands:

- |    |                               |   |   |
|----|-------------------------------|---|---|
| 1. | <i>Squadron</i>               | { | <i>right (or left) wheel.</i><br><i>right-about (or left-about) wheel.</i><br><i>right-half (or left-half) wheel.</i> |
| 2. | MARCH.                        |   |   |
| 3. | <i>Squadron.</i>              |   |   |
| 4. | HALT.                         |   |   |
| 5. | <i>Left (or right)—DRESS.</i> |   |   |
| 6. | FRONT.                        |   |   |

Which is executed as prescribed, [Nos. 523](#), and following.

The Captain commanding allows sufficient time to elapse between the first and second command, for the troopers to gather their horses, that they may commence the move together.

These movements are executed at the different gaits; but they should not be repeated too frequently at the *gallop*, in order not to fatigue the horses.

701.— To exercise the squadron while marching at the wheels on a fixed pivot, the Captain commanding commands:

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| 1. <i>Squadron</i>                     | { | <i>right (or left) wheel.</i><br><i>right-about (or left-about) wheel.</i><br><i>right-half (or left-half) wheel.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                              |   |   |
| 3. FORWARD.                            |   |   |
| 4. <i>Guide left (or guide right).</i> |   |   |

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 527](#).

702.— The squadron being on the march, to cause it to wheel in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding gives the command *trot* or *gallop* before that of MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the pivot stops; the marching flank takes the gait indicated.

At the command FORWARD, both move forward at the gait indicated for the wheel.

### **To wheel on a moveable pivot.**

703.— In the wheels on a moveable pivot, the pivot should describe an arc of circle of 20 paces, at the same time slackening the gait; the marching flank increases its gait. The sixth file of the second platoon, which is the middle of the radius of the wheel, preserves the gait at which the squadron was marching. The troopers placed between this file and the pivot diminish proportionally their gait; these placed between this file and the marching flank augment proportionally theirs.

The wheel on a moveable pivot is executed upon the guide, or upon the opposite flank.

After a wheel on a moveable pivot, the guide remains where it was before the wheel, and is given a new point of direction.

704.— The squadron marching in line, to change direction to the right, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Right*—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

(Pl. 93.) Which is executed as prescribed, No. 529, the pivot describing *an arc of circle of 20 paces*.

When this wheel is executed properly at the *walk*, the marching flank taking the *trot*, it is repeated at the *trot*, the marching flank taking the *gallop*.

To change the direction to the left, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Left*—TURN; 2. FORWARD.

### **Individual oblique march.**

705.— The squadron marching in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, without changing the front of the squadron, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Right oblique*.
2. MARCH.

To resume the primitive direction, the Captain commanding commands:

FORWARD.

(Pl. 94, *fig. A*.) Which is executed as prescribed, No. 531.

706.— The squadron marching in line, it is made to gain ground towards its left flank, without changing the front, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the com-

mands: 1. *Left oblique*; 2. MARCH; it resumes the primitive direction at the command: FORWARD.

707.— During the oblique march, the Captain commanding observes that the chiefs of platoon keep on the same line, preserve between them the same interval, and follow parallel directions, in order to preserve the general alignment.

The particular guide who marches abreast of the chiefs of platoon, after having executed a *quarter-turn to the right*, moves straight forward.

This movement is executed at the *walk* or at the *trot*, but never at the *gallop*.

### **Oblique march by platoons.**

708.— The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, by the oblique march by platoons, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right half-wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

(Pl. 94, *fig. B.*) At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its *half-wheel to the right*, on a fixed pivot.

At the third command, each platoon moves forward, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

To cause the squadron to resume the primitive direction, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons left half-wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

Which is executed as just prescribed, but by inverse means.

709.— In the oblique march by platoons, the pivots of the platoons should all halt at the same instant, at the command MARCH, so that all the wheels may terminate at the same time.

During this march, the right guide of the first platoon marches directly upon the point which has been indicated to him. The guides of the other platoons preserve their distances, take for file-leader the fourth trooper from the left of the platoon which precedes them, and keep at two paces from him.

The Captain commanding places himself habitually at two paces outside, and abreast of the front-rank of the second platoon;

The second Captain behind the guide of the first platoon, in order to superintend his direction;

The chiefs of platoon at the centre of their platoons, the head of their horses on a line with the boot of the rear-rank man of the platoon which precedes;

The particular guides, and the file-closers, remain at their places in line.

710.— If the squadron is marching, and this movement is executed, the particular guide who marches abreast of the chiefs of platoon, makes a *half-turn to the right*, and then marches straight forward.



The oblique march by platoons is executed at the *walk*, at the *trot*, and at the *gallop*, the squadron being halted or in motion.

711.— The squadron being in line, it is made to gain ground towards its left flank on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*, and resumes the primitive direction at the commands: 1. *Platoons right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

### Movements by fours.

712.— The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours right wheel*.
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left*.

(Pl. 95.) Which is executed as prescribed, No. 552. The chiefs of platoon march on the side of the guide, at one pace from, and abreast of the leading files of their platoons.

The particular guide of the right marches in front of the column, at one pace from the leading rank of eight, the particular guide of the left behind the last rank of eight of the, fourth platoon.

713.— The squadron having wheeled to the right by fours, and being in column, to change direction to the left, the Captain commanding commands:

*Head of column to the left.*

The chief of the first platoon commands: 1. Left—TURN; 2. FORWARD; which is executed as prescribed, [No. 553](#).

To change direction to the right, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the command: *Head of column to the right.*

714.— To put the squadron again in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours left wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 554](#), the particular guides resuming their places in line.

715.— These movements are executed by the left, on the same principles, at the commands: 1. *By fours left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*; and 1. *By fours right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

**The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground to the rear, and to face it again to the front.**

716.— The squadron being in line, to face it in the opposite direction, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By fours right-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

(Pl. 96.) Which is executed as prescribed, No. 556.

The chiefs of platoon, the file-closers, and the particular guides, *wheel-about* individually, and march, the chiefs of platoon behind the centre of their platoons, the file-closers in front, and the particular guides abreast of the rear-rank, become the front.

At the fourth command, the file-closer nearest the guide passages to the left, in order to place himself in front of the particular guide; the Captain commanding gives him a point of direction, which is also indicated to the particular guide, who, in this movement, remains on the flank of the squadron.

The squadron is *faced again to the front*, by a movement similar to the one just stated.

The *wheels to the left-about by fours*, are executed on the same principles, but by inverse means.

These movements by fours are executed from a halt, and in marching at the *walk* and at the *trot*.

**The squadron marching in line, to break it by platoons, to the right, and to form it again in line.**

717.— The squadron marching in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 652, the pivots halting short, and the left file of each platoon stepping out promptly and regulating its movement upon that of the platoon which is in front, so as to arrive together in column.

To put the squadron again in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons left wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right.*

The marching flanks regulate their movements upon those of the platoon at the head of the column, so as to arrive together in line.

The second Captain gives a point of direction to the particular guide, who moves up on the line of officers, and indicates it also to the file-closer who replaces him on the flank of the squadron.

These movements are executed on the same principles, when the squadron is marching at the *trot* and at the *gallop*.

718.— The squadron marching in line, it is made to gain ground towards its left flank, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*; and is put again in line at the commands: 1. *Platoons right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*.

**The squadron marching in line, to march it to the rear by wheeling the platoons about.**

719.— The squadron marching in line, guide right, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Platoons right-about wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

(Pl. 97.) At the command MARCH, the pivots halt short, and turn upon themselves; the marching flanks step off at the same instant, regulating themselves by the right during the first half of the wheel, so as to arrive together in column, and by the left during the second half, so as to arrive together in line. In each platoon, the rear rank and the file-closers carry the hand towards the marching flank, in order to facilitate the movement.

At the third command, the squadron resumes the direct march.

At the fourth command, the particular guide on the side indicated moves upon the line of officers; he is immediately replaced, and a point of direction given.

If, after wheeling about, the Captain commanding wishes to halt the squadron, instead of commanding FORWARD, he commands: 3. HALT; 4. *Left*—DRESS; 5. FRONT.

720.— This movement is executed by the left, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

721.— In these movements, the particular guide of the right *turns to the right*, moves straight forward the extent of the front of platoon, and *turns again to the right*, in order to place himself on the left of the squadron. The particular guide of the left executes the same movement to place himself on the right of the right of the squadron.

These movements are executed from a halt, and in marching at the *trot* and at the *gallop*.

**The squadron marching in line, to break it to the front by platoons, and to reform it.**

722.— The Captain commanding commands:

1. *By platoons to the front.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 647](#), except that the chief of the first platoon, continuing to march on, does not command *platoon forward*, neither MARCH, but repeats the indication of the guide.

This movement is executed in the same manner, at the *trot* and at the *gallop*.

723.— The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form squadron.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 649](#).

724.— The squadron marching at the *trot*, this movement is executed on the same principles, except that the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH; the right particular guide, at the command *guide right*, moves up on the line of officers, and each of the other chiefs of platoon commands: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH: on arriving in line. The movement is executed in the same manner when the column is at the *gallop*, each platoon passing successively to the trot.

725.— The squadron marching in line, it is broken by the left on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by platoons to the front*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*. It is reformed at the same gait at the commands: 1. *Form squadron*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

**The squadron marching in line, to break it to the front by platoons, in doubling the gait, and to reform it.**

726.— The Captain commanding commands:

1. *By platoons to the front—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Trot*; and those of the three other platoons command: *Platoon right half-wheel—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the movement is executed as prescribed, No. 647.

The squadron marching in line at the *trot*, the movement is executed at the *gallop* on the same principles.

727.— The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form squadron—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

(Pl. 98.) At the first command, the chiefs of the three last platoons command: *Platoon left half-wheel—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chiefs of the three last platoons, the first platoon continues to march straight forward at the *walk*, and its chief repeats the indication of the guide.

The three other platoons execute their *half-wheel to the left at the trot*, on a fixed pivot.

The half-wheels being nearly terminated, the chiefs of these platoons command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; they move straight forward, and as soon as the right file of their platoon is in the direction of the left file of the platoon which precedes, they command: 1. *Right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH 3. FORWARD; and then, *walk*; in sufficient time to command MARCH, when their platoon arrives in line; then the troopers resume the *walk*, and align themselves in marching.

Each platoon, after its *half-wheel to the left*, moves straight forward on the point where it is to turn, and without obliquing towards the platoons which precede it.

The second Captain gives a point of direction to the particular guide of the right, who moves upon the line of officers at the command, *guide right*.



728.— The column being at the *trot*, this movement is executed at the commands: 1. *Form squadron—gallop*; 2. MARCH 3. *Guide right*; the first platoon continues to march at the *trot*, and the three last platoons take the *gallop*, and resume the *trot* when they arrive on the line of the first.

When the column is at the *gallop*, the squadron is formed at the same gait as prescribed, No. 724, each platoon passing successively to the *trot*.

729.— The squadron marching in line, it is broken by the left by platoons, in doubling the gait, on the principles prescribed, No. 726, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by platoons to the front—trot* (or *gallop*); 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*. The squadron is reformed, in doubling the gait, at the commands: 1. *Form squadron—trot* (or *gallop*); 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

### Passage of obstacles.

730.— The squadron marching in line, to execute the passage of obstacles, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Obstacle.*
2. *First platoon.*
3. HALT.

(Pl. 99.) At the command HALT, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon halts, and its chief immediately commands: 1. *Left oblique—trot*; 2. MARCH; and this platoon doubles upon the second.

When the platoon which has obliqued is in rear of the one upon which it has doubled, its chief commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; 3. *Walk*; 4. MARCH.

To cause the platoon which has obliqued to return to its place, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *First platoon.*
2. INTO LINE.

At the command INTO LINE, the chief of the platoon commands: 1. *Right oblique-trot*; 2. MARCH; when opposite the ground the platoon is to occupy, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; 3. *Walk*; and when the platoon is in line, 4. MARCH.

The chief of the platoon commands: FORWARD, a little before its left file has passed beyond the right file of the platoon on which it is to form.

731.— If the guide is to the right, as soon as the first platoon has re-entered upon the line, the Captain commanding indicates the new guide; he does the same as soon as the fourth platoon is in line, if the guide is to the left.

The second platoon executes the same movement, in obliquing to the right behind the first platoon; the third in obliquing to the left behind the fourth, and the fourth in obliquing to the right behind the third; each platoon should always double upon that with which it forms the division.

The chiefs of platoon give the prescribed commands rapidly, and cause the degree of obliquity to be a little increased, that the movement may be more promptly executed, and to enable the platoons to take their distances.

All these movements are executed first at the *walk*. When the squadron is at the *trot*, the movement is executed at the *gallop*.

732.— The squadron marching in line, to execute the passage of obstacle upon the head of each platoon, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *In each platoon—by fours (or by twos)—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

(Pl. 100.) At the first command, the chiefs of platoon command: *By fours (or by twos)—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, each platoon breaks by fours as prescribed, No. 540; the chiefs of platoon march at the head of their platoons; the particular guide of the right, who marches on the line of officers, places himself on the right of the chief of the first platoon; the particular guide of the left, in rear of the fourth platoon, and the file-closers upon the right flank of their platoons.

Each platoon being thus broken in column, should preserve a direction parallel to that of the one which is the guide, keeping the same line, and always at the distance of its front, to be able at any moment to reform the line.

If the ground requires a platoon to deviate from its direction, it should return to it as soon as possible, and recover its proper distance with respect to the side toward the guide.

In marching thus, the Captain commanding may cause the squadron to break *by twos*, and *by file*, observing to form *twos* and *fours* as soon as the ground will permit.

These movements are executed when the squadron is marching at the *trot* or at the *gallop*.

This formation being only momentary, the guide remains on the side it was during the march in line, that the base of the alignment may not be changed.

733.— To reform the squadron, each platoon having broken by fours or by twos at the trot, right in front, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form platoons.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the first command, the chiefs of platoons command: *Form platoon.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, each platoon forms as prescribed, [No. 537](#).

If the ground does not permit all the platoons to form at once, the one before which the obstacle is presented forms in rear of the other platoon of its division, and retakes its place in line as soon as practicable.

734.— These movements are executed by the left, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands:

1. *In each platoon—by fours (or by twos)—from the left—trot;*
2. MARCH;
3. *Guide left;* and to reform the squadron,
1. *Form platoons;*
2. MARCH;
3. *Guide left.*

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

**Charge.**

735.— In the charge, as in every other direct march, it is important to keep the horses straight. As soon as any confusion is observed, it is necessary to halt and recommence the movement.

The squadron is exercised at the charge: 1. *In line*; 2. *In column*; 3. *As foragers*.

*The charge in line* is executed by the squadron when in line; it should be as short as possible, so as to arrive in good order, and without fatiguing the horses.

*The charge in column* is executed by the squadron broken in column with distance.

To execute *the charge as foragers*, all the troopers of the squadron disperse, and direct themselves each upon the point he wishes to attack, observing not to lose sight of their officers, who charge with them.

The line upon which the squadron should reform after the charge is marked out as prescribed, [No. 569](#), by two non-commissioned officers who are file-closers, and who are placed 240 paces in front, facing, and at a distance from each other equal to the front of the squadron.

Non-commissioned officers are also placed opposite the right flank at the different points where the changes of gait should take place.

If the guide is on the left, they are placed opposite the left flank.

736.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding orders the sabres to be drawn, and the platoons to charge one after another, commencing by the right.

For this purpose the Captain commanding advances 240 paces to the front, taking a Trumpeter with him; and, when he wishes the movement to commence, he causes a signal to be given.

The first platoon then moves forward at the commands of its chiefs, as prescribed, [No. 569](#). It passes successively from the *walk* to the *trot*, and from the *trot* to the *gallop*, and from the *gallop* to the *charge*.

The three other platoons break in their turn, when the preceding one is halted.

737.— To execute the charge by the entire squadron, the Captain commanding places himself in front of the centre of his squadron, and commands:

1. *Squadron forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

When the squadron has marched forward 20 paces, he commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At 60 paces further, he commands:

1. *Gallop.*
2. MARCH.

At 80 paces further, he commands:

CHARGE.

At this command, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers take the position of the sabre, or of the lance, indicated, [No. 569](#).

When the squadron, after having passed over 60 paces at the charge, is 20 paces from the non-commissioned officers who mark the line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadron.*
3. HALT.
4. *Right*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

At the command *Attention*, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers prepare to slacken the pace, and carry the sabre to the shoulder. (*Lancers*, carry the lance.)

At the command *Squadron*, the chiefs of platoon command: *Platoon*; and the troopers pass to the *trot*.

At the command HALT, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers halt.

At the command *Right*—DRESS, they align themselves to the right.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commanding commands: FRONT.

738.— To assure himself that the principles prescribed, [No. 570](#), are exactly followed, the Captain commanding sometimes places himself in front of the squadron, facing it, and at the distance that will enable him to remark better the faults. In this case, he is replaced on the line of officers by the second Captain, who gives the commands.

739.— When the squadron executes the charge correctly, instead of halting when the charge is finished, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Trot.*
3. MARCH.

At these commands, repeated by the chiefs of the platoon, the squadron passes *to the trot*, at 20 paces beyond the line marked out, he commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoon—as foragers.*
2. MARCH.

At these commands, repeated by the chief of the platoon designated, the platoon moves forward *at the gallop*, and disperses as foragers. A Trumpeter follows the chief of the platoon.

The squadron follows this platoon *at the trot*; when it has passed over 150 paces, the Captain commanding causes the *rally* to be sounded. At this signal, repeated by the Trumpeter of the platoon dispersed as foragers, the latter rally upon the squadron, as prescribed, No. 571; and when three-fourths of the platoon have rallied and are in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Gallop.*
3. MARCH.
4. CHARGE.

The squadron executes again the charge in line; the troopers who have not been able to rally, charge upon the flanks of the squadron.



740.— To exercise the troopers in rallying upon any point whatever, the Captain commanding, during the march at the *trot*, causes the squadron to gain ground towards one of its flanks, by executing a *half-wheel to the right* or *to the left*, or by *breaking by platoons to the right* or *to the left*, and reforming immediately in a new direction.

741.— The squadron marching in column with distance, at the *trot*, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *To the charge.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Gallop*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon commences the *gallop*.

The other platoons follow at the *trot*, each taking the *gallop*, when the platoon which precedes is at the distance of 50 paces.

When the first platoon has passed over 80 paces at the *gallop*, its chief commands: CHARGE.

At this command, the platoon executes the charge; and when it has passed over 60 paces, its chief causes it to pass to the *trot*, by the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Trot*; 3. MARCH.

The other platoons pay attention to the movements of the platoon which precedes them, so as to change the gait in time, and to resume their ordinary distance; the Captain commanding halts the column when he thinks proper.

These charges are executed, each platoon taking in its turn the head of the column.

742.— The squadron marching in column with distance, at the *trot*, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *First platoon—as foragers.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon disperses as foragers. The squadron continues to march at the *trot*, and when it has passed over 100 or 150 paces, the Captain commanding causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the platoon rallies and reforms at the rear of the column, or at its place in line if the squadron has been put in line.

### **Rallying.**

743.— To give the troopers the habit of rallying promptly, after having been dispersed as foragers, the Captain commanding places the squadron at the extremity of the ground; and after giving notice to the files on the flanks of platoons, the file-closers and the Trumpeters, to remain upon the line with him, he causes the *disperse* to be sounded. At this signal, the troopers disperse and charge as foragers; when they are at the distance of 150 or 200 paces, the Captain commanding causes the *rally* to be sounded, which is executed as prescribed, No. 571.

The Captain commanding observes that the troopers disperse without confusion; that, in rallying, they direct themselves to the right and to the left, outside of the flanks of the squadron, in order to unmask promptly the front of the squadron, and to reform in passing by the rear.

744.— When the troopers rally without confusion, this movement is repeated without requiring the flank files, &c., to remain on the line of the squadron.

At the signal to *disperse*, the squadron disperses in every direction to the front.

When the squadron is dispersed, the Captain commanding causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the officers, the non-commissioned officers, and the troopers, rejoin rapidly; the officers align themselves promptly upon the Captain commanding, and the non-commissioned officers mark immediately the flanks of the platoons.

As soon as the Captain commanding has formed two-thirds of the squadron, he moves forward, charges again, and halts.

When the squadron is dispersed as foragers, the Captain commanding should sometimes establish himself *to the right* or *to the left* of the direction followed by the troopers, and then order the *rally* to be sounded. To accustom them to rally upon any point he may select.

These movements are first executed at the *trot*, and then at the *gallop*.

Light cavalry should be particularly exercised in *charging as foragers* and in *rallying*.

### Skirmishing.

745.— When the squadron is in sight of the skirmishers, the Captain commanding orders no signal except the rally. The chief of the skirmishers observes the movements of the squadron he covers, and conforms to them as soon as practi-

cable, requiring his Trumpeter to sound the necessary signals.

When the squadron changes front, the chief of the skirmishers moves upon the new front, unless the Captain commanding gives orders to the contrary.

If the squadron is out of sight of the skirmishers, the Captain commanding causes the signals which correspond to the movements he executes to be sounded, in order to give notice to the chief of the skirmishers, who conforms to them as soon as practicable.

The Trumpeter who follows the chief of the skirmishers should give the signals only upon the order of that officer. The skirmishers should execute their movements only by the signals of the Trumpeter who accompanies the officer who commands them.

With respect to the signals, as well as to commence and to cease firing, the troopers conform to what is prescribed in the *school of the platoon; mounted* [No. 572, and the succeeding paragraphs].

When several platoons act as skirmishers, the firing is commenced by the right of each platoon.

When a squadron in acting as skirmishers, the Captain commanding is always followed by a Trumpeter. The others are placed several steps in rear of the line of skirmishers, at equal distances from the centre to the extremities, in order to repeat as soon as possible the signals given by the Trumpeter of the Captain commanding.

746.— The squadron being in line, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoon—as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon orders the sabres to be returned, or the lances to be rested, the holsters to be uncovered, and the arms to be loaded; he then commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. *Trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the platoon, this platoon moves forward. After marching 100 paces to the front, the chief of the platoon commands: 1. *Six files from right (or from left)—as skirmishers*; 2. MARCH 3. *Guide right (or guide left)*; which is executed as prescribed, [No. 572](#).

747.— When the Captain commanding wishes the skirmishers to re-enter the squadron, he causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the chief of the skirmishers rallies his platoon, as prescribed, [No. 574](#), and then rejoins the squadron at the *gallop*, directing himself upon one of the flanks to resume his place in line.

748.— When the Captain commanding wishes to relieve a platoon which is skirmishing, the chief of the new platoon, after causing the arms to be loaded, moves forward upon the reserve of the platoon which is acting as skirmishers. On coming up abreast of it, he orders out 6 files as skirmishers, as has been explained; the remaining 6 files halt and draw sabres.

As soon as the new skirmishers have passed 5 paces beyond those they are to relieve, the latter *turn-about* and

rally upon their reserve. The platoon having rallied is conducted back to the squadron at the *trot*.

749.— When the entire squadron is to act as skirmishers, the Captain commanding orders the sabres to be returned or the lance rested, the holsters to be uncovered, and the arms to be loaded; he then commands:

1. *Squadron forward.*
2. *Guide right.*
3. *Trot.*
4. MARCH.

Having arrived at the point where the reserve is to be established, about 100 paces from the front of the body to be covered, and more if it has been commanded, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Three first (or three last) platoons—as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the chief of the platoon which is to support the skirmishers, halts that platoon, and orders the sabres to be drawn. The chiefs of the three other platoons continue to march on, each directing himself by the shortest route, 100 paces to the front towards the part of the line his platoon is to occupy, and having reached it, he disperses his platoon as skirmishers.

The right platoon covers the right of the regiment, and extends 30 or 40 paces beyond it; another platoon covers the centre, and the left platoon covers the left, extending also 30 or 40 paces beyond. The chiefs of these platoons

remain 25 paces in rear of the line of skirmishers, and pass over the extent occupied by the troopers of their platoons.

The reserve remains in rear of the centre of the line of skirmishers. If the Captain commanding thinks proper to divide it, each fraction moves upon the point designated, the first commanded by the officer, the other by the non-commissioned officer who was the file-closer.

750.— The squadron having moved forward to cover the regiment, if the Captain commanding wishes only one division to act as skirmishers, he commands: 1. *First* (or *second*) *division—as skirmishers*; 2. MARCH; which is executed as prescribed, No. 749.

The division which serves as a reserve remains as a single troop, or, if the Captain commanding thinks proper, it is divided into two parts.

751.— The Captain commanding, followed by the first Sergeant, keeps habitually half-way between the reserves and the skirmishers, to direct the movements.

The second Captain, followed by the second Sergeant, passes the line, and gives notice to the Captain commanding of everything that it is important for him to know.

752.— If the Captain commanding wishes to rally the skirmishers upon themselves, he causes *the rally of skirmishers*, No. 6, to be sounded.

At this signal, each platoon rallies as rapidly as possible upon its chief.

If the Captain commanding then wishes to rally the squadron, he moves upon the point where he intends it shall

form, and causes the *rally* to be sounded when three-fourths of each platoon has rallied.

At this new signal, the reserve and each platoon of skirmishers move at a *gallop* upon the point where the Captain commanding is placed. The troopers who did not rejoin their platoon when it rallied upon itself, direct themselves to the squadron.

753.— The squadron being dispersed as skirmishers, if the Captain commanding wishes it to rally immediately, he orders *rally* to be sounded; at this signal, the officers, the skirmishers and the reserve, rally upon the point occupied by the Captain commanding.

754.— The troopers being dispersed as skirmishers, if the Captain commanding wishes them to charge as foragers, he orders them to cease firing, and causes the *disperse* to be sounded.

At this signal, the chiefs of platoon move forward in line, and the skirmishers draw sabres; they charge immediately. The reserve follows at the *trot* or at the *gallop*, as may be necessary.

After the charge, the Captain commanding orders the *rally* to be sounded, when the troopers rally in rear of the reserve.

755.— The skirmishers being rallied by platoons, as prescribed, No. 752, if the Captain commanding wishes to charge, he orders the *charge* to be sounded.

At this signal, each chief of platoon conducts his platoon to the charge in good order; the reserve supports the movement at the *trot* or at the *gallop*.



The Captain commanding places himself so as to be able to direct the general movement.

The second Captain charges with the platoon nearest to him.

The platoons rally behind the reserve; the Captain commanding moves upon that point at the same time that he orders the *rally* to be sounded.

If, in a squadron of dragoons, one platoon dismounts to fight on foot, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoon—prepare to fight on foot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the platoon orders the sabres to be returned.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the platoon, this platoon moves forward; having marched 12 paces, the chief of the platoon halts it and commands:

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

Which is executed as prescribed for the dragoons, [No. 518](#). The platoon being formed on foot, it is conducted to the point it is to defend, and is exercised as prescribed, [Nos. 211, 212, 239](#).

The horses without riders will be lead in rear of the centre of the squadron.

When the Captain commanding wishes the dismounted platoon to remount, he orders the *rally* to be sounded. At this signal, the chief of this platoon places himself at the point on which he wishes the dragoons to rally, if dispersed

as skirmishers, and the rally is executed as prescribed for the dragoons, [No. 574](#).

The platoon being formed, is conducted by the rear rank to within twelve paces of the ground occupied by their horses, and the chief of this platoon gives the command *dragoons mount*, which is executed as prescribed, [No. 578](#); it resumes its place in the squadron.

If the Captain commanding wishes a division to dismount, he commands:

*First (or second) division—prepare to fight on foot.*

Which is executed on the principles prescribed for a platoon. The 2d Lieutenant commanding the second platoon of the division, remains with the horses of the dismounted men; the 1st Lieutenant commands the dismounted dragoons; he forms two platoons which are exercised on the principles prescribed in the school of the platoon.

If the whole squadron dismounts to fight on foot, the Captain commanding commands:

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

Which is executed by the whole squadron, as prescribed for a platoon, [No. 578](#).

The second Captain and an officer remain with the horses of the dismounted men; the Captain commanding moves his dismounted squadron upon the point it is to defend, and conforms to what is prescribed in the *school of the squadron, dismounted*.

The squadron remounts by the commands and on the principles prescribed for a platoon, [No. 578](#).

The right file of the squadron remains mounted.

The particular guides dismount, and also the two Trumpeters who follow the Captain commanding and the Lieutenant commanding the skirmishers.

The file-closers who remain mounted take their places in front of their platoons.

The horses of the officers who dismount are held as follows:

Those of the Captain commanding and the Lieutenant commanding the first platoon, by a Trumpeter who remains mounted the right of the squadron. He holds the Captain's horse on his right and the other on his left.

The trooper on the right of the front rank holds the horses of the two other commandants of platoons.

The trooper on the right of the rear rank, holds with his right hand the horse of the particular guide of the right and the horses of the two Trumpeters are linked, as prescribed, on his left.

The trooper on the left of the front rank holds the horse of the particular guide of the left with his left hand.

The trooper on the left of the rear rank holds the horse of the file-closer who dismounts.

#### THE COLUMN BY DIVISIONS.

756.— The squadron being in line, if the Captain commanding wishes to form it in column by divisions, he commands:

1. *Divisions right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT (or FORWARD).
4. *Guide left (or right).*

Which is executed as prescribed, No 603, and 652, in order to break the squadron by platoons to the right or to the left, in halting after the wheels or without halting.

The same movements are executed, when the squadron is marching in line.

The principles prescribed for the column by platoons, are applicable to the march in column by divisions, the different modes of passing from line into column, and from column into line.

To gain ground towards its flanks or to the rear, employ the means prescribed for the column by platoons. The wheels-about can be also executed by divisions.

The distance measured from the croup of the horses of the rear rank of one division, to the head of the horses of the division which follows, should be equal to the front of the division, minus the depth of the two ranks.

In the wheels on a moveable pivot by divisions, the ninth file of the platoon upon which the wheel is executed, is the middle point of the radius of the wheel. *The pivot describes an arc of circle of ten paces.*

757.— The squadron marching in column by platoons, right in front, to form the divisions at the same gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form divisions.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons command: *Platoon left half-wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the same officers, the second and fourth platoons execute a *half-wheel to the left* on a fixed pivot. The first and third platoons continue to march straight forward, and after having marched 30 paces, their chiefs command: HALT.

The chiefs of the second and fourth platoons, when the *half-wheel to the left* is nearly terminated, command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; they move straight forward, and as soon as the right file of their platoon arrives in the direction of the left file of the platoon which precedes, they command: 1. *Right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; they move forward, and command HALT, on arriving abreast of the platoon belonging to the same division.

The Lieutenants commanding divisions then command: *Left-DRESS*, move to the left of the division, rectify the alignment, command: FRONT, and return to the centre of their platoons.

When the column is at the *trot*, to form divisions at the same gait, conform to the principles just prescribed, except that the chiefs of the first and third platoons, at the first command, command: *Walk*; at the command MARCH, repeated by them, their platoons pass to the *walk*, continue to march on; and that the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons, which execute their movements in marching at the *trot*, command: *Walk*, in sufficient time to command MARCH when their platoons come up abreast of those on which they are to form.

The Captain commanding then commands: *Guide left*.

When the column in at the *gallop*, to form the divisions at the same gait, conform to the same principles, the first and third platoons passing to the *trot* at the command MARCH, and the second and fourth platoons taking the *trot* as they come up.

The column having the left in front, conform to the same principles, the first and third platoons executing in an inverse sense what has been prescribed for the second and fourth; and the latter conforming to what has been prescribed for the first and third.

758.— The squadron marching in column by divisions, right in front, to break the divisions by platoons, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By platoons.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons command: *Platoon right half-wheel.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the same officers, the second and fourth platoons execute a *half-wheel to the right* on a fixed pivot, and the first and third platoons continue to march on.

The chiefs of the second and fourth platoons, the *half-wheel to the right* being nearly terminated, command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; they move straight forward, and as soon as the left file of their platoon arrives in the direction of the left file of the platoon which precedes, they command: 1. *Left half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; and move forward in taking their proper distances.

The divisions are broken by platoons, on the same principles, in marching at the *trot* or at the *gallop*.

The column having the left in front, the Captain commanding commands: 1. *By the left—by platoons*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*, which is executed on the same principles, the first and third platoons executing in an inverse sense what is prescribed for the second and fourth, and the latter conforming to what is prescribed for the first and third platoons.

759.— The squadron marching in column by platoons, right in front, to form divisions in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Form divisions—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed, [No. 757](#), the first and third platoons continuing to march at the same gait, and the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons commanding: 1. *Platoon left half-wheel—trot*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*; and 1. *Right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Walk*. When they arrive abreast of the platoon on which they form, they command; 5. MARCH.

The column marching at the *trot*, the divisions are formed at the *gallop*, on the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Form divisions—gallop*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

When the column is at the *gallop*, the divisions are formed at the same gait, the first and third platoons taking the *trot* at the command MARCH.

760.— The squadron marching in column by divisions, right in front, to break the divisions by platoons, in doubling the gait, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *By platoons—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the first command, the chiefs of the first and third platoons command: *Trot*; those of the second and fourth platoons command: *Platoon right half-wheel—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the first and third platoons move forward at the *trot*. The second and fourth execute their *half-wheel to the right* on a fixed pivot, at the *trot*, and the movement is executed as prescribed, [No. 758](#).

The column being at the *trot*, to break by platoons at the *gallop*, conform to the same principles, at the commands: 1. *By platoons—gallop*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left.*

When the column marches at the *gallop*, the divisions are broken at the same gait.

761.— The squadron being in line, to break it by divisions by the right to march to the left, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Divisions break by the right—to march to the left.*
2. MARCH.



Which is executed as prescribed for the column by platoons, each first Lieutenant commanding successively MARCH, when the division which precedes arrives opposite the centre of the second platoon of his own division.

The same principles are observed, to break by the left to march to the right.

762.— To break the squadron by division to the rear by the right, to march to the left, the Captain commanding commands:

1. *Division, break by the right to the rear—to march to the left.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed for the column by platoons, each first Lieutenant commanding successively MARCH, when the chief of the division which was on his right has commanded FORWARD, after having executed his *wheel to the right-about*.

To break to the rear by the left to march to the right, follow the same principles.

#### THE SQUADRON OF SIXTY-FOUR FILES.

763.— The principles established for the squadron of forty-eight files, are applicable to the squadron of sixty-four files, with the following modifications:

The platoons being of sixteen files, the distance measured from the croup of the rear-rank of one platoon, to the head of the horses of the front-rank of the platoon which follows, is *ten paces*.

For the changes of direction, conform to what is prescribed, when the platoons are composed of twelve files, except that *the arc described by the pivot is of six paces*.

The squadron marching in column by platoons, it is broken by sections, on the principles indicated to break by fours, at the commands: 1. *By sections*; 2. MARCH. The same movements are executed *doubling the gait*. The sections are commanded as prescribed, [Title 1st, Article 2d](#).

In the movement to *break by platoons by the right to march to the left*, each chief of platoon gives the command MARCH, when the platoon which precedes, after having turned to the left, arrives opposite the centre of his own platoon.

In the movement to *break by platoons to the rear by the right to march to the left*, each chief of platoon gives the command MARCH, when the chief of the platoon which precedes, after having executed his *wheel to the right-about*, commands: FORWARD.

In the wheels of a division on a moveable pivot, the *arc of circle is of 12 paces*; the twelfth file from the pivot should preserve the gait at which the division was marching; for the squadron, the *arc of circle described by the pivot being of 24 paces*, the eighth file of the second platoon from the side of the pivot, should preserve the gait at which the squadron was marching.

The squadron being in line, to break by sections, conform to the principles prescribed in order to break by platoons, at the commands: 1. *Section right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT (or FORWARD); 4. *Guide left*; or 1. *Section right wheel—head of column to the right (or to the left)*.

In the column by sections, the distance from one Section to another is *two paces*.

The changes of direction of the column by sections, are executed on the principles prescribed for the column marching by the flank, the pivot describing an *arc of circle of 5 paces*, without slackening the gait.

For the oblique march, conform to what is prescribed for the *column by fours*.

The sections are broken by fours on the principles *to break the platoons by fours*, at the same gait, and in doubling the gait.

The squadron marching in column by sections, it is formed *to the front*, or *on right into line*, on the principles prescribed for these formations, when marching in *column by fours*.

The squadron marching in column by sections, it is formed at the same gait, or in doubling the gait, by the means prescribed for the *formation front into line when marching by fours*.

The squadron marching in column by sections, it is formed *left into line*, on the principles prescribed for the squadron marching *in column by platoons*.

The squadron is broken by sections for the *formation of close column*, and for the *passage of lines*.

# SUPPLEMENT

---

## A MANUAL FOR COLT'S REVOLVER.

The trooper being mounted, holding the reins as prescribed in Cavalry Tactics, the pistol either in the holster or pistol-case, the instructor will command:

*Draw—PISTOL.*

*2 times.*

1. At the first command, unbuckle the holster or pistol-case, seize the pistol by the handle with the right hand, holding it between the palm of the hand and the three last fingers, the forefinger resting on the guard, the thumb on the handle.

2. At the second command, draw out the pistol and elevate it, the guard to the front, the wrist at the height of, and six inches from, the right shoulder.

*Loading in six times.*

1. LOAD.

*1 time and 1 motion.*

Place the pistol in the bridle-hand, holding it by the handle in front of the body, the hammer between the thumb and forefinger and turned to the left, the muzzle pointing upwards. Carry the right hand to the cartridge-box and open it.

## 2. HANDLE-CARTRIDGE.

*1 time and 1 motion.*

Seize the cartridge with the thumb and the first two fingers, and carry it to the mouth.

## 3. TEAR-CARTRIDGE.

*1 time and 1 motion.*

Bite off the end and carry the cartridge opposite the chamber nearest the lever.

## 4. CHARGE-CARTRIDGE.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. Empty the powder into the chamber, and insert the ball, pressing it down as far as possible with the thumb and fore-finger.

2. Turn the pistol with the left hand, bringing the hammer towards the body, and cock it with the thumb of the right hand.

## 5. RAM-CARTRIDGE.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. Seize the lever at the catch with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, ram down the ball, and replace the lever.

2. Let down the hammer with the right hand, and carry the hand to the cartridge-box.

Repeat as above until all the chambers are loaded.

## 6. PRIME.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. Lower the muzzle towards the right side by turning the wrist of the bridle-hand, the muzzle pointing downwards, the hammer to the front, the left wrist resting against the stomach; half-cock the pistol with the left thumb, turn the cylinder with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand until it clicks, take a cap and press it on the exposed cone. Turn again the cylinder until it clicks, and so on until all the cones are capped, the hammer resting on the safety notch.

2. Seize the pistol at the handle with the right hand, and bring it to the position of *draw pistol*.

The instructor wishing to fire, will command:

### READY.

1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

1. Place the pistol in the left hand, the little finger touching the key, the barrel nearly vertical, the muzzle a little inclined to the left and front, the guard to the front, the thumb on the head of the hammer, the fore-finger along the guard.

2. Cock the pistol, and bring it to the position of *draw pistol*.

### AIM.

Lower the pistol, the arm half extended, and place the fore-finger lightly on the trigger, the muzzle directed to the height of the man's waist.

### FIRE.

Press the fore-finger steadily on the trigger, fire, and retake the position of *draw pistol*.

The men being at a ready, and the instructor wishing to fire all the barrels in quick succession, will give an intimation to that effect, and the command:

### 1. AIM—2. FIRE.

The men will fire, then take the first position of ready, cock, aim, and fire again, and so continue until the pistol is discharged; then take the position of *draw pistol*.

The instructor wishing to reload, will command:

### LOAD AT WILL.

#### LOAD.

Load the six chambers as heretofore prescribed, and take the position of *draw pistol*.

### RETURN PISTOL.

Lower the muzzle of the pistol, and return it to the holster or pistol-case.

When the troopers become well instructed in the use of the pistol, the following mode of coming to a ready will be substituted for the above.

### READY.

Incline the muzzle of the pistol to the front, the wrist remaining six inches from the shoulder; place the first joint of the thumb on the head of the hammer, and cock it by an extension of the thumb, and resume the position of *draw pistol*.

---

# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

THIRD PART.

---





# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## TITLE FOURTH.

### EVOLUTIONS OF A REGIMENT.

---

#### PRELIMINARY IDEAS AND PREPARATORY MOVEMENTS.

764.— ALL the evolutions depend on *four principal dispositions*.

1. *To pass from the order in line to the order in column.*
2. *To march in column.*
3. *To pass from the order in column to the order in line.*
4. *To march in line.*

The first evolution belongs to the first principal disposition.

The second, to the second principal disposition.

The third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh, to the third principal disposition.

The eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth, to the fourth principal disposition.

765.— The Captain [rather the Colonel] places himself at the point from whence his command can be most distinctly heard.

The commands **ATTENTION** and **FRONT** are not repeated.

The *preparatory* commands are immediately repeated by the field officers.

The guide being on the left, when the right is in front, and on the right, when the left is in front, the Colonel does not announce it; he may, however, remind them of it when he thinks proper, but only while the column is marching. It is the same, if for any reason the Colonel is obliged to make the guide on the side opposite to the established rule.

In each case, the indication of the guide is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

When a line or column is to move at the same time by the same movement, the Captains commanding immediately repeat the preparatory commands.

In the case of successive movements, they repeat the preparatory commands sufficiently soon to give that of execution at the moment when the movement should commence in their squadron.

If an evolution requires a particular movement of some squadron, the Captain commands this movement instead of repeating the preparatory command given by the Colonel.

The commands of *execution* are repeated simultaneously by the field officers. They are repeated in the same manner by the Captains commanding, except in the movements which require successive commands. The Captains com-

manding always announce *the guide*, conforming to what is prescribed in the *school of the squadron*.

If it should happen that a command is not heard, each Captain commanding conforms as promptly as possible to the movements of the squadron which precedes him in the direction of the formation or breaking.

The Captains commanding, after having commanded **FRONT**, remain at the point to which they went to align their squadron, and, as well as the second Captains, do not resume their place in line until the Colonel commands **FRONT**.

The regiment *draws the sabre, returns it, or presents it*, at the command of the Colonel, which is not repeated.

In a formation in line or in a deployment, when one or several fractions of the troop cannot find room to enter the line, these fractions, whichever they may be, remain or pass in rear of the line in the order in which they were before the movement.

In the evolutions, the movements are made *by platoons*; the movements *by fours* are used only to regain an interval or distance which is lost, or to gain ground towards one of the flanks, when in column of platoons.

The Colonel makes known the points of direction which he thinks proper to give to the line. The Adjutant and Sergeant-Major are charged with posting the *general guides* and with placing the *principal guides* successively on the points which have been determined and, when they have not been determined, with establishing, with these same guides, the line on which the formation or deployment is to be made.

When the Colonel wishes the regiment to march, either in line or in column, he gives the point on which the line or column is to be directed. The Adjutant and Sergeant-Major, for the march in line, point it out to the particular guide of the right or of the left of the squadron designated; and for the march in column, they make it known to the guide of the left or of the right of the head of column. They cause intermediate points to be taken, to ensure by this means the direction of the march.

If the Colonel has not given the direction of a column, the Adjutant and Sergeant-Major, at the preparatory commands, point out to the guide of the left or of the right, conformably to the rule, the point on which he is to march.

It is the same for the march in line.

In the march in line, the guide is always on one of the flanks of the line.

In alignments at a halt, the new line should be established so as not to cross the old one, which would make it necessary to back. As a consequence of this rule, when an alignment is to be made after a march in line, the line is drawn on that part of the troop which is most advanced.

When, from some extraordinary circumstance, the squadrons are reduced below their complement of 48 files, the platoons of the same squadron are equalized among themselves, being completed reciprocally to 11, 10, 9, and even 8 files, but never lower.

The platoons reduced to 9 or 8 files, conform to what is prescribed for the sections, [Title 1st, Art. 2d](#); and [Title 3d, No. 763](#).

A squadron may in the same manner be reduced to three and to two platoons.

When the number of the platoons is reduced in a squadron, the officers who have no platoon to command, become file-closers. The Sergeants and Corporals are always divided between the ranks, after the principles of a complete formation.

The squadrons of a regiment, even when they are unequal, are not the less subjected to the same principles. In the order in column with distance, as in close column, they preserve their distance and the direction of the guides. In the order in line, they preserve the prescribed interval.

### **Points of direction.**

766.— For points of direction, distant objects are chosen, which are immoveable, distinct, and suitable to fix exactly the position it is wished to take.

The choice of points is determined with one of the two following intentions:

1. That of directing the march of a column or of a line.

For this purpose, a point is chosen which determines the direction of the column or line, and immoveable intermediate points are successively taken to ensure this direction.

2. That of marking the line on which a column is to deploy, or a troop in line to establish itself.

For this purpose two salient points are taken, between which the line is to be formed. The Adjutant, after having received the order, moves there rapidly to take the intermediate points and to trace the line. He is followed by the Sergeant-Major or Quartermaster-Sergeant, and a general guide.

In the first case, the points are called *points of direction of the march*; and in the second case, *points of direction of the line*.

### Tracing of lines.

767.— To trace a line, is to establish between two points or on a point given beforehand by the Colonel, intermediate points on which the front rank of a troop which deploys may rest.

In all formations, the *general guides* face each other.

The *principal guides* always face the *general guide* on the side of the formation, except in central movements.

The regiment being right in front, the *principal guides* of the left form the intermediate points; it is the reverse when the left is in front.

At the preparatory command of the Colonel, the Adjutant, if the formation is by the right, moves quickly to the prescribed distance or to the point determined beforehand, halts at the command of execution, and immediately posts the general guide of the right, facing the prolongation of the line, at the point where the right of the regiment is to rest. At the same command, the Sergeant-Major moves to the point where the left of the regiment will rest, and posts the general guide of the left there.

The principal guides of the left of the squadron, at the preparatory command of their Captains commanding, place themselves in succession between these two points, at the point where the left of the squadron will rest, and exactly in the direction, so as to cover each other perfectly.

The Adjutant, who remains behind the general guide, rectifies, if necessary, the position of the principal guides.

(Examples: *Front into line; on right into line; on first squadron—deploy column.*)

If these same formations are made in inverse order, the general guide of the right is posted, facing the prolongation of the line, at the point where the left of the first platoon of the first squadron will rest, and all the principal guides of the left, at the point where the right of the fourth platoon of their squadron will be. The general guide of the left is posted at the point where the right of the fourth platoon of the fifth squadron will rest. (Examples: *By inversion front into line; by inversion on left into line.*)

If the movement is executed by squadron, the general guide of the right is posted in the same manner at the point where the left of the first squadron is to rest, and the principal guides of the right, at the point which marks the right of their squadron. The general guide of the left is posted at the point where the right of the fifth squadron will be. (Example: *By inversion—on first squadron—deploy the column.*)

If the formation is made on the head of the column, faced to the rear, the general guide of the right is posted at the point indicated, preserving the distance of the front of a platoon between him and the left flank of the column, in order that after the left-about wheel, the right of the regiment may be at the point where it is to rest; the principal guides of the left place themselves at the point where the left of their squadron is to be. (Example: *On the head of column—into line faced to the rear.*)

If this same formation is made in inverse order, the general guide of the right is posted as it has just been explained, but on the right flank, that after the right-about



wheel, the left of the first platoon of the first squadron may be at the point where it is to rest; the principal guides, and the general guide of the left, are posted as for by inversion front into line. (Example: *On the head of column—by inversion—into line faced to the rear.*)

If these formations are made by the left, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

The Sergeant-Major conforms them to what is prescribed for the Adjutant.

In the formation on the rear of the column faced to the rear, the line is traced after the about-wheel, as for front into line, the left in front. If the left is in front, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

If the formation is made to the front, on a subdivision or on a squadron of the centre, the Adjutant for the three squadrons on the right posts the Quartermaster-Sergeant facing to the left, at the point where the right of the platoon or squadron, which is the base of formation, is to rest. The principal guide of the left of this squadron also places himself at the point where its left is to be, in the direction of the Quartermaster-Sergeant and facing him. These points being established, the Adjutant moves rapidly towards the right, to post there the general guide of the right; while the Sergeant-Major posts the general guide of the left. The principal guides of the right of the squadrons which are in front of the one of formation, mark the point where the right of their squadron is to be, and face to the left; and the principal guides of the left of the squadron which are in rear, mark the point where the left of their squadron is to rest, and face the Quartermaster-Sergeant.

(Examples: *On 2d or on 3d squadron—front into line; on 2d or on 3d squadron—deploy column.*)

If the formation is made on one of the squadrons of the left, the Sergeant-Major traces the line and posts a Sergeant and the principal guide of the left, as it has just been prescribed.

If the left is in front, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

In the formations in line faced to the rear, the column being right in front, the Quartermaster-Sergeant, if the platoon which is the base of formation belongs to one of the three right squadrons, is posted facing to the right, at the point where the left of this platoon is to rest. The principal guide of the right of the squadron likewise places himself at the point where its right is to be, facing the Quartermaster-Sergeant. The principal guides of the right of the squadrons which are in front of the one of formation, face the Quartermaster-Sergeant; and the principal guides of the left of the squadrons which are in the rear, face to the right. (Example: *On the rear of 1st, 2d, or 3d squadron—into line faced to the rear.*)

If the left is in front, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

In all central movements, the Adjutant and Sergeant-Major remain, the first behind the general guide of the right, and the second behind the general guide of the left, to ensure the straightness of the line, and to rectify if necessary the position of the principal guides.

In formations composed of two evolutions, the line is traced after the same principles; the Quartermaster-Sergeant is posted on the left of the squadrons which form

left into line, facing the general guide of the right, and the principal guides of the left of the squadrons which are in rear are placed in their direction, at the point where the left of their squadron is to rest. (Examples: *Left into line wheel—and front into line; left into line wheel—and on the head of 4th squadron, into line faced to the rear.*)

If the left is in front, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

If this same formation is made in inverse order, the line is traced as it has just been explained. The Quartermaster-Sergeant is posted on the right of the squadrons which form by inversion right into line, facing the general guide of the right, and the principal guides of the left of the other squadrons are placed at the point where the right of the fourth platoon of their squadron is to rest. (Examples: *By inversion, right into line wheel—front into line; by inversion, right into line wheel—and on the head of 4th squadron—into line faced to the rear.*)

If the left is in front, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

In the formation of a close column in line on its left flank, the general guide of the left is posted facing the prolongation of the line at the point where the left of the fifth squadron is to rest; and the principal guide of the right place themselves at the point where the right of their squadron is to be. (Example: *By the rear of column into line.*)

If the left is in front, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

If this same formation is made in inverse order, the general guide of the left is posted facing the prolongation of the line, at the point where the right of the fifth squadron is to

rest, and the principal guides of the left place themselves at the point where the left of their squadron will be. (Example: *By the rear of column by inversion right into line.*)

If the left is in front, the line is traced after the same principles and by inverse means.

In the oblique changes of front on the right wing, the line is traced as it is explained for the deployment on the first squadron. (Example: *Change front obliquely—on the right wing.*)

In perpendicular changes of front, the line is traced as it is explained for the formations to the front, to the rear, and on the centre. (Examples: *Change front—on the right wing; change front to the rear—on the right wing; change front to the right—on 2d, 3d, 4th, or 5th squadron.*)

In the passage of defiles, the line is traced to the front, to the rear, on the right, on the left, on the prolongation to the front of the right or left, according to the formation.

In the passage of a defile to the front on the centre, the Sergeant-Major and Quartermaster-Sergeant are posted facing each other, so as to mark the interval of the two squadrons of formation. The principal guides of the right of the right squadrons place themselves facing to the left, at the point where the right of their squadron is to rest; and those of the left of the left squadrons place themselves facing to the right, at the point where the left of their squadron is to rest.

In the passage of the line to the front, the line is traced as for front into line.

In the passage of the line to the rear, the line is traced as for into line faced to the rear on the head of column, left in front; the general guide of the left taking care to place

himself nearer by the front of a platoon, so that after the left-about wheel, the left of the line may be at the point where it is to rest.

If the fixed points have not been given beforehand, the Adjutant and Sergeant-Major trace the line at the distances fixed for each evolution.

In the formation by the flanks, the Quartermaster-Sergeant having no particular duty, he follows the Adjutant and is at his disposal.

The Adjutant and Sergeant-Major, the Quartermaster-Sergeant, the general and principal guides, do not resume their places in line until the command **FRONT** is given by the Colonel.

As the *lines* cannot always be traced, the Colonel should cause all the evolutions to be executed without tracing them, in order to complete the instruction. In this case the formations are made at the prescribed distances, without the general and principal guides establishing themselves on the new line.

768.— When the Colonel has not given points to establish the new line, whether this line is to be traced or not, the formations or deployments are made at the following distances:

The formation on right or on left into line  
at.....30 paces.

(The distance is measured from the point where, after having turned, the platoon or squadron moves forward on the line.)

The formation to the front into line at.....30 paces.

The formations on the rear of the column  
into line faced to the rear at..... 30 paces.

The formations on the head of the column  
into line faced to the rear..... 20 paces.

Central formations to the front or faced to  
the rear at..... 20 paces.

The deployment of a close column at..... 30 paces.

The formation of a close column right or  
left into line at..... 10 paces.

In the changes of front, the line is traced at the distance prescribed for the formations to the front, to the rear, and on the centre.

### **Manner of placing the intermediate points between two given points.**

769.— (Pl. 101, *fig. A*.) The given points are a tree on the right (B) and a steeple on the left (C).

The intermediate points are sought for by a Sergeant (S) and the principal guide of the right (M) of the first squadron, under the direction of the Adjutant (A).

A Sergeant (S) who is nearest to the tree (B), which is the right point, remains stationary. The principal guide (M) places himself on his left, at the distance of the front of a platoon, aligning himself on the Sergeant and on the tree which is the right point.

These two non-commissioned officers then march forward, making a wheel of which the tree is the pivot. In this movement, the principal guide (M) takes care that the tree (B) is always covered by the Sergeant (S).

The Sergeant looks at the principal guide while marching, and halts when the latter covers the steeple which is the left point.

If the principal guide has kept on the alignment of the Sergeant and the tree, the intermediate points are found.

Having arrived on the line, these two non-commissioned officers face each other and rectify their position, if necessary, so as to cover the points. If the Sergeant (S) sees the steeple (C) on his left, he inclines a little to that side; the principal guide (M) then inclines to the right to align himself on the Sergeant and the tree.

The opposite movements are made if the Sergeant sees the steeple on his right.

When the line is thus determined, the general guide (G) moves on to the line at the point where the right of the regiment is to rest, and posts himself there, facing the Adjutant.

**Manner of determining the other points, when only one point of direction is given.**

770.— (Pl. 101, *fig. B*.) The Adjutant (A) followed by a Sergeant (S) moves *at a gallop* to the side opposite to the point of direction (B), and he posts the Sergeant at some distance from him, facing towards him. If the latter (S) does not cover the point of direction (B), the Adjutant (A) makes a sign to him to incline to the right or left, until he is exactly in the direction.

When the line is thus determined, the general guide (G) moves on to the line at the point where the right of the regiment is to rest, and posts himself there, facing the Adjutant.

771.— The squadrons being sufficiently instructed, they are united to be exercised at the following movements, before passing to the evolutions.

**Successive alignment of the squadrons in a regiment.**

772.— The regiment being in line as prescribed ([Title 1st, Art. 1st](#)), the Colonel causes the general guide of the right and the principal guide of the left of the first squadron to be posted 80 paces in advance of the front of the squadron, opposite to the particular guides and facing each other.

The general guide of the left likewise posts himself at the point where the left of the regiment will rest, facing the general guide of the right.

The line being traced parallel to the front of the regiment, the Captain commanding the first squadron, at a caution from the Colonel, commands: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. MARCH. The squadron having arrived within one pace of the point which marks the right of the new line, the Captain commands: HALT.

At this command, the squadron halts, the officers and the particular guides continue to march and align themselves immediately. The Captain moves to the right flank and commands: Right—DRESS; and when the squadron is aligned: FRONT.

The first squadron being correctly aligned, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By Squadron—Right—DRESS.*



At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the second squadron commands: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. MARCH. The squadron having arrived on the line of the file-closers of the squadron which is the base of alignment, the Captain commands: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT. The squadron halts. The principal guide of the left immediately posts himself at the point where the left of the squadron is to rest, facing to the right; the officers and the particular guides continue to march and align themselves immediately. The Captain moves to the left flank and commands: *Right*—DRESS. At this command the men all move on together to the alignment.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commands: FRONT.

Each Captain commanding executes in succession the same movement, and does not command MARCH until the one who precedes him has commanded HALT.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

### **Alignment of the regiment.**

773.—The regiment being in line, the Colonel causes the general guides to be posted facing each other, and the principal guides of the left as intermediate points, facing to the right, as near as possible to the front, but in such a manner that no portion of the regiment shall be obliged to rein back, and he commands:

1. Attention.
2. *Right*—DRESS.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, and by the Captains commanding, the squadrons align themselves in such a manner that the men of the front rank shall have their horses' heads on a line with the boot of the principal guides.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT.**

774.— The Colonel causes the different alignments to be made by the left, after the same principles and by inverse means.

**To break the regiment by fours.**

775.— The regiment being in line, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By fours.*
3. **MARCH.**

(Pl. 102.) The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by these same officers, the first squadron breaks by fours, as it is prescribed, [No. 588.](#)

The Captain of the second squadron commands *By fours*, sufficiently soon to command **MARCH** at the moment when the fourth platoon of the preceding squadron commences its movement. When half of the second squadron has broken, the Captain changes the direction to join the column.

It is the same with the other squadrons, which break successively and change direction in the same manner as the second.

If the head of column of the regiment turns immediately to the right or left, the Captains commanding break and change direction sufficiently soon to enter the column without losing their distance.

776.— To break the regiment by the left, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By fours from the left*; 3. MARCH.

**To form platoons at the same pace.**

777.— The regiment marching in column of fours, right in front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form platoons.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the platoons are formed in the first squadron as it is prescribed, [No. 617](#).

The other squadrons continue to march and the platoons are formed successively in each squadron in the same manner as in the first, at the commands: 1. *Form platoons*; 2. MARCH, given by each Captain commanding sufficiently soon to allow his head of column to halt at its distance from the squadron which precedes it.

778.— The column marching at a *trot*, the platoons are formed after the same principles, except that the head of column of the regiment, and successively that of each

squadron, instead of halting passes to a *walk*, as it is prescribed, **No. 618**, when it arrives at its distance from the squadron which precedes it.

779.— The regiment marching in column of fours, left in front, the movement is executed by the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

**To break the platoons by fours at the same pace.**

780.— The regiment marching in column of platoons, right in front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By fours.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron, the Captains of the other squadrons command: *Column.*

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain of the first squadron, the Captains of the other squadrons command: **HALT.**

The platoons break by fours in the first squadron, as prescribed, **No. 610.**

The Captain of the second squadron, and successively those of the other squadrons, command: 1. *By fours*; 2. **MARCH**, sufficiently soon to allow the head of his squadron, after having broken, to be at its distance from the squadron which precedes it.

781.— The column marching at a *trot*, the first squadron breaks by fours, as prescribed, **No. 613.** The Captains of

the other squadrons command *walk*, instead of MARCH, and MARCH, instead of HALT; they afterwards command: 1. *By fours—trot*; 2. MARCH, sufficiently soon for the head of their squadrons to arrive at its distance from the squadron which precedes it.

782.— The regiment marching in column of platoons, left in front, the movement is made after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By fours from the left*; 3. MARCH.

### **To form platoons doubling the pace.**

783.— The regiment marching in column of fours, right in front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form platoons—trot.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron, the Captains of the other squadrons command: *Trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by all the Captains commanding, the platoons are formed in the first squadron as it is prescribed, [No. 625](#).

The other squadrons *trot*, and form in succession at the commands: 1. *Form platoons*; 2. MARCH, given by each Captain at the moment when his head of column arrives at its distance from the squadron which precedes it.

784.— The regiment marching in column of fours, left in front, the movement is executed by the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

**To break the platoons doubling the pace.**

785.— The regiment marching in column of platoons, right in front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By fours—trot.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers, and by the Captain commanding the first squadron.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the first squadron breaks, as it is prescribed, [No. 621](#).

The other squadrons continue to march at a *walk*, and the Captains command successively: 1. *By fours—trot*; and 2. MARCH, so as to preserve their distance.

786.— The regiment marching in column of platoons, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By fours from the left—trot*; 3. MARCH.

**To form the regiment front, left, or right into line.**

787.— The regiment marching in column of fours, right in front, to form it into line on the head of column, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Front into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron, the

Captains of the other squadrons command: *Head of column half left.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the first squadron forms as it is prescribed, [No. 595](#).

The other Captains command *guide right*, move on a line with the head of their squadrons, and direct them by the shortest line to within 100 paces in rear of the point where the right will rest in line; as each head of squadron arrives at this distance, the Captain commands: *Head of column half right*; and when the third platoon of his squadron is in the new direction, he commands: *Front into line*, in time to command MARCH, at the moment when his head of column arrives within 30 paces of the line.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

788.— The regiment marching in column of fours, left in front, the movement is made by the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

789.— The regiment marching in column of fours, right in front, to form it into line on its left flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left into line.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the squadron is formed as it is prescribed, [No. 596](#).

The other Captains move opposite to the head of their squadrons, and each one commands in succession *left into line*, in time to command MARCH at the moment when the four first files arrive opposite to the point where they are to turn, to form on the line.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

790.— The regiment marching in column of fours, left in front, it is formed into line on its right flank, after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Right into line*; 3. MARCH.

791.— The regiment marching in column of fours, right in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its right flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On right into line.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the first squadron forms as it is prescribed, **No. 597.**

The other Captains command *guide right*, move opposite to the head of their squadrons, and each one commands *on right into line*, in time to command MARCH at the moment when his four first files arrive at the point where they are to turn to the right, to form on the line.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.



792.— The regiment marching in column of fours, left in front, it is formed into line on the prolongation to the front of its left flank, after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On left into line*; 3. MARCH.

---

## ARTICLE FIRST.

### TO PASS FROM LINE TO COLUMN.

#### **To form the regiment in column with distance.**

793.— The regiment being in line, to break to the right by a general movement, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right wheel.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the movement is made at the same time in each squadron as it is prescribed, [No. 603](#).

At the moment when the platoons have nearly finished their wheel, the Captains commanding command: HALT.

At this command, the marching flanks halt, and the Captains commanding observe that the chiefs of platoons, the particular guides, and the guides of platoons conform to what is prescribed, [No. 603](#).

If the Colonel wishes the column to move to the front immediately, he commands after three-fourths of the wheel:

**4. FORWARD.**

This command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

794.— To break to the left, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoons left wheel*; 3. **MARCH.**

**To break by the right to march to the left.**

795.— The regiment being in line, to break by successive movements, the right passing along the front of the line, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons break by the right—to march to the left.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide left.*

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by these four officers, the movement is made in the first squadron, as it is prescribed, [No. 635](#).

The Captains of the other squadrons repeat in succession the second command in time to command **MARCH**, when the fourth platoon of the squadron on their right arrives opposite to the centre of the second platoon of their squadron.

The movement is made in each squadron in the same manner as in the first.

796.— To break by the left to march to the right, the movement is made after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoons break by the left to march to the right*; 3. MARCH.

**To break to the rear by the right to march to the left.**

797.— The regiment being in line, to break by successive movements, the right passing in rear of the line, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons break by the right to the rear—to march to the left.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers and the Captain commanding the first squadron, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Platoon right-about wheel.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these four officers, the movement is made in the first squadron, as it is prescribed, [No. 641](#).

The Captains of the other squadrons repeat in succession the second command in time to command MARCH, when the fourth platoon of the squadron on their right, after having wheeled about and marched forward, has made three-fourths of its turn to the right.

The movement is made in each squadron in the same manner as in the first.

798.— To break to the rear by the left to march to the right, the movement is made after the same principles and by inverse means at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoons break by the left to the rear—to march to the right*; 3. MARCH.

---

### FIRST EVOLUTION.

#### To form the regiment in close column.

799.— The regiment being in line, if the Colonel wishes to form it in close column to face to the right, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons right wheel—form close column.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 103, *fig. A*.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: *Squadron right wheel.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, all the squadrons wheel to the right.

The wheel being nearly finished, the Captain of the first squadron moves to the left of his squadron, and commands:

1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

The Captains of the other squadrons command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and at 12 paces from the squadron which precedes: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

800.— The formation in close column to face to the left is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons left wheel—form close column*; 3. MARCH.

801.— The regiment being in line, to form close column, without changing front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On third squadron—form close column.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 103, *fig. B.*) At the second command, repeated by the field officers the Captain commanding the squadron of formation moves to the left of his squadron, and commands: 1. *Left—DRESS*; 2. FRONT.

The Captain of the second squadron commands: Platoons left wheel—fourth platoon left half wheel.

The Captain of the first squadron commands: Platoons left wheel—head of column half right.

The Captain of the fourth squadron commands: Platoons right wheel—first platoon right-about wheel.

The Captain of the fifth squadron commands: Platoons right wheel—head of column half right.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, except the Captain of the squadron of formation, all the other squadrons break by platoons to the right and by platoons to the left; and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captains of the right squadrons command immediately: 1. FORWARD; 2. Guide right; those of the left squadrons command: 1. FORWARD;

2. Guide left. They all move opposite to their head of column to direct it.

The chief of the fourth platoon of the second squadron, after having made a half wheel to the left, moves forward, and commands: 1. Left-TURN; 2. FORWARD, so as to enter square in a direction parallel to the front of the third squadron, passing near the heads of the officers' horses.

The three other platoons, after having wheeled to the left, move forward, and their chiefs command in succession: 1. *Right*-TURN; 2. FORWARD, at the point where the fourth platoon moved forward; they then command: 1. *Left*-TURN; 2. FORWARD, so as to turn on the same ground where the fourth platoon turned.

The Captain of this squadron continues to march opposite to the head of his squadron, and commands: *Platoons right wheel*, in time to command MARCH when his fourth platoon arrives opposite to the right of the fourth platoon of the third squadron.

The platoons having wheeled to the right, he commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Left*-DRESS; 3. FRONT.

The chief of the fourth platoon of the first squadron, after having wheeled *to the left*, commands immediately: 1. *Right*-TURN; 2. FORWARD, and marches in a diagonal direction, so as to turn to the left on a line parallel to the front of the second squadron, at the command *head of column half left*, given by the Captain when his fourth platoon arrives on a line with the right of the squadrons already formed.

The three other platoons, after having marched forward, turn in succession on the same ground as the fourth, at the command of their chiefs. The rest of the movement is

precisely the same as that prescribed for the second squadron, and these two squadrons are then 12 paces from each other.

The chief of the first platoon of the fourth squadron, after having executed the *right-about wheel*, moves forward and commands: 1. *Left*-TURN; 2. FORWARD, so as to enter square in a direction parallel to the third squadron, at the command *head of column to the left*, given by the Captain when this platoon is nearly 12 paces in rear of the third squadron.

The other platoons, after having wheeled to the right, move forward, and their chiefs command in succession: 1. *Right*-TURN; 2. FORWARD, a little before the point where the first platoon wheeled about. They then command: 1. *Left*-TURN; 2. FORWARD, so as to turn on the same ground where the first platoon turned.

The Captain marches at the head of his squadron, until he arrives opposite to the left of the third squadron, when he halts, allows his column to pass, and commands: *Platoons left wheel*, in time to command MARCH, when his fourth platoon comes up to him.

The platoons having wheeled to the left, he commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Left*-DRESS; 3. FRONT.

The chief of the first platoon of the fifth squadron, after having *wheeled to the right*, commands: 1. *Right*-TURN; 2. FORWARD, and marches in a diagonal direction, so as to turn to the left on a line parallel to the fourth squadron, at the command *head of column half left*, given by the Captain when his first platoon arrives on a line with the left of the squadrons already formed.

The three other platoons, after having marched forward, turn in succession at the command of their chiefs on the same ground as the first.

The Captain marches at the head of his squadron, until he comes on a line with the left of the fourth squadron, when he halts, allows his column to pass, and conforms, for the rest of the movement, to what is prescribed for the fourth squadron.

802.— To form close column from a halt, on any other than the third squadron, the movement is executed after the same principles, observing that the squadrons which place themselves in front of the one of formation conform to what is prescribed for the second and first squadrons, and that those which form in rear conform to what is prescribed for the fourth and fifth.

803.— The regiment being in line, to form close column, left in front, without changing front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On fourth squadron—left in front—form close column.*
3. MARCH.

The commands are repeated, and the movements executed after the principles prescribed, No. 801, with this difference, that the right squadrons form in rear of the one designated as the base of formation; that the left squadron forms in front of it; and that the alignment being made to the right, each Captain halts or moves to the point where the right of his squadron is to rest.



804.— The formation of close column from a halt being almost always made at quick paces, it is important for the preparatory commands to be given in time to prevent either delay or hesitation in the execution.

805.— The regiment marching in line, if the Colonel wishes to form close column facing to the right, without halting, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons—right wheel—form close column.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: *Squadrons right wheel—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers, and by the Captains commanding, the movement is executed. When the wheel is nearly finished, the Captain of the first squadron commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; 3. *Walk*; 4. MARCH; the Captains of the other squadrons command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and when 12 paces from the squadron which precedes: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH.

806.— The formation of close column when marching, to face to the left, without halting, is made after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons left wheel—form close column*; 3. MARCH.

807.— The regiment marching in line, to form close column without changing front and without halting, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On first squadron—form close column.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Guide left*, and moves to the left of the squadron; the Captains of the other squadrons command: *Platoons right wheel—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, except the Captain of the first squadron, the squadrons *break by platoons to the right at a trot*; and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captains command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*, and place themselves opposite to their first platoons.

As the head of each squadron arrives on a line with the left of the first squadron, the Captain halts, allows his column to pass, and commands: *Platoons left wheel*, in time to command MARCH when his fourth platoon arrives on a line with the left of the first squadron.

The platoons having wheeled to the left, the Captain commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*, and at 12 paces from the squadron which precedes: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH.

808.— The Formation of close column when marching with the left in front, without changing front, and without halting, is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On fifth squadron—left in front—form close column*; 3. MARCH.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### TO MARCH IN COLUMN.

809.— The principles of the march in column with distance, prescribed in [Nos. 604](#) and the succeeding paragraphs, are applicable to the regiment: the squadrons preserve between each other the distance of platoons in column with the addition of the 12 paces required for the interval from one squadron to another when in line.

810.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to march it forward, the Colonel points out to the Adjutant the direction which the column is to follow; and after the latter has given the guide of the first platoon the means of preserving the regularity of his march, conformably to the principles prescribed, [No. 605](#), the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Column forward.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as it is prescribed, [No. 605](#).

811.— To halt the column, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Column.*
3. HALT.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the command **HALT**, repeated by these same officers, the platoons all halt together.

The Adjutant sees that the guides of the two first platoons have marched in the direction which he gave them.

### **To change direction in column with distance.**

812.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, to change direction by successive turns, the Colonel commands:

#### *Head of column to the left.*

At this command, repeated by the Lieutenant-Colonel and by the Captain commanding the first squadron, the movement is made as it is prescribed, **No. 606**.

Each Captain, in succession, gives the same command at the moment when his head of column is about to arrive at the point where the first squadron began to turn.

The principal guide of each squadron remains at the turning point until the last platoon of his squadron has finished its movement, and until he is replaced by the principal guide of the next squadron.

The change of direction to the right is made after the same principles and by inverse means, at the command: *Head of column to the right.*

813.— The regiment marching in column with distance, left in front, the Major repeats the command, and the principal guide of the left marks the wheeling point.

814.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, to face in the opposite direction, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left-about wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers, and by the Captains commanding; the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as it is prescribed, [No. 628](#).

815.— The regiment marching in column with distance, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoons right-about wheel*; 3. MARCH; 4. FORWARD.

816.— The regiment being in column with distance, at a halt or marching, to gain ground towards one of its flanks, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By fours left (or right) wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers, and by the Captains commanding, and the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 668](#).

817.— The regiment being in column with distance, at a halt or marching, to face to the opposite direction, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By fours left-about (or right-about) wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers, and by the Captains commanding, and the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 670](#).

818.— The regiment marching in column with distance, to gain ground to the left or right, without changing front, and while advancing, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left (or right) oblique.*
3. MARCH.

The two last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, and the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as it is prescribed, [No. 607](#).

When the column has obliques sufficiently, the Colonel commands:

#### FORWARD.

This command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, and the movement is executed, as it is prescribed, [No. 607](#).

819.— The regiment marching in column with distance, if it meets with a defile which is to be passed, each squadron executes in succession what is prescribed in [No. 610](#), and the succeeding numbers.

Great inconvenience in the march of a column of several squadrons resulting from a frequent increase or diminution of front, the Colonel, who should march at the head, having caused the defile to be examined, reduces the front of his column in proportion to the narrowest passage, before entering it.

On coming out of the defile, the Colonel may command *walk* or *halt*, in order to form the column in its primitive order.

820.— The principles of the march in column with distance are applicable to the close column, with this difference, that the particular guide of the squadron which is at the head of the column places himself on the alignment of the officers, on the side where the guide is, as prescribed, [No. 685](#), the guides of each squadron remaining at a distance of 12 paces from the squadron which precedes.

The close column is put in motion and halted by the same commands as the column with distance; at the second command of the Colonel, to march it forward, the Captains commanding command: 1. Squadron forward; 2. *Guide left*; and instead of repeating: 1. *Column*; 2. **HALT**, they command: 1. *Squadron*; 2. **HALT**.

**SECOND EVOLUTION.**

**To pass from column with distance to close column by the successive formation of squadrons.**

821.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, to diminish the depth of it, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form squadrons.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Form squadron.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain of the first squadron, the movement is executed in this squadron, as prescribed, [No. 723](#), except that the Captain remains on the left flank.

The other squadrons continue to march and form in succession at the command: *Form squadron*, given by each Captain in time to command MARCH, so that his squadron may form at 12 paces from the squadron which precedes it.

The movement is executed in each squadron in the same manner as in the first. The chiefs of the first platoons command HALT, at 12 paces from the squadron which precedes.

As soon as each squadron is formed, the Captain commands: 1. *Left—DRESS*; 2. FRONT.

If the column is at a *trot*, the movement is executed after the same principles, the first platoon of each squadron



changing to a *walk* at the command MARCH of the Captain commanding, so that the squadron may form at 12 paces from the one which precedes it.

As soon as each squadron is formed, the Captain commands: *Guide left*.

822.— The regiment marching left in front, the movement is executed at the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

823.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, to diminish the depth of it, doubling the pace, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Form squadrons—trot*.
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Form squadron—trot*.

The Captains of the other squadrons command: *Trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers, and by all the Captains commanding, the movement is executed in the first squadron, as it is prescribed, [No. 727](#), except that the Captain remains on the left flank.

The other squadrons *trot*, and form in succession at the command: *Form squadron*, given by each Captain in time to command MARCH when his first platoon arrives at 12 paces from the squadron which precedes.

The movement is executed in each squadron in the same manner as in the first. The chiefs of the first platoons command *walk*, at the command *form squadron* of their

Captains, and change to a *walk* at the command MARCH, repeated by them when they are 12 paces from the squadron which precedes.

As soon as each squadron is formed, the Captain commands: *Guide left*.

The column being at a *trot*, to form squadrons, doubling the pace, the movement is executed after the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Form squadrons—gallop*; 3. MARCH. Each first platoon of the four last squadrons successively changes to a *trot*, at the command MARCH of the Captain commanding.

824.— The regiment marching in column with distance, left in front, the movement is executed at the same commands, after the same principles, and by inverse means.

### To change direction.

825.— The regiment marching in close column, right in front, to change direction by successive wheels, the Colonel commands:

#### *Head of column to the left.*

(Pl. 104, *fig. A*.) At this command, repeated by the Lieutenant-Colonel, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: 1. *Left—TURN*; 2. FORWARD, and the movement is made as it is prescribed, No. 704.

Each Captain, in succession, gives the same commands when his squadron arrives at the point where the first began to turn.

The Quartermaster-Sergeant marks the wheeling point.

The change of direction to the right is made after the same principles and by inverse means, at the command: *Head of column to the right.*

826.— The regiment marching in close column, left in front, the wheeling point is marked by a Sergeant.

827.— In all changes of direction, the Captains commanding take care to give their commands in time to prevent their squadrons being thrown out of the direction, and to allow them to preserve their distances.

828.— The regiment marching in close column, right in front, to change to the opposite direction, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left-about wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding; the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 719](#) [and [No. 720](#)].

The Colonel causes the primitive direction to be resumed by a similar movement.

829.— The regiment being in close column, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoons right-about wheel*; 3. MARCH; 4. FORWARD.

830.— The regiment being in close column, to change direction to the left, by a general movement, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change direction to the left.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 104, *fig. B.*) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Squadron left wheel.*

The Captains of the other squadrons command: *Platoons right wheel—head of column half left.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the first squadron wheels to the left, and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captain commands: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

The other squadrons break by platoons to the right; when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captains command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and move to their head of column to direct it.

At the command FORWARD, given by the Captain of the second squadron, the chief of the first platoon commands immediately: 1. *Left—TURN*; 2. FORWARD, and marches in a diagonal direction so as to turn afterwards to the left, on a line parallel to the first squadron, at the command: *Head of column half left*, given by the Captain, when his first platoon arrives on a line with the left of the first squadron.

The three other platoons, after having marched forward, turn in succession at the command of their chiefs, on the same ground where the first turned.

The Captain marches at the head of his squadron until he arrives on a line with the left of the first squadron, when he halts, allows his column to pass, and commands: *Platoons left wheel*, in time to command MARCH, when his fourth platoon comes up to him.

The platoons having nearly finished their *left wheel*, the Captain commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and on arriving at the proper distance: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

The third, fourth, and fifth squadrons conform exactly to what is prescribed for the second.

831.— The change of direction to the right is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Change direction to the right*; 3. MARCH.

832.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, either marching or at a halt, to gain ground towards its right flank by a general movement, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, and the movement is

executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 717](#).

The Captains commanding march on the left of, and on a line with the first platoon of their squadrons; they observe that their head of column marches on a line with that of the first squadron.

To resume the primitive direction, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

If, instead of marching forward, the Colonel wishes to halt, he commands **HALT**, in place of **FORWARD**; and in this case, the Captains commanding, after having repeated **HALT**, command: 1. *Left—DRESS*; 2. **FRONT**.

833.— To gain ground towards the left flank, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoons left wheel*; 3. **MARCH**; 4. **FORWARD**; and to resume the primitive direction: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoons right wheel*; 3. **MARCH**; 4. **FORWARD**.

834.— The regiment marching in close column, to gain ground towards its right flank by a general movement without changing front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right oblique.*
3. **MARCH**.

The two last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding; the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 705](#).

The particular guide of the left of the first squadron remains, during the movement, on a line with the officers.

To resume the primitive direction, the Colonel commands:

### FORWARD.

This command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding; the guide of each squadron resumes his distance and direction, while advancing.

835.— To gain ground towards the left flank by a general movement, without changing front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Left oblique*; 3. MARCH.

836.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, to change direction to face to the rear, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Counter-march by the right flank*.
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: 1. *Counter-march by the right flank*; 2. *By file to the right*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the counter-march is exe-

cuted at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 688](#).

837.— The regiment being in close column, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Counter-march by the left flank*; 3. MARCH.

**To pass from close column to column with distance, by the successive breaking of squadrons.**

838.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, to diminish the front of the column, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Squadrons—by platoons to the front*.
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands *Squadron—by platoons to the front*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron, the movement is executed in this squadron, as prescribed, [No. 647](#).

The Captains of the other squadrons command in succession: *Squadron—by platoons to the front*, in time to command MARCH at the moment when the first platoon of their squadrons should move forward to take its place in the column at its distance from the squadron which precedes.



839.— The regiment being in close column, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons by the left—by platoons to the front*; 3. MARCH.

840.— If the close column is marching, to break into platoons at the same pace, the movement is executed as prescribed, except that at the command: *Squadrons—by platoons to the front*, the Captains of the four last squadrons command at the same time: *Squadron*; and that at the command MARCH, they command HALT. They afterwards give in succession their commands to break, so as to take their distance in the column.

841.— To break into platoons at the same pace, the column being at a *trot*, the Captains of the four last squadrons command: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH; and afterwards: 1. *Squadron—by platoons to the front—trot*; 2. MARCH, in time for the first platoon to take its distance from the squadron which precedes.

842.— The regiment marching in close column, right in front, to diminish the front of the column, doubling the pace, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Squadrons—by platoons to the front—trot*.
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Squadron—by platoons to the front—trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captain of the first squadron, the movement is executed in this squadron, as prescribed, [No. 726](#).

All the squadrons continue to march at a *walk*, and their Captains command in succession: 1. *Squadron—by platoons to the front—trot*; 2. MARCH, in time for the first platoon to take its distance from the squadron which precedes.

843.— The column marching at a *trot*, to break into platoons, doubling the pace, the movement is executed after the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons—by platoons to the front—gallop*; 3. MARCH.

844.— The regiment marching in close column, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons by the left—by platoons to the front—trot* (or *gallop*); 3. MARCH.

**ARTICLE THIRD.****TO PASS FROM COLUMN TO LINE.**

---

**THIRD EVOLUTION.**

**To form the regiment into line on one of its flanks, or on the prolongation to the front of one of its flanks.**

845.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line on its left flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left into line wheel.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 632](#).

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

846.— The column being left in front, the regiment is formed into line on its right flank, after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Right into line wheel*; 3. MARCH.

847.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line on its right flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By inversion right into line wheel.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 636](#).

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

848.— The column being left in front, the regiment is formed into line on its left flank, after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By inversion left into line wheel*; 3. MARCH.

849.— For the formations to the left or right into line, if the column is marching, the Colonel rectifies the direction of the guides before halting it. If the formations are to be made in inverse order, the Colonel changes the guides, and also rectifies their direction, before halting the column.

850.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its right flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On right into line.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the movement is executed in the first squadron, as prescribed, No. 642.

The Captains of the other squadrons command *guide right*, move to the head of their column, and command in succession: *On right into line*, in time to command MARCH, when their first platoon arrives opposite to the point where it should turn to the right to form on the line.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

851.— The column marching left in front, the regiment is formed on the prolongation to the front of its left flank, after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On left into line*; 3. MARCH.

852.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its left flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *By inversion on left into line*.
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and the Captain commanding the first squadron.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the movement is executed in the first squadron, as prescribed, No. 643.

The Captains of the other squadrons move to their head of column, and command in succession: *By inversion on left*

*into line*, in time to command MARCH, when their first platoon arrives opposite to the point where it should turn to form on the line.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT.**

853.— The column marching left in front, the regiment is formed into line on the prolongation to the front of its right flank, after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By inversion on right into line*; 3. MARCH.

---

#### **FOURTH EVOLUTION.**

##### **To form the regiment front into line.**

854.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line on the head of the column, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Front into line.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 105.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain commanding the first squadron, the Captains of the other squadrons command: *Column forward—head of column half left.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the first squadron is formed as prescribed, [No. 648](#).

The Captains of the other squadrons move to the head of their column to direct it.

The chief of the first platoon of each of these squadrons commands immediately: 1. *Left*—TURN; 2. FORWARD; the three other platoons, after having marched forward, turn in succession, at the command of their chiefs, on the same ground where the first turned.

The Captains of the four last squadrons command *guide right*, as soon as the first platoon has turned to the left.

Each squadron forming in this manner a separate column, is marched diagonally to 60 paces in rear of the point where its right will rest when in line.

The Captain of the second squadron commands: *Head of column half right*, when the right of his first platoon arrives opposite to the above mentioned point; he then commands: *Front into line*, in time to command MARCH when his 3d platoon has turned to the right, the 4th platoon being directed towards the point where it should turn to enter the line; this squadron is formed in the same manner as the first.

The Captains of the three last squadrons conform to what is prescribed for the second.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

855.— The column being left in front, the regiment is formed into line on the head of the column, at the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

856.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, if the Colonel wishes to form it into line on the head of the column, and there are obstacles on the left flank, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By inversion front into line.*
3. MARCH.

The movement is executed after the principles prescribed, No. 854, and by inverse means.

857.— The column being left in front, if there are obstacles on the right flank, the regiment is formed by inversion to the front into line on the head of the column, at the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

858.— When the column is marching, these different formations are executed as prescribed for the column at a halt, except that at the second command the Captains of the four last squadrons do not command *column forward*, but only *head of column half left or half right*.

---

### FIFTH EVOLUTION.

**To form the regiment into line faced to the rear.**

859.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line faced to the rear, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On the rear of column—into line faced to the rear.*
3. MARCH.



(Pl. 106.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: *Platoons left-about wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the *left-about wheel* is executed in each squadron at the same time, and the fifth squadron is formed as prescribed, No. 657.

At the moment when the four other squadrons finish their *about-wheel*, the Captains command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Head of column half right*, and move to their head of column to direct it.

At the command *head of column half right*, the chief of the fourth platoon of each of these squadrons commands immediately: 1. *Right-TURN*; 2. FORWARD, and the rest of the movement conforms entirely to what is prescribed for *front into line*, left in front.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

860.— The column being left in front, the regiment is formed into line faced to the rear, at the same commands and after the same principles; all the platoons making a *right-about wheel*, and the last four squadrons conforming for the rest to what is prescribed for *front into line*, right in front.

861.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, if the Colonel wishes to form it into line faced to the rear, and there are obstacles on the left flank of the column, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On the rear of column—by inversion—into line faced to the rear.*
3. MARCH.

All the platoons make a *right-about wheel*, and the squadrons, conform afterwards to what is prescribed for *by inversion front into line*, left in front.

862.— The column being left in front, if there are obstacles on its right flank, the regiment is formed into line faced to the rear, at the same commands. All the platoons make a *left-about wheel*, and the squadrons conform afterwards to what is prescribed for *by inversion front into line*, right in front.

863.— (Pl. 107.) The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line faced to the rear, on the head of column, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On the head of column—into line faced to the rear.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding give the commands prescribed for *by inversion front into line*.

At the command MARCH; the movement is executed.

As each squadron is formed, and when the first platoon of the squadron which follows in the formation arrives on a line with it, the Captain commands: 1. *Platoons left-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands:  
**FRONT.**

864.— The column being left in front, the regiment is formed into line faced to the rear on the head of column, at the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means; the squadrons wheeling *by platoons to the right-about*, to place themselves on the line.

865.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, if the Colonel wishes to form it into line faced to the rear on the head of column, and there are obstacles on the right flank of the column, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On the head of column—by inversion—into line faced to the rear.*
3. **MARCH.**

The movement is executed after the principles prescribed for *front into line*, the squadrons executing in succession: *Platoons right-about wheel*, to place themselves on the line.

866.— The column being left in front, if there are obstacles on its left flank, the regiment is formed into line faced to the rear on the head of the column, at the same commands and after the principles prescribed for *front into line*, left in front; the squadrons afterwards executing in succession *platoons left-about wheel*, to place themselves on the line.

867.— When the column is marching, these various formations are executed as prescribed for the column at a halt, except that in the formations on the head of column, the

Captains of the four last squadrons do not command *column forward*.

**Formation in line by the combination of the third and fourth, or fifth evolutions.**

868.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, and a part of the column having changed direction to the right, to form it into line facing in the direction towards which it was marching before having turned, the Colonel halts the column at the moment when the fourth platoon of the squadron which entered last in the new direction has marched forward 12 paces, after having turned to the right, and he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left into line wheel—and front into line.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 108.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding the squadrons which have entered the new direction, command: *Left into line wheel*.

The Captain commanding the squadron immediately in rear of the one which entered last in the new direction, commands: *Front into line*.

The Captains commanding the other squadrons command: *Column forward—head of column half left*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *left into line wheel*, and for *front into line*.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands:  
**FRONT.**

869.— The column marching with the left in front, and a part of the column having changed direction to the left, the movement is executed after the same principles at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Right into line wheel—and front into line*; 3. **MARCH**. Each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *right into line wheel*, and for *front into line*, left in front.

870.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, and a part of the column having changed direction to the left, to form it into line facing in the direction towards which it was marching before having turned, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By inversion right into line wheel—and front into line.*
3. **MARCH.**

Each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *by inversion right into line wheel*, and for *by inversion front into line*.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands:  
**FRONT.**

871.— The column marching with the left in front, and a part of it having changed direction to the right, to form it into line facing in the direction towards which it was marching before having turned, the movement is executed after the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By inversion left into line wheel—and front into line*;

3. MARCH. Each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *by inversion left into line wheel*, and *by inversion front into line*, left in front.

872.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, and a part of the column having changed direction to the left, to form it into line facing in the direction opposite to the one in which it was first marching, the Colonel halts the column at the moment when the fourth platoon of the squadron which entered last into the new direction has turned to the left, and he commands:

1. Attention.
2. *Left into line wheel—and on the head of*  
(such a) *squadron—into line faced to the*  
*rear.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 109.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding the squadrons which have entered into the new direction, command: *Left into line wheel.*

The Captain of the squadron which is immediately in rear of the one which entered last into the new direction, commands: *By inversion front into line.*

The Captains of the other squadrons command:  
1. *Column forward*; 2. *Head of column half right.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *left into line wheel*, and for *into line faced to the rear*, on the head of column, except that the squadrons which form *by inver-*

*sion front into line*, finish their movement with platoons *right-about wheel*.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands:  
FRONT.

873.— The column marching left in front, and a part of the column having changed direction to the right, to form it into line facing in a direction opposite to the one in which it was first marching, the movement is executed after the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Right into line wheel—and on the head of* (such a) *squadron—into line faced to the rear*; 3. MARCH. Each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *right into line wheel*, and *on head of column into line faced to the rear*, left in front. The squadron which form *by inversion front into line* finish their movement by that of *platoons left-about wheel*.

874.— The regiment marching in column with distance, right in front, and a part of the column having changed direction to the right, to form it into line facing opposite to its first direction, the Colonel halts the column as prescribed, [No. 872](#), and he commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *By inversion right into line wheel—and on the head of* (such a) *squadron—into line faced to the rear*.
3. MARCH.

Each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *by inversion right into line wheel*, and for *on the head of column by inversion into line faced to the rear*.

The squadrons which form *front into line* finish their movement with that of *platoons left-about wheel*.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT.**

875.— The column marching with the left in front, and a part of it having changed direction to the left, to form it into line facing opposite to its first direction, the movement is executed after the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By inversion left into line wheel—and on the head of* (such a) *squadron—into line faced to the rear*; 3. **MARCH.** Each part of the column conforms respectively to what is prescribed for *by inversion left into line wheel*, and for *on the head of column by inversion into line faced to the rear*. The squadrons which form *front into line* finish their movement by that of *platoons right-about wheel*.

876.— (Pl. 110.) The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to form it to the front into line on a line beyond which the head of column has passed, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On fourth* (3d, 2d, or 5th) *squadron—front into line.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding the squadrons which are in advance of the one on which the formation is made, command: *Platoons right-about wheel*.

The Captain of the fourth squadron commands: *Front into line.*



The Captains of the squadrons which are in rear of this one command: 1. *Column forward*; 2. *Head of column half left*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the fourth and fifth squadrons conform to what is prescribed for *front into line*, right in front.

The Captains of the squadrons which are in front of the one on which the Formation is made, wheel to the right-about by platoons, and conform immediately to what is prescribed for *on the head of column into line faced to the rear*, except that they finish their movement with a *left-about wheel by platoons*.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

877.— The column being left in front, the movement is made on one of the centre squadrons, at the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

878.— The regiment being in column with distance, right in front, to form it into line faced to the rear on a line beyond which the head of column has passed, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *On the rear of third* (2d, 1st, 4th or 5th)  
*squadron—into line faced to the rear*.
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 111.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the squadron of for-

mation, and those of the squadrons which are in advance of it, command: *Platoons left-about wheel.*

The Captain of the fourth squadron commands: *By inversion front into line.*

The Captain of the squadron which is in rear of the fourth squadron commands: *Column forward—head of column half right.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the three first squadrons execute their *about-wheel*, and then conform to what is prescribed for *front into line*, left in front.

The Captains of the two last squadrons execute what is prescribed for *by inversion front into line*, and finish their movement by a *right-about wheel by platoons.*

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

879.— The column being left in front, the movement is executed on one of the centre squadrons, at the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

880.— In all formations to the front or to the rear into line on one of the subdivisions of the centre, the platoon which is at the head of the squadron next to that of formation should oblique so as to gain the ground necessary to have a complete interval after the *about-wheel.*

**SIXTH EVOLUTION.**

**To form a close column into line on one of its flanks, or on the prolongation to the front of one of its flanks.**

881.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, to form it into line on the left flank of the column, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By the rear of column—left into line.*
3. **MARCH.**

(Pl. 112, *fig. A.*) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the fifth squadron commands: *Squadron left wheel*. The Captains of the other squadrons command: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide left*.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the four first squadrons move forward; the fifth squadron wheels to the left; and when its wheel is nearly finished, the Captain commands: 1. **FORWARD**; and then, 2. *Squadron*; 3. **HALT**; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. **FRONT**.

The Captain of the fourth Squadron commands: *Squadron left wheel*, in time to command **MARCH** when the fifth Squadron has made two-thirds of its left wheel; for the rest of the movement he conforms to what is prescribed for the fifth squadron.

The Captains of the other squadrons conform in succession to what is prescribed for the fourth.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT.**

882.— The close column being left in front, to form it into line on the right flank, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By the rear of column—right into line*; 3. **MARCH.**

883.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, to form it into line on its right flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By the rear of column—by inversion right into line.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the fifth squadron commands: *Squadron right wheel.* The Captains of the other squadrons command: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide right*; they all move to the right of their squadrons.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the four first squadrons move forward; the fifth wheels to the right, and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captain commands: 1. **FORWARD**; and then, 2. *Squadron*; 3. **HALT**; 4. *Right—DRESS*; 5. **FRONT.**

The Captain of the fourth squadron commands: *Squadron right wheel*, in time to command **MARCH**, when the fifth squadron has made two-thirds of its *right wheel*; for

the rest of the movement he conforms to what is prescribed for the fifth squadron.

The Captains of the other squadrons conform in succession to what is prescribed for the fourth.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

884.— The close column being left in front, to form it into line on the left flank, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By the rear of column—by inversion left into line*; 3. MARCH.

885.— The regiment being in inverse order, it is restored to the natural order by forming close column on one of the flanks, or in advance of the front of the line, or by wheeling about by squadron. In this last case, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons left-about wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Squadrons.*
5. HALT.
6. *Right—DRESS.*

The five last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding; all the squadrons make their about-wheel at the same time.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

886.— When the close column is marching, these different formations are executed as prescribed for the column at a halt, except that at the second command the Captains of the four first squadrons which continue to march, do not command *forward*.

887.— The regiment marching in close column, right in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its right flank the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On right into line.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 112, *fig. B.*) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Right*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: TURN. When the turn is nearly finished, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*, and on arriving on the new line, 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Right*—DRESS; 4. FRONT.

The Captains of the other squadrons command: *Guide right*, move to the right of their squadrons, and command in succession *right*, in time to command TURN when their squadrons arrive opposite to the left of the squadron which precedes them in the formation; for the rest of the movement they conform to what is prescribed for the first squadron.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

888.— The close column marching left in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of the left flank, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On left into line*; 3. MARCH.

889.— The regiment marching in close column, right in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its left flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By inversion on left into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Left.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers, the Captain of the first squadron commands: TURN. When the turn is nearly finished, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and on arriving on the new line, 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

The Captains of the other squadrons command in succession *left*, in time to command TURN when their squadrons arrive opposite to the right of the squadron which precedes them in the formation; for the rest of the movement they conform to what is prescribed for the first squadron.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

890.— The close column marching with the left in front, to form it into line on the prolongation to the front of its right flank, the movement is executed after the same prin-

ciples and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *By inversion on right into line*; 3. MARCH.

---

## SEVENTH EVOLUTION.

### To deploy a close column.

891.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, to deploy it in advance of the front of the column, on one of the centre squadrons, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On third squadron—deploy column.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 113.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding the second and first squadrons command: *Platoons right wheel*; the Captains of the fourth and fifth squadrons command: *Platoons left wheel*.

The Captain commanding the squadron on which the deployment is made commands: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide right*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, except the Captain of the squadron on which the deployment is made, these squadrons *break by platoons to the right* and *by platoons to the left*; when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captains of the squadrons which have broken by platoons to the right command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; the Captains of the squadrons which have broken by platoons to the left com-



mand: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; and they move immediately to their heads of column to direct them.

The Captain of the squadron on which the deployment is made does not command MARCH, until the squadron which is in front of him has unmasked his front; he halts his squadron 1 pace from the line and commands; 1. *Right-DRESS*; 2. FRONT.

The Captains of the other squadrons march at the head of their squadrons until they arrive opposite to the point where the left, for the right squadrons, and the right, for the left squadrons, will rest in the line, when they halt, allow the column to pass, and those on the right command: *Platoons left wheel*, and those on the left: *Platoons right wheel*, in time to command MARCH, when their fourth or last platoon arrives on a line with them; when the wheel is nearly finished they command: 1. FORWARD; those on the right command: 2. *Guide left*, and those on the left: 2. *Guide right*; and when on a line with the file-closers of the squadron on which the alignment is made: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *left (or right)-DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

In this movement, the Captains of the squadrons in front of the one of formation, except the Captain of the squadron which is the head of column, take care to command HALT after having wheeled by platoons to the left, and immediately after: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide left*; 3. MARCH.

892.— The close column being left in front, the movement is made on one of the centre squadrons, at the same commands, after the same principles and by inverse means.

893.— To deploy the close column on any other than the third squadron, the movement is executed after the same principles, observing that the squadrons which are in front of the one on which the deployment is made conform to what is prescribed, [No. 891](#), for the second and first squadrons, and that those which are in rear conform to what is prescribed for the fourth and fifth.

894.— The regiment marching in close column, right in front, to deploy it in advance of the front of the column, without halting, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On first squadron—deploy column.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Guide right*, and moves to the centre of his squadron; the others command: *Platoons left wheel—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding the four last squadrons, the first squadron continues to march forward; the others break together *by platoons to the left, at a trot*, and when the wheel is nearly finished, each Captain commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*. On arriving opposite to the point where the right of his squadron is to rest, he halts, allows his column to pass, and commands: *Platoons right wheel*, in time to command MARCH, when his first platoon is on line with him; the wheel being nearly finished, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*, moves to the centre of his squadron and commands, at the moment when it enters the line: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH.

At the command *guide right*, given by the Captain of the first squadron, the particular guide of the right of that squadron conforms to what is prescribed, [No. 685](#), and the Adjutant gives a point of direction.

895.— The close column marching left in front, the deployment is made after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On fifth squadron—deploy column*; 3. MARCH.

896.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, if there are obstacles on the left flank, and the Colonel wishes to deploy on the head of column, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On first squadron—by inversion—deploy column.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide left*. The Captains of the other squadrons command:  *platoons right wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the deployment is made after the principles prescribed, [No. 821](#), for the squadrons in rear of that of formation, and by inverse means.

897.— The close column being left in front, if there are obstacles on the right flank, and it is wished to deploy on the head of column, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On fifth squadron—by inversion—deploy column*; 3. MARCH.

898.— When the column is marching, these deployments in inverse order are executed as prescribed for the column at a halt, except that the Captain commanding the squadron which is the head of column does not command: *Squadron forward*, but only: *Guide left*, or *guide right*.

899.— The regiment being in close column with the right or left in front, to deploy it facing opposite to its first direction, the Colonel first causes the *counter-march* to be made, and then deploys on whichever squadron he thinks proper.

900.— The regiment being in close column, right in front, to deploy it without forming into line immediately, or to form into line obliquely to the left, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On first squadron—in echelons—deploy column.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 114.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide right*; the Captains of the other squadrons command: *Platoons left wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the first squadron marches 12 paces to the front and halts at the commands: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Right—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

The other squadrons break *by platoons to the left*. When the wheel is nearly finished, each Captain commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*, and moves to the head of his column to direct it; on arriving opposite to the point where

the right of his squadron is to rest, he halts, allows his squadron to pass, and commands: *Platoons right wheel*, in time to command MARCH, when his first platoon arrives on a line with him, and HALT at the moment when the platoons finish their right wheel; he then commands: *Right—DRESS*; and FRONT.

When the movement is terminated, the squadrons should have their intervals and a distance of 12 paces from one echelon to another.

901.— The close column being left in front, the deployment in echelons is made after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On fifth squadron—in echelons—deploy column*; 3. MARCH.

902.— The regiment being deployed in echelons with a distance of 12 paces, right in front, to form it into line, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: 1. *Right—DRESS*; 2. FRONT. The Captains of the four last squadrons command: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide right*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains of the four last squadrons these squadrons march forward. When they arrive on a line with the file-closers of the squadron which is the base of alignment, the Captains command: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Right—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT.**

903.— The regiment being deployed in echelons with a distance of 12 paces, left in front, the movement is executed at the same commands, after the same principles, and by inverse means.

904.— The regiment being deployed in echelons with a distance of 12 paces, right in front, to form it into line obliquely to the left, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons left half-wheel—into line.*
3. **MARCH.**

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: *Squadrons left half-wheel.* At this command, the particular guides of the right move to the point where the right of their squadrons will rest.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, each squadron makes a half wheel to the left, and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captains command: 1. *Squadron*; 2. **HALT**; 3. *Right-DRESS*; 4. **FRONT.**

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT.**

905.— The regiment being deployed in echelons, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons right half-wheel—into line*; 3. **MARCH.**

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

## TO MARCH IN LINE.

## EIGHTH EVOLUTION.

**March in line.**

906.— The regiment being in line, to march to the front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons forward.*
3. *Regulate by the right (or left) squadron.*
4. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding; at the third command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains command: *Guide right* (or *guide left*). The Adjutant or Sergeant-Major gives the point of direction to the particular guide who is on the alignment of the officers.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the regiment moves off, the first squadron conforming exactly to what is prescribed in the *school of the squadron*, No. 672 and the succeeding paragraphs, the others taking care to preserve their alignment and their interval on the side of the guide.

907.— The march in line being one of the most important objects of the instruction, the Colonel should exercise the

regiment frequently at it, applying carefully all the principles of the *school of the squadron*.

If, from the commencement of the march, the intervals close sensibly, it is to be presumed that the point of direction is too much to the left; the Colonel then gives another point more to the right. The guide marches in the new direction, taking new intermediate points. If, on the contrary, the intervals are increased, it is to be presumed that the given point is too much to the right, and one must then be taken more to the left.

In order to preserve their intervals, the squadrons should march straight to the front at a free pace.

If the interval is diminished on the side of the alignment, and increased on the other side, it is either because the wing opposite to the alignment is thrown forward too much, or the men have carried the bridle-hand towards the side of the alignment. In the first case, the Captain commanding directs the wing opposite to the alignment to slacken its pace; in the second place, the interval is regained insensibly while marching.

If the interval on the side of the alignment is increased and the opposite one diminished, the Captain commanding corrects it after the same principles.

If a squadron closes to such a degree as to throw out some of its files, which sometimes happens at quick paces, the Captain commanding causes a platoon to remain in rear, by the commands prescribed, No. 730; he directs it to enter the line when order is restored.

When the regiment is marching *at a trot*, or *at a gallop*, if one or several squadrons go beyond the general alignment, their Captains direct them to slacken the pace; if, on



the contrary, one or several squadrons are in rear, they regain their distance gradually.

In the march in line, the superior officers should give their attention frequently to the squadrons, so as to stop the faults which are commencing, and to avoid the too frequent necessity of inclining to the right or left, which at length throws the line into confusion.

908.— If there are obstacles in advance of the front of a platoon or division, the Captain commanding conforms to what is prescribed, [No. 780](#); and if there is an obstacle in front of a whole squadron, the Captain places it in rear of the next squadron on the right or left, by wheeling by platoons to the right or left, doubling the pace. He restores it to its place in line, when he has passed the obstacle.

909.— The regiment marching in line, to halt it, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons.*
3. **HALT.**
4. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the command **HALT**, the squadrons halt. At the fourth command, the Captains align their squadrons, and command: **FRONT**.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT**.

910.— The superior officers observe that the alignment is made promptly; it is very important to habituate the

Captains commanding, not to depend on the squadron next to them for their alignment, but to regulate themselves by the whole line.

911.— The regiment marching in line with the guide right, to gain ground to the front and towards its right flank, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right half-wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

And when the right of the regiment arrives opposite to the point where he wishes to resume the primitive direction:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left half-wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding; and the movement is made at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, No. 708.

In the movement of *platoons right half-wheel*, the guide of the right of the first platoon of each squadron should take his direction 6 paces from the guide of the left of the fourth platoon which is on his right.

912.— To gain ground to the front and towards the left, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

913.— The regiment marching in line with the guide right, to gain ground towards its right flank, without gaining it to the front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

And when the regiment has gained sufficient ground towards its right flank:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding; and the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, No. 717.

914.— To gain ground towards the left flank without gaining it to the front, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

915.— The regiment marching in line with the guide right, to march to the rear, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right-about wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

To face the regiment to its proper front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left-about wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

The three last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding; and the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 719.](#)

916.— The regiment marching in line with the guide left, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

---

### NINTH EVOLUTION.

#### To change the front of the line.

917.— The regiment being in line, to change the front so as to advance the left wing more or less obliquely, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front obliquely—on the right wing.*
3. MARCH.

([Pl. 115.](#)) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Squadron right half-wheel.* The Captains of the four other squadrons command: 1. *Squadron forward;* 2. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the first squadron executes its *right half-wheel*. When this movement is nearly finished, the Captain commands: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Right*—DRESS; 4. FRONT.

The other squadrons march straight forward, and each Captain commands in succession: *Squadron right half-wheel*, in time to command MARCH when the right of this squadron arrives opposite to, and in the direction of the point where it is to rest. When the right half-wheel is executed, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; and when on a line with the file-closers: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT; 3. *Right*—DRESS; 4. FRONT.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

918.— The regiment being in line, to change the front so as to advance the right wing more or less obliquely, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Change front obliquely—on the left wing*; 3. MARCH.

919.— The regiment being in line, to change the front to face to the right, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front—on the right wing.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: *Platoons right wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the squadrons all break

*by platoons to the right* at the same time, and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captain of the first squadron commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

The Captains of the other squadrons command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Head of column half-left*, and for the rest of the movement they conform to what is prescribed for *front into line*, right in front.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

920.— To change the front of the regiment to face to the left, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Change front—on the left wing*; 3. MARCH.

921.— As the perpendicular changes of front on the wings are terminated, after the breaking of the line, by forming front into line, they may also, when obstacles require it, be executed in inverse order, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Change front—by inversion—on the left wing* (or *on the right wing*); 3. MARCH.

922.— The regiment being in line, to change front to face to the left, gaining ground to the rear, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Change front to the rear—on the right flank*.
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains command: *Platoons right wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the squadrons all break *by*

*platoons to the right* at the same time; and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captain of the first squadron commands: 1. *By inversion front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*; the Captains of the other squadrons command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Head of column half-right*; for the rest of the movement, the Captains all conform to what is prescribed for *on the head of column into line faced to the rear*.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

923.— To change the front of the regiment to face to the right, gaining ground to the rear, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Change front to the rear—on the left flank*; 3. MARCH.

924.— The regiment being in line, to change front to the right, forming on a subdivision of the centre, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front to the right—on fourth (3d or 2d) squadron.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains command: *Platoons right wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, the squadrons all break *by platoons to the right* at the same time.

The Captain of the fourth squadron and those of the squadrons on the left, conform respectively to what is prescribed for *front into line*, right in front.

The Captains of the three first squadrons command: *Platoons right-about wheel*, in time to command MARCH, at the moment when the first wheel is nearly finished; and, after the *about-wheel* is executed, each one conforms for the rest of the movement to what is prescribed for *on the head of column into line faced to the rear*, left in front, the movement being ended by a *left-about wheel by platoons*.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

925.— To change the front of the regiment to the left, forming on a subdivision of the centre, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Charge front to the left—on third* (2d or 4th) *squadron*; 3. MARCH.

926.— When the regiment is marching in line, the change of front on the right wing, in natural or inverse order, is executed at the same commands after the principles prescribed, Nos. 919 and 921; except that the squadron break *by platoons to the right, at a trot*, and that the Captain of the first squadron commands: *Form squadron* (instead of *front into line*), which is executed as prescribed, No. 724.

The Captains of the other squadrons command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Head of column half-left*; 3. *Guide right*; and when their head of column is near the point where it should enter the line, they command: *Form*



*squadron*, in time to command MARCH, at the moment when their first platoon should *walk*.

927.— The regiment marching in line, the change of front is made on the left wing after the same principles and by inverse means.

---

## TENTH EVOLUTION.

### To march by echelons.

928.— The regiment being in line, to march it forward, keep back one of its wings and preserve the means of facing in every direction, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons by the right—forward by echelons.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 116.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide right*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain of the first squadron, this squadron marches forward; the Captain of the second squadron commands MARCH, when the first squadron has marched forward the extent of its front, measured from one front rank to the other front rank, plus 12 paces; it is the same for all the other squadrons.

The particular guide of the right of the first squadron places himself on a line with the officers, as in the march in line; and the particular guide of the right of each of the

other squadrons takes care not to diminish the interval prescribed from one squadron to another.

929.— To march the regiment by echelons, left in front, the movement is executed after the same principles, and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons by the left—forward by echelons*; 3. MARCH.

930.— The regiment marching by echelons, to halt it, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons.*
3. HALT.

The two last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding, who remain at the centre of their squadrons.

931.— To march the regiment forward again in the same order, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons forward.*
3. MARCH.

The two last commands are repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding; the latter command immediately: *Guide right.*

To form the regiment in line, the Colonel conforms to what is prescribed, No. 902, and causes "*forward*" to be sounded. The squadron which is at the head of the echelons continues to march at the same pace; the others increase it, to form on the line, and then immediately resume their first pace.

932.— The regiment being in echelons, right in front, to face to the left by changing the front of all the echelons, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons left wheel.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captains commanding.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the squadrons all wheel to the left at the same time; when the wheel is nearly finished, each Captain commands: 1. *Squadron*; 2. HALT, and remains at the centre of his squadron.

933.— When the regiment is marching, the movement is executed after the same principles; and after the squadrons have completed three-fourths of their wheel, the Colonel commands: FORWARD. This command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding; the latter command immediately: *Guide left.*

934.— The regiment being in echelons, left in front, to face to the right by changing the front of all the echelons, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons right wheel*; 3. MARCH.

This movement is also executed by the regiment when marching.

935.— The regiment being in echelons, either at a halt or marching, with the right or the left in front, it is faced to

the right or to the left in inverse order, at the same commands and after the same principles.

936.— The regiment being in echelons, with the right in front, to throw forward the left and keep back the right, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons by the left—forward by echelons.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 117.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the fifth squadron commands: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide left*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain of the fifth squadron, this squadron marches forward; the Captains of the other squadrons command in succession: 1. *Squadron forward*; 2. *Guide left*, in time to command MARCH, when the squadron which is on their left arrives at its distance in front of them.

To stop the movement when the echelons are changed, the Colonel commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons*; 3. HALT.

937.— The regiment being in echelons, to throw forward the right and keep back the left, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons by the right—forward by echelons*; 3. MARCH.

938.— The regiment marching in echelons, right or left in front, the change of echelons is executed after the same

principles, all the squadrons increasing the pace in succession.

939.— The regiment being in echelons either at a halt or marching, with the right or the left in front, to change the front of all the echelons to the rear, the Colonel commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons right-about* (or *left-about*) *wheel*; 3. MARCH; 4. Squadrons; 5. HALT; or, 4. FORWARD.

940.— The regiment being in line, to march by echelons to the rear, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Squadrons by the right—retire by echelons*.
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 118.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Platoons right-about wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and by the Captain of the first squadron, this squadron makes its *about-wheel*, and when it is nearly finished, the Captain commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*.

The Captain of the second squadron commands: *Platoons right-about wheel*, so as to command MARCH, after the first squadron has marched nearly its distance to the rear; he then commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*. It is the same for all the other squadrons.

When the fourth squadron has marched to the rear and is at its distance from the fifth, which remains facing to the front, the Captain commands: *Platoons right-about wheel*, in time to command MARCH and HALT, so as to be at his

proper distance; he then commands: 1. *Left*—DRESS; 2. FRONT.

The other squadrons wheel to the right-about by platoons in the same manner and at the same time.

The echelons being formed with the right in rear, to continue the retreat, the Colonel commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons by the left—retire by echelons*; 3. MARCH; which is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

941.— The march in echelons is made habitually at the distance of the front, as prescribed, No. 928. If the Colonel wishes the distance between the squadrons to be increased or diminished, he adds to his command: *at double distance* or *at half distance*.

---

## ELEVENTH EVOLUTION.

### Passage of a defile.

942.— The regiment being in line, to pass a defile in front of the centre of the line, which will admit of the passage of a division front, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *On the fourth platoon of third squadron—and the first of fourth—to the front pass defile*.
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 119.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the third squadron commands: *Platoons left wheel—fourth platoon forward*;

the Captain of the fourth squadron commands: *Platoons right wheel—first platoon forward.*

The Captains commanding the two first squadrons command: *Platoons left wheel*; and the Captain of the last squadron: *Platoons right wheel.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the two platoons which were named march forward, obliquing to the left and right, so as to join; all the other platoons break *to the left* and *to the right*, and when the wheel is nearly finished, the Captains of the right squadrons command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; those of the left squadrons: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right.*

The chiefs of all the platoons which have broken to the left and to the right, regulate their march so as to arrive and turn together on the ground where those of the right are to turn to the right and those of the left to the left, in order to plane themselves in the direction of the two platoons which are the head of column.

When the column is thus formed, it passes the defile with a division front, preserving the distance prescribed for a column of platoons.

When the two squadrons at the head of the column have passed the defile, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Front into line.*
3. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and by the Captains of the third and fourth squadrons.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, these two squadrons form *front into line*, the two platoons at the head of the column obliquing to the right and left to regain the interval from one squadron to another. The Captain of the fourth squadron moves to the left of his squadron to align it to the right.

The Captains of the other squadrons continue to march straight forward, and command, those on the right: *Head of column to the right*; those on the left: *Head of column to the left*, so as to pass along the line of the squadron already formed and to form on it, by the movement *on left into line* for the right squadrons, and *on right into line* for the left squadrons.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

943.— If the defile is opposite to any other part of the regiment, the command points out the platoons which are to be the head of column; the rest of the movement is executed as prescribed, No. 942. One of the wings being longer than the other, the last platoons of this wing pass the defile without being doubled.

944.— The column may, according to circumstances, be marched entirely through the defile, and then form to the front, to the left, or to the right, by the commands: *Front into line*, or *left into line wheel—and on left into line*; or finally, *right into line wheel—and on right into line*.

If the command *front into line* is given, the movement is executed at the same time in the two columns, after the principles prescribed for *front into line*, the left and the right in front.



If the command is *left into line wheel—and on left into line*, the left column immediately wheels to the *left into line*; and the right column continues march to the point where it is to form *on left into line*.

The formation *right into line wheel—and on right into line* is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

945.— If the defile allows only the front of a platoon to pass, and is opposite to the first or fifth squadron, it is passed in a simple column by breaking *by platoons to the right or to the left*.

When the defile is in front of one of the centre squadrons, the passage is executed in the following manner:

If it is in front of the third squadron, this squadron *breaks into platoons with the left in front*; it is followed in the same order by the first and second squadrons. The fourth and fifth squadrons *break into platoons with the right in front*, and march in this order after the three first squadrons.

If the defile is in front of the fourth squadron, this squadron makes its movement with the right in front, followed in the same order by the fifth, and the three right squadrons march with the left in front after the left squadrons.

If the defile is in front of the second squadron, this squadron begins the movement *by breaking into platoons with the right in front*; all the squadrons which are on its left break in the same order, and follow the movement; the first squadron breaks with the left in front and passes the last.

946.— When there are several defiles in front of a regiment, the Colonel causes it to break into as many columns as there are passages.

In these different cases, the Colonel, on coming out of the defile, forms the line to the front, to the left, or to the right, as he may judge proper.

947.— The regiment being in line, to pass a defile in rear of the centre, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By the flank platoons—in rear of the centre—pass defile.*
3. MARCH.

(Pl. 120.) At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captain commanding the first squadron commands: *Platoons break by the right to the rear—to march to the left*; and the Captain of the fifth: *Platoons break by the left to the rear—to march to the right*.

The chief of the fourth platoon of the third squadron commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide left*; and the chief of the first platoon of the fourth squadron commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide right*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these same officers, the two centre platoons of the regiment march forward the distance of a division front, obliquing to the left and right to join and cover the defile.

The senior of the two chiefs of platoons takes the command.

The movement commences simultaneously in the first and fifth squadrons, as prescribed, Nos. 797 and 798; the

two columns march towards each other, along the rear of the line, until they are opposite to the defile, where the right column turns *to the left*, and the left column *to the right*; and they then unite to pass the defile with a division front.

The Captains of the three other squadrons give, in succession, the same commands as those of the first and fifth; so that the second and fourth may arrive at the same time at the entrance of the defile, and pass it in the same order as the squadrons which precede them.

When the squadrons, formed in this manner in double column, arrive, after having passed the defile, at the points where the new line is to be formed, the two heads of column turn to the left and to the right, at the commands of the Captains of the first and fifth squadrons.

When the last platoons of the two columns have turned to the left and to the right, and have separated from each other a distance equal to the front of the division which has remained in front of the defile, plus the interval from one squadron to another, the Colonel, who is at the rear of the column, commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Column.*
3. HALT.
4. *Left—and right into line wheel.*
5. MARCH.
6. *Right—DRESS.*

The last five commands are repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands:  
**FRONT.**

The division which covers the defile retires quickly by wheeling to the left-about by fours; after having passed beyond the line a distance equal to a division front, it faces to the front by a second left-about wheel by fours, and the two platoons oblique to the right and left to place themselves on the alignment of their respective squadrons.

948.— If the defile, instead of being in rear of the centre of the line, is in rear of the second and third squadrons, and can be passed with a division front, the Colonel names in the command the squadrons whose flank platoons are to pass in double column.

At the preparatory command, the squadrons on the right and left, which are not included in the command, break in succession to the rear and pass the defile in simple column.

At the command **MARCH**, the movement is executed by the flanks of the squadrons which were named, as prescribed, [No. 947](#).

949.— If the defile permits only a platoon front to pass, and is in rear of the first or fifth squadron, it is passed in single column, breaking *by the left to the rear—to march to the right*; or *by the right to the rear—to march to the left*. The first division of the first squadron or the second of the fifth moves forward to cover the defile.

If the defile is in rear of the centre of the regiment, the fourth platoon of the third squadron and the first of the fourth move forward to cover the defile.

The fourth squadron commences the movement by breaking *by the right to the rear—to march to left*. It is

immediately followed by the fifth, which breaks *by the left to the rear—to march to the right*; and the movement is continued by the right and left squadrons alternately.

If the defile is in rear of the interval between the second and third squadron, the fourth platoon of the second squadron and the first of the third move forward to cover the defile.

The squadron farthest from the defile being always the first to pass it, the movement commences with the fifth squadron which is immediately followed by the fourth; it is continued by the right and left squadrons alternately, commencing on the flank opposite to that which broke first.

If the defile is in rear of the interval between the fourth and fifth squadrons, the movement is executed after the same principles and by inverse means.

On coming out of the defile, the heads of column of the squadrons are directed towards the point where the line is to be formed again. On arriving there, the squadrons which broke by the right turn to the left; those which broke by the left turn to the right, and they all form in succession *left or right into line*, at the commands of their Captains.

When the movement is finished, the platoons which remain to cover the defile retire in succession, the left one moving first.

In the alternate movement of squadrons, each Captain commanding, after having given his preparatory command, does not give the command **MARCH** until the last or first platoon of the squadron which precedes him in the movement has executed its *about-wheel*.

950.— When there are several defiles in rear of the regiment, the Colonel breaks it to the rear, with the left in front, into as many columns as there are passages. On coming out of the defile he forms the line again.

951.— In all passages of defiles to the rear, the troop which remains in front of the defile to cover it detaches skirmishers in front, if necessary.

Their movement in retreat is executed as prescribed, [No. 573](#).

---

## TWELFTH EVOLUTION.

### Passage of the line.

952.— The regiment being in line in rear of another regiment, to execute the passage of the line to the front, the Colonel marches the regiment forward, as prescribed, [No. 906](#), and when within 60 paces of the other line, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Passage of the line—forward by columns.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding command: *Platoons right-wheel—head of column to the left.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, [No. 656](#). Each Captain commands: *Guide right*, and moves to the head of his column to direct it.

The squadrons are directed towards the intervals between the squadrons of the first line, in such a manner that each squadron in column may pass to the right of the squadron which is formed in line in front of it.

The squadrons preserve their intervals from the right, while marching in column.

When the columns have passed the other line, the Colonel commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.

The second command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, the squadrons are all formed *front into line*, at the same time.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: FRONT.

953.— To continue the march in line after having passed the first line, the movement is executed after the same principles, with this difference, that the Colonel instead of commanding *Front into line*, commands: 1. *Form squadrons—trot*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Regulate by the right squadron*. The Captains commanding conform to what is prescribed, No. 727.

954.— The regiment being in line, and having been replaced by another regiment in front, to pass a line to the rear, it approaches it by a *left-about wheel by platoons*; and when within 80 paces, the Colonel causes the regiment to

break, *by platoons right wheel—and in each squadron—head of column to the left.*

The columns are then directed towards the intervals of the line which is in rear, and cross it, passing to the left of the squadrons.

When the columns have arrived near the point where the line is to be reformed, the Colonel forms the regiment *into line faced to the rear on the head of each squadron*, the movement being ended by *platoons left-about wheel.*

955.— The passage of the line belongs properly to the *evolutions of the line*; but in order to exercise the regiment at it, the Colonel forms two lines of three squadrons each, *at half or whole distance*; in this case, one of the field officers commands each line, and gives the commands prescribed for the Colonel.

In the passage of the line, the officer who commands the line which is to be passed by the other, commands: *Passage of the line*, at the preparatory command of the line which is marching. At this command, the particular guides of the right and left of the squadrons pass to the rank of file-closers. They resume their place in line as soon as the columns have passed the intervals.

### Of the charge.

956.— The charge, which is the decisive action of cavalry, being merely an application of the march in line, it is not included in the twelve evolutions; it completes the instruction of the regiment.

To be successful, the charge should be short, the horses should be urged to the quickest gallop, without losing command of them, and the men should remain united and



masters of their movements, notwithstanding the quickness of the pace.

957.— To exercise the regiment, the Colonel causes the charge to be made against an imaginary line; but he does not go faster than a quick gallop; the Signal to charge and the command **CHARGE** serving merely as a notice to take the position with the sabre.

### **Charge in line.**

958.— The regiment marching in line, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention to charge.*
2. *Draw—SABRE.*
3. *Trot.*
4. **MARCH.**

The third command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by the same officers, the squadrons *trot*. After having passed over 150 paces at this pace, the Colonel commands:

1. *Gallop.*
2. **MARCH.**

The first command is repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by the officers the squadrons *gallop*.

After having passed over about 100 paces at this pace, and having to go only 60 more to reach the imaginary line, the Colonel directs *the charge* to be sounded. At this signal,

repeated by all the Trumpeters, all the officers command **CHARGE**, at the same time. The men of both ranks take the position of the sabre or lance prescribed for the charge.

To halt, the gradation of the paces is followed, in order to avoid stopping too suddenly; for this purpose, the Colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons.*
3. **HALT.**
4. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*

At the command *Attention*, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding and the chief of platoons, the squadrons prepare to change the pace, and the troopers carry the sabre to the shoulder. (*Lancers*, carry lance.)

At the command *Squadrons*, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the chiefs of platoons command *platoon*, and the squadrons take the *trot*.

At the command **HALT**, repeated by the field officers, the Captains commanding and the chiefs of platoons, the squadrons halt.

At the command *Right (or left)—DRESS*, repeated by the field officers and the Captains commanding, the squadrons align themselves.

The regiment being aligned, the Colonel commands: **FRONT.**

959.— To execute a charge against the enemy, when the Colonel judges that he is at the proper distance, he conforms to what has just been prescribed, with this differ-

ence, that at the signal *to charge* the squadrons quicken the gallop and attack the enemy with impetuosity.

The enemy being routed, the Colonel causes the *rally* to be sounded: at this signal, the troopers halt and rally on their squadrons: the officers take their places in line. As it is important that the enemy should not have time to form again, the Colonel designates, among those first rallied, the number of platoons necessary to pursue him.

At the signal *to charge*, the officers remain in their places in line: the Colonel and the other field officers place themselves on the alignment of the officers, at the centre of their respective commands.

The Adjutant, the Sergeant-Major, the Quartermaster-Sergeant, and the general guides remain in their places in line.

The Trumpeters remain in rear of the centre of the regiment. A Chief Bugler remains behind the Colonel.

The Colonel moves wherever his presence may be most necessary to ensure the success of the charge.

Before preparing for the charge, the Colonel recalls the skirmishers; they place themselves in rear of the flanks, to be ready to turn the enemy's flank and rear while the regiment charges in front.

960.— The field officers, Captains commanding, and officers should recollect that it is very important to keep the squadrons united and to rally them promptly when necessary, to be ready to oppose the enemy or to charge the new lines which may show themselves.

It is always advantageous to attack the enemy; or, if he should attack, to anticipate him in charge.

961.— The charge in oblique order is executed after the same principles and by the same means as the charge in parallel order. It is used in preference when the enemy's line is longest, so as to counter-balance this advantage by keeping back a wing, or even to pass beyond one of his.

962.— To attack with only a part of the regiment at a time, parallel and successive attacks by echelons are made, starting from the line of battle.

The charge by echelons gives the means of renewing it at several points, of passing beyond the enemy's line and of falling on one of his flanks with a part or the force.

These successive charges may also be used with success against a line of infantry; they disturb the soldiers and induce them to fire with precipitation.

### **Charge in column.**

963.— The charge in column is used against infantry formed in column or square. For this purpose, the regiment is formed in close column, and the squadrons take successively a distance equal to double their front, so that when the first squadron charges, it may be promptly followed by the second, which, if the first forces a passage, throws itself into the square and finishes the defeat of it. If the first squadron is repulsed, it retires by the right and left to form at the rear of the column, and uncovers the front of the second squadron: this squadron renews the charge; if it does not succeed, it makes way for the third, and so on until the charge shall have completely succeeded.

These charges in rapid succession should at length break the square, especially if they are directed, as they always

should be, against the angles, which are the weakest points when not protected by artillery.

The squadrons which have not charged are sent in pursuit until they are stopped by the *rally*; they then return and place themselves in column behind the squadrons already formed, or in their rank and place in line if the regiment is deployed.

In the charge by echelons and in column, the Lieutenant-Colonel and Major charge at the head of the squadron which the Colonel designates.

### **Charge as foragers.**

964.— The charge as foragers is used against artillery. It is executed as prescribed in the *school of the squadron*.

The Colonel designates the squadron or squadrons which are to charge; they break off and march towards the point from which they can in succession charge the batteries; the rest of the regiment marches to support the attack or oppose the enemy, and to rally the foragers after the charge.

THE END.